CITROËN

C4 CITROËN AIRCROSS

HANDBOOK

CRÊATIVE TECHNOLOGIE

On-line handbook

Select one of the following means of access to view your handbook on-line...

MyCITROËN

Find your handbook on the CITROËN website, under "MyCITROËN".

This personal and customisable space allows you to establish direct and special contact with the manufacturer.

Referring to the handbook on-line also gives you access to the latest information available, easily identified by the bookmark, associated with this symbol:

If the "MyCITROËN" function is not available on the CITROËN public website for your country, you can find your handbook at the following address:

http://service.citroen.com/ddb/

Select:

- the language,
- the vehicle, its body style,
- the print edition of your handbook appropriate for the date of registration of your vehicle.

Scan this code for direct access to your handbook.

This handbook has been designed to help you make the most of your C4 AIRCROSS in all circumstances and in complete safety.
Take the time to read through it so as to familiarise yourself with your vehicle.

This handbook covers all of the variations in equipment available across the whole C4 AIRCROSS range.
Your vehicle will be fitted with only some of the equipment described in this document, depending on its trim level, version and the specification for the country in which it was sold.

The descriptions and illustrations are given as indications only.
Automobiles CITROËN reserves the right to modify the technical characteristics, equipment and accessories without having to update this edition of the handbook.

This document forms an integral part of your vehicle. Remember to pass it on to the new owner in the event of the sale of the vehicle.

Key

! safety warning

i additional information

contributes to the protection of the environment

CITROËN has a presence on every continent,
a complete product range,
bringing together technology and a permanent spirit of innovation,
for a modern and creative approach to mobility.
We thank you and congratulate you on your choice.

At the wheel of your new vehicle,
getting to know each system,
each control, each setting,
makes your trips, your journeys
more comfortable and more enjoyable.

Happy motoring!

Overview

Eco-driving

1 Instruments

Instrument panel 12
Warning and indicator lamps 13
Instrument panel screen 19
Trip computer 32
Distance recorder 32
Trip distance recorder 32
Service indicator 33
Adjusting vehicle settings 37
Audio-CD system screen 44
Audio-CD system touch screen 46
Audio-Telematic system touch screen 48
Lighting dimmer 51

2 Access

Remote control key 52
"Keyless Entry and Starting" system 56
Doors 62
Boot 63
Alarm 65
Electric windows 68
Panoramic sunroof 70

3 Ease of use and comfort

Front seats 71
Rear seats 74
Mirrors 76
Steering wheel adjustment 78
Ventilation 79
Manual heating / air conditioning 81
Automatic air conditioning 83
Front demist - defrost 87
Rear screen demist - defrost 88
Interior fittings 89
Boot fittings 95

4 Driving

Driving recommendations 97
Starting - switching off the engine with the key 98
Starting - switching off the engine with the Keyless Entry and Starting system 99
Parking brake 102
Manual gearbox 103
Gear shift indicator 104
CVT gearbox 105
Hill start assist 110
Stop & Start (Auto Stop & Go) system 111
Under-inflation detection 114
Four wheel drive system 118
Cruise control 120
Parking sensors 123
Reversing camera 126

5 Lighting and visibility

Lighting controls 127
Daytime running lamps 130
Automatic illumination of headlamps 130
Manual guide-me-home lighting 131
Welcome lighting 132
Headlamp adjustment 133
Wiper controls 134
Automatic rain sensitive wipers 136
Courtesy lamps 138
Boot lamp 140
Panoramic roof lighting 140

Safety 6

General safety recommendations 141
Direction indicators 142
Hazard warning lamps 142
Horn 142
Braking assistance systems 143
Trajectory control systems 145
Front seat belts 147
Airbags 151
Child seats 156
Deactivating the passenger's front airbag 158
ISOFIX child seats 165
Child lock 171

Practical information 7

Fuel tank 173
Snow chains 175
Automatic power cut-off to accessories 176
Changing a wiper blade 176
Towing a trailer 177
Fitting roof bars 179
Bonnet 180
Petrol engines 181
Diesel engines 182
Checking levels 183
Checking components 186

In the event of a breakdown 8

Temporary puncture repair kit 189
Changing a wheel 193
Changing a bulb 199
Changing a fuse 205
12 V battery 211
Towing the vehicle 215
Running out of fuel (Diesel) 218

Technical data 9

Petrol engines 219
Petrol weights 220
Diesel engines 225
Diesel weights 226
Dimensions 231
Identification markings 233

Audio and telematics

Bluetooth® telephone with voice recognition 235
TOUCH SCREEN AUDIO-TELEMATIC system 247
TOUCH SCREEN AUDIO-CD system 289
AUDIO-CD system 313

Alphabetical index

Exterior

Remote control key / electronic key 52-61
- opening / closing
- anti-theft protection
- battery

Boot 63
- opening / closing
- emergency release

Temporary puncture repair kit 189-192
Changing a wheel 193-198
- tools
- removing / refitting

Snow chains 175

Fuel tank 173

Changing bulbs 203-204
- rear lamps
- 3rd brake lamp
- number plate lamps
- foglamp

Parking sensors 123-125
Reversing camera 126
Towbar 177-178
Towing 215-217

Panoramic sunroof 70
Roof bars 179

Braking assistance 143-144
Trajectory control 145-146
Tyre pressures 193, 233
Under-inflation detection 114-117

Wiper controls 134-137
Changing a wiper blade 176

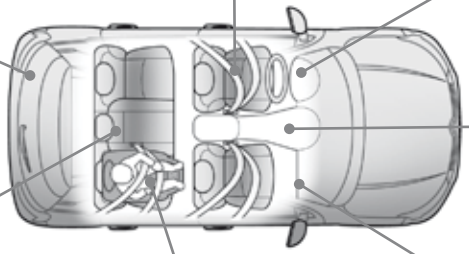
Door mirrors 76-77

Doors 62, 64
- opening / closing
- central locking

Child lock 171
Electric windows 68-69
Alarm 65-67

Lighting controls 127-131
Headlamp beam adjustment 133
Welcome lighting 132
Changing bulbs 199-202
- front lamps
- front foglamps
- direction indicator repeaters

Interior



Front seats 71-73
Seat belts 147-150

Airbags 151-155

Boot fittings 95-96
- rear parcel shelf
- stowing rings
- storage

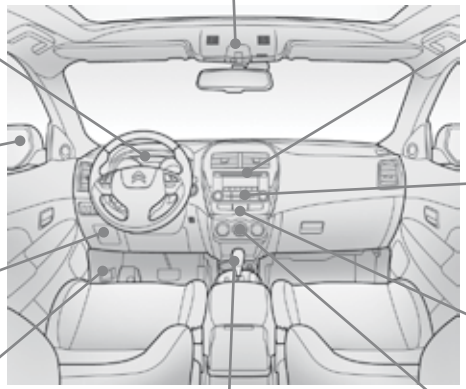
Front fittings 89-93
- AUX socket / USB port
- cigarette lighter / 12 V socket
- portable ashtray
- front armrest
- sun visor
- mat

Rear seats 74-75
Rear fittings 94
Rear armrest / Ski flap 75

Glove box 90
Deactivating the passenger's airbag 152, 158

Child seats 156-164
ISOFIX mountings 165-169
Child lock 171

Instruments and controls



Rear view mirror	78
Courtesy lamps	138-139
Panoramic sunroof	70

Instrument panel	12
Warning and indicator lamps	13-18
Indicators	33-35

Door mirrors	76-77
Electric windows	68-69

Dashboard fuses	205-207, 210

Opening the bonnet	180

Audio-CD system screen	44
Setting the time	44-45
Audio-CD system touch screen	46
Setting the time	46-47
Audio-Telematic system touch screen	48
Setting the time	49-50

Audio-CD system	313-336
Audio-CD touch screen system	289-312
Audio-Telematic touch screen system	247-288

Hazard warning lamps	142

Parking brake	102
5/6-speed manual gearbox	103
Gear shift indicator	104
CVT gearbox	105-109
Hill start assist	110
4 wheel drive system	118-119

Ventilation	79-80
Manual air conditioning	81-82, 87
Automatic air conditioning	83-87
Front demist - defrost	87
Rear screen demist - defrost	88

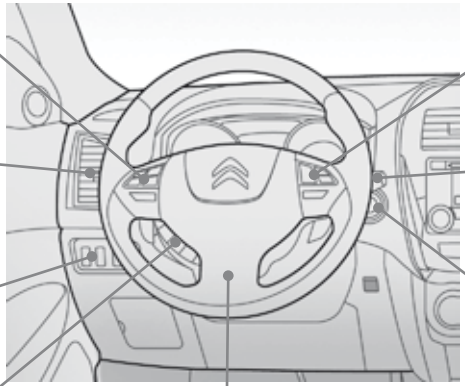
Instruments and controls (continued)

Steering mounted controls for Audio-CD, Audio-CD touch screen, Audio-Telematic touch screen systems 249, 291, 316

Lighting controls 127-131

Headlamp beam adjustment 133
Stop & Start (Auto Stop & Go) function 111-113

Bluetooth® telephone with voice recognition 235-246



Cruise control 120-122

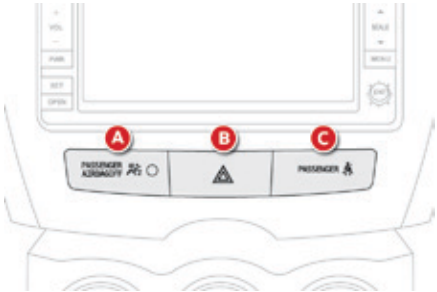
Wiper controls 134-137

Ignition switch, starting/switching off 98
START/STOP button 99-101

Steering wheel adjustment 78
Horn 142

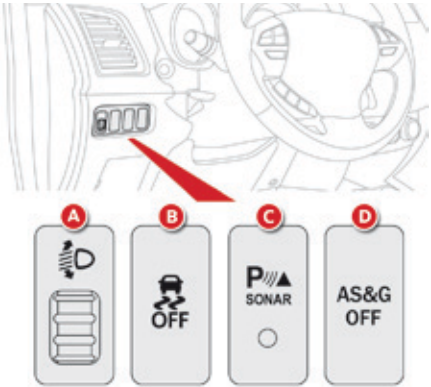
Instruments and controls (continued)

Central switch panel



A.	Passenger's airbag deactivation warning lamp	152
B.	Hazard warning lamps	142
C.	Front passenger's seat belt not fastened or unfastened warning lamp	148

Side switch panel



A.	Manual headlamp adjustment	133
B.	Deactivation of the ASC/TCL system	145
C.	Deactivation of the parking sensors	125
D.	Deactivation of the Stop & Start (Auto Stop & Go) system	112

Maintenance - Technical data

Petrol engines 219
Petrol weights 220-225
Diesel engines 226
Diesel weights 227-230
Dimensions 231
Off-road performance 232
Identification markings 233

Running out of fuel, Diesel 218

Checking levels 183-185
- oil
- brake fluid
- coolant
- screenwash/headlamp wash fluid

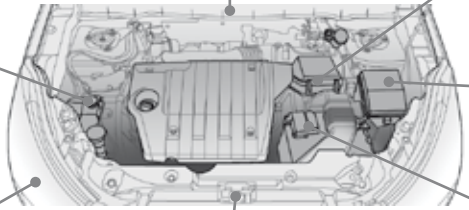
Changing bulbs 199-204
- front
- rear

Checking components 186-188
- battery electrolyte
- air filter
- oil filter
- particle filter (Diesel)
- brake pads / discs

Engine compartment fuses 205, 208-210

Battery 211-214
Automatic power cut-off to accessories 176

Bonnet 180
Petrol engine compartment 181
Diesel engine compartment 182



Eco-driving

Eco-driving is a range of everyday practices that allow the motorist to optimise their fuel consumption and CO_2 emissions.

Optimise the use of your gearbox

With a manual gearbox, move off gently and change up without waiting. During acceleration, change up early.

With an automatic gearbox, give preference to automatic mode and avoid pressing the accelerator pedal heavily or suddenly.

The gear shift indicator invites you to engage the most suitable gear: as soon as the indication is displayed in the instrument panel, follow it straight away.
For vehicles fitted with an automatic gearbox, this indicator appears only in manual mode.

Drive smoothly

Maintain a safe distance between vehicles, use engine braking rather than the brake pedal, and press the accelerator progressively. These practices contribute towards a reduction in fuel consumption and CO_2 emissions and also help to reduce the background traffic noise.

If your vehicle has cruise control, make use of the system at speeds above 25 mph (40 km/h) when the traffic is flowing well.

Control the use of your electrical equipment

Before moving off, if the passenger compartment is too warm, ventilate it by opening the windows and air vents before using the air conditioning. Above 30 mph (50 km/h), close the windows and leave the air vents open.
Remember to make use of equipment that can help keep the temperature in the passenger compartment down (sunroof, window blinds, etc.).
Switch off the air conditioning, unless it has automatic regulation, as soon as the desired temperature is attained.
Switch off the demisting and defrosting controls, if not automatic.
Switch off the heated seat as soon as possible.

Switch off the headlamps and front foglamps when the level of light does not require their use.

Avoid running the engine before moving off, particularly in winter; your vehicle will warm up much faster while driving.

As a passenger, if you avoid connecting your multimedia devices (film, music, video game, etc.), you will contribute towards limiting the consumption of electrical energy, and so of fuel.
Disconnect your portable devices before leaving the vehicle.

Limit the causes of excess consumption

Spread loads throughout the vehicle; place the heaviest items in the bottom of the boot, as close as possible to the rear seats.
Limit the loads carried in the vehicle and reduce wind resistance (roof bars, roof rack, bicycle carrier, trailer, etc.). Use a roof box in preference.
Remove roof bars and roof racks after use.

At the end of winter, remove snow tyres and refit your summer tyres.

Observe the recommendations on maintenance

Check the tyre pressures regularly, when cold, referring to the label in the door aperture, on the driver's side.
Carry out this check in particular:

- before a long journey,
- at each change of season,
- after a long period out of use.

Do not forget the spare wheel and the tyres on any trailer or caravan.

Have your vehicle serviced regularly (engine oil, oil filter, air filter, passenger compartment filter, etc.) and observe the schedule of operations recommended in the manufacturer's service schedule.

When refuelling, do not continue after the third cut-off of the nozzle to avoid any overflow.

At the wheel of your new vehicle, it is only after the first 1 800 miles (3 000 kilometres) that you will see the fuel consumption settle down to a consistent average.

Instrument panel

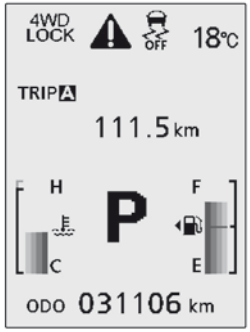
Panel grouping together the dials and warning/ indicator lamps. These inform the driver of the activation/deactivation of a system or of the occurrence of a fault.

1. Rev counter.
2. Speedometer.

3. Instrument panel display screen:
   - Warning and status displays.
   - Total and trip distance recorders.
   - Service indicator.
   - Coolant temperature.
   - Trip computer information.
   - Cruise control setting.
   - Gear shift indicator recommendations.
   - Settings menu (display, sound...).
   - Fuel level.
   - Ambient temperature.
   - Transmission mode.

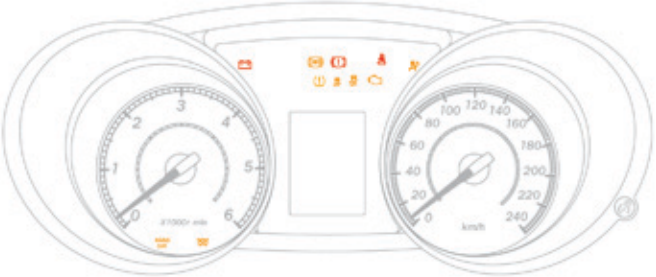
> Management of the display is done using the **INFO** button located on the dashboard to the left of the instrument panel.

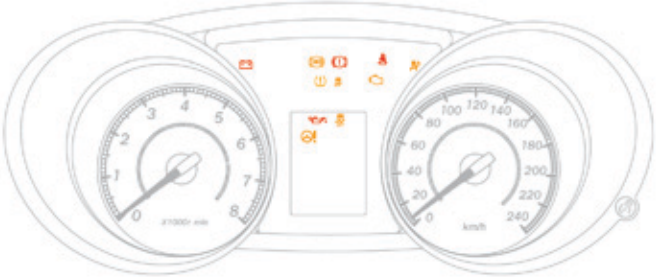
Screen type 1



Screen type 2

Warning and indicator lamps





Visual indicators which inform the driver of the occurrence of a malfunction (warning lamp) or of the operation of a system (operation or deactivation indicator lamp).

When the ignition is switched on

Certain warning lamps come on for a few seconds when the ignition is switched on. When the engine is started, these warning lamps should go off.

> i If they remain on, before moving off, refer to the information on the warning lamp in question.

Associated warnings

The illumination, fixed or flashing, of certain warning lamps may be accompanied by an audible signal and a message.

Warning lamps

When the engine is running or the vehicle is being driven, the illumination of one of the following warning lamps indicates a malfunction which requires action on the part of the driver.
The warning comes on in the instrument panel or appears in the instrument panel screen.

! The illumination of a warning lamp may be accompanied by the display of an additional message, to assist you in identifying the problem.
If you encounter any problems, you should contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Warning/indicator lamp		is on	Cause	Action / Observations
	Parking brake / Brake fluid level / Electronic brake force distribution	fixed.	It comes on for a few seconds, then goes off when the ignition is switched to "ON".	
			The parking brake is on or not fully released.	It is accompanied by a message. Release the parking brake to make the warning lamp go off.
			The brake fluid level is too low.	It is accompanied by a message. Top up with brake fluid and contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
			The electronic brake force distribution (EBFD) is faulty.	You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so. Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
	Engine self-diagnosis system	flashing.	The engine management system has a fault.	Risk of destruction of the catalytic converter. Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
		fixed.	The emission control system has a fault.	The warning lamp should go off when the engine is started. If it does not go off, contact a CITROËN dealer or qualified workshop without delay.
	Battery charge*	fixed.	The battery charging circuit has a fault (dirty or loose terminals, slack or cut alternator belt, ...).	The warning lamp should go off when the engine is started. If it does not go off, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

* Depending on the country of sale.

Warning/indicator lamp		is on	Cause	Action / Observations
	Front seat belt not fastened / unfastened	fixed, then flashing, accompanied by an audible signal.	The driver has not fastened or has unfastened their seat belt.	Pull the strap, then insert the tongue in the buckle.
	Anti-lock Braking System (ABS)	fixed.	The anti-lock braking system has a fault.	The vehicle retains conventional braking. Drive carefully at reduced speed and contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop without delay.
	Airbags and pretensioners	temporarily.	When you switch on the ignition, this warning lamp comes on for a few seconds, then goes off.	If it does not go off, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
		fixed.	Fault with one of the airbag or seat belt pretensioner systems.	Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
	Under-inflation	fixed, accompanied by a message	The tyre pressure for one or more wheels is too low.	Check the tyre pressures as soon as possible. This check should preferably be done with the tyres cold. You must reinitialise the system after every adjustment of one or more tyre pressures and after replacing one or more wheels. For more information on **Under-inflation detection**, refer to the corresponding section.
		flashing then fixed, accompanied by a message.	The system has a fault and/or one or more wheels does not have a detected sensor.	The tyre pressures are no longer monitored. Have the system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Operation indicator lamps

If one of the following indicator lamps comes on, this confirms that the corresponding system has come into operation.
It may be accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the instrument panel screen.

Warning/indicator lamp		is on	Cause	Action / Observations
	Left-hand direction indicator	flashing with audible warning.	The lighting stalk has been pressed downwards.	If this indicator lamp flashes abnormally quickly, this could indicate that the bulb of one of the direction indicators has blown. Change the bulb or contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
	Right-hand direction indicator	flashing with audible warning.	The lighting stalk has been pushed upwards.	If this indicator lamp flashes abnormally quickly, this could indicate that the bulb of one of the direction indicators has blown. Change the bulb or contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
	Sidelamps or dipped beam headlamps	fixed.	The sidelamps or dipped beam headlamps are on.	
	Main beam headlamps	fixed.	The lighting stalk is pulled towards you.	Pull the stalk to return to dipped beam headlamps.
	Front foglamps	fixed.	The front foglamps are switched on using the ring on the lighting control stalk.	Turn the ring on the lighting control stalk rearward once to switch off the front foglamps.
	Rear foglamps	fixed.	The rear foglamps are switched on.	Turn the ring on the stalk rearward to switch off the rear foglamps.

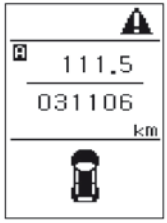
Warning/indicator lamp		is on	Cause	Action / Observations
CRUISE	**Cruise control**	fixed.	This comes on when the cruise control has been activated.	Press the "ON/OFF" button to activate/deactivate the cruise control.
	Diesel engine pre-heating	fixed.	The engine is cold and: - the ignition switch is at the **ON** position, or - the **START/STOP** starting button has been pressed (ignition on).	With key starting, wait until the warning lamp has gone off before starting. With the Keyless Entry and Starting system, the engine will only start after the warning lamp has gone off. The duration for which the warning lamp is on is determined by the climatic conditions (up to 30 seconds in severe weather). If the engine does not start, switch the ignition off and then on again and wait again until the warning lamp goes off, then start the engine.
	Active stability control and traction control (ASC/TCL)	flashing.	Operation of the ASC/TCL systems.	The systems optimise traction and improve the directional stability of the vehicle. Adapt your driving and moderate your speed.
		fixed.	Fault in the ASC/TCL systems.	Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
AS&G	**Stop & Start (Auto Stop & Go) system**	fixed.	When the vehicle stops (red lights, traffic jams, etc.), the Stop & Start (AS&G) system has put the engine into STOP mode.	The warning lamp goes off and the engine restarts automatically in START mode, as soon as you want to move off.
		flashing for a few seconds, then goes off.	STOP mode is temporarily unavailable.	For more information on the **Stop & Start (Auto Stop & Go) system** and in particular the special cases with STOP mode and START mode, refer to the corresponding section.

Deactivation indicator lamps

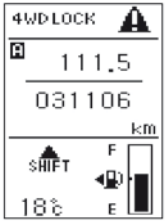
If one of the following indicator lamps comes on, this confirms that the corresponding system has been switched off intentionally.
This may be accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the screen.

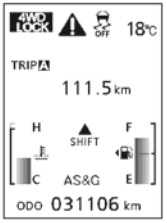
Warning/indicator lamp		is on	Cause	Action / Observations
OFF	**ASC/TCL**	fixed.	The ASC/TCL off switch, located at the bottom of the dashboard (driver's side) has been pressed. ASC/TCL is deactivated. ASC: active stability control. TCL: traction control.	Press the button to activate the ASC/TCL. The ASC/TCL system is automatically activated on starting the vehicle.
AS&G OFF	**Stop & Start (Auto Stop & Go) system**	fixed.	The off switch for the Stop & Start (AS&G) system, located at the bottom of the dashboard (driver's side) has been pressed. The Stop & Start (AS&G) system is deactivated.	Press the switch again to activate the Stop & Start (AS&G) system.
		flashing.	Fault with the Stop & Start system.	Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Instrument panel screen

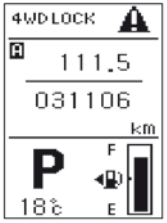


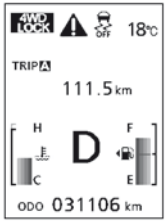
Ignition off.





Ignition on (with a manual gearbox).





Ignition on (with a CVT gearbox).

Each time the engine is started: warning lamps and/or messages come on, applying a checking self test. They go off after a few seconds.

Warnings and alerts

When an alert occurs, the displayed information then disappears. the warning lamp and its associated message appear, accompanied if appropriate by an audible signal.

When there are several alerts, they are displayed in turn and this symbol appears. It remains displayed while there are still alerts.

When you want to see the trip computer information, you can choose to ignore the alerts, by pressing the **INFO** button on the dashboard.

When this symbol appears: make a **short press**.

When this symbol appears: make a **long press**.

You will then be able to display the alerts again by pressing the **INFO** button several times to cycle through the trip computer information and return to the alerts.

The messages displayed may vary according to the type of display screen (type 1 or type 2) in the instrument panel.
Certain messages are only displayed in the type 2 screen.

Warning messages (ignition at "OFF")

Screen 1	Screen 2	Cause	Solution - Action	Observations
TURN OFF LIGHTS	TURN OFF LIGHTS	You have forgotten to switch off the vehicle lighting.	Switch off the vehicle lighting by placing the control at OFF.	There is an intermittent audible signal.
	ALARM ACTIVATING	The alarm has been triggered.		
	KEY BATTERY LOW	The battery for the Keyless Entry and Starting system is flat.	Replace the battery (see "Changing the batteries").	
	KEY NOT DETECTED	The electronic key that you have on your person is not recognised.	Check that you have the correct electronic key.	If the message persists, contact a CITROËN dealer.
	KEY STILL IN VEHICLE	The electronic key is still in the vehicle and you have tried to lock the doors or boot from the outside.	Ensure that you have the electronic key on your person before locking the vehicle.	
	CHECK DOORS	One of the doors or the boot is not properly closed when locking the vehicle from the outside.	Close the door or the boot, then lock the vehicle.	

Screen 1	Screen 2	Cause	Solution - Action	Observations
	KEYLESS OPERATION SYSTEM SERVICE REQUIRED	Fault with the "Keyless Entry and Starting" system.	Contact a CITROËN dealer.	
	IMMOBILIZER SYSTEM SERVICE REQUIRED	Fault with the electronic anti-theft system.	Switch off the ignition, then start the engine.	If the problem persists, contact a CITROËN dealer.
	KEY NOT DETECTED INSERT KEY INTO KEY SLOT IN GLOVE BOX	The electronic key is not detected.	Insert the electronic key into the housing located in the glove box.	Remember to remove the electronic key from the housing after starting the vehicle.
	REMOVE KEY FROM KEY SLOT IN GLOVE BOX	The electronic key has not been removed from the housing in the glove box.	Remove the electronic key from the housing in the glove box.	
	PUSH ENGINE SWITCH WHILE TURNING STEERING WHEEL	The steering column is locked.	Switch the ignition on and turn the steering wheel slightly to unlock the steering column.	
	P SHIFT SHIFT TO P POSITION	The engine is off but the gear lever is not in position **P**.	Place the gear lever in position **P**.	Only for vehicles fitted with a "CVT" gearbox.

Screen 1	Screen 2	Cause	Solution - Action	Observations
	STEERING LOCK SERVICE REQUIRED	The steering column has not locked after opening the driver's door.	Lock the steering column by turning the steering wheel slightly before leaving the vehicle.	
	ELECTRICAL SYSTEM SERVICE REQUIRED	Fault with the electrical system.	Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.	

Warning messages (ignition at "ON")

Screen 1	Screen 2	Cause	Solution - Action	Observations
SERVICE REQUIRED	POWER STEERING SERVICE REQUIRED	Fault with the electric power steering.	Stop the vehicle, wait few moments then start the engine again.	If the message remains after restarting, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
	KEY BATTERY LOW	The battery for the "Keyless Entry and Starting" system is flat.	Replace the battery. For more information on the **Emergency procedure with the Keyless Entry and Starting system** and changing the batteries in particular, refer to the corresponding section.	
	KEY NOT DETECTED	The electronic key that you have on your person is not recognised.	Check that you have the correct electronic key.	If the message persists, contact a CITROËN dealer.
	KEY STILL IN VEHICLE	The electronic key is still in the vehicle and you have tried to lock the doors or boot from the outside.	Ensure that you have the electronic key on your person before locking the vehicle.	
	CHECK DOORS	One of the doors or the boot is not properly closed when locking the vehicle from the outside.	Close the door or the boot, then lock the vehicle.	
	KEYLESS OPERATION SYSTEM SERVICE REQUIRED	Fault with the "Keyless Entry and Starting" system.	Contact a CITROËN dealer.	

Screen 1	Screen 2	Cause	Solution - Action	Observations
CHECK	BRAKE SYSTEM SERVICE REQUIRED	The brake fluid level is too low.	Top up using a brake fluid listed by CITROËN.	If the problem persists, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
		Fault with the braking system.	You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so.	Have the system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
SERVICE REQUIRED	ABS SERVICE REQUIRED	Fault with the anti-lock braking system (ABS).	Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.	The vehicle retains conventional braking without assistance but you are advised to stop.
LOW TIRE PRESSURE	LOW TIRE PRESSURE	The tyre pressure is too low in one or more tyres.	Check the tyre pressures as soon as possible. This check should preferably be done with the tyres cold. You must reinitialise the system after adjusting one or more tyre pressures or after changing one or more wheels. For more information on the **Under-inflation detection system**, refer to the corresponding section.	If the problem persists, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
SERVICE REQUIRED	TPMS SERVICE REQUIRED	There is a fault with the under-inflation detection system and/or at least one wheel does not have a detected sensor.	The tyre pressures are no longer monitored. Have the system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.	

Screen 1	Screen 2	Cause	Solution - Action	Observations
		One of the doors or the boot is not properly closed.	Close the door or the boot.	The opening in question is identified in the screen.
CLOSE HOOD	CLOSE HOOD	The bonnet is not properly closed.	Close the bonnet.	
	IMMOBILIZER SYSTEM SERVICE REQUIRED	Fault with the electronic anti-theft system.	Switch off the ignition then start the engine again.	If the problem persists, contact a CITROËN dealer.
	OFF	The driver's door is open and the ignition is still on.	Switch off the ignition before leaving the vehicle.	

Screen 1	Screen 2	Cause	Solution - Action	Observations
	STEERING LOCK SERVICE REQUIRED	Fault in the steering column.	You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so.	Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
	ELECTRICAL SYSTEM SERVICE REQUIRED	Fault with the electrical system.	Stop the vehicle and contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.	
CHECK	ENGINE OVERHEATING STOP SAFELY	The cooling system temperature is too high.	Wait for the engine to cool down before topping up, if necessary. If the problem persists, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.	You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so.
SLOW DOWN	TRANSMISSION OVERHEATING SLOW DOWN	The temperature of the CVT transmission fluid is too high.	Stop the vehicle and contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.	
FASTEN SEAT BELT	FASTEN SEAT BELT	The driver has not fastened or has unfastened their seat belt.	Fasten your seat belt.	There is a continuous audible signal if you drive without fastening your seat belt.
SERVICE REQUIRED	FUEL SYSTEM SERVICE REQUIRED	Malfunction of the fuel system.	Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.	

Screen 1	Screen 2	Cause	Solution - Action	Observations
RELEASE PARKING BRAKE	RELEASE PARKING BRAKE	You have moved off with the parking brake not fully released.	Release the parking brake.	
CHECK	LOW OIL PRESSURE	The oil pressure is too low or there is a fault with the engine lubrication system.	Stop the vehicle and contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.	
SERVICE REQUIRED	CHARGING SYSTEM SERVICE REQUIRED	Battery charge fault.	Stop the vehicle and contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.	
SERVICE REQUIRED	AIRBAG SYSTEM SERVICE REQUIRED	Airbag or pretensioner fault.	Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to have the systems checked.	
SERVICE REQUIRED	HEADLAMP LEVELLING SERVICE REQUIRED	Fault with automatic headlamp adjustment system.	Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.	Only on vehicles fitted with xenon headlamps.
SERVICE REQUIRED	ASC SYSTEM SERVICE REQUIRED	Fault with the stability control system (ASC).	Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.	
SERVICE REQUIRED	4WD SYSTEM SERVICE REQUIRED	Fault with the four wheel drive transmission system.	Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.	

Screen 1	Screen 2	Cause	Solution - Action	Observations
SERVICE REQUIRED	TRANSMISSION SERVICE REQUIRED	Fault with the CVT gearbox.	Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.	
SLOW DOWN	4WD SYSTEM OVERHEATING SLOW DOWN	The temperature of the four wheel drive transmission system is too high.	Stop the vehicle and contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.	The vehicle changes automatically to two wheel drive (2WD).
REFUEL	REFUEL	The fuel level is low.	Refuel as soon as possible.	
CHECK	CHECK DPF SYSTEM	The low level of the particle filter additive reservoir has been reached.	Have the reservoir topped up as soon as possible by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.	Only for the 1.6 litre HDi engine.
		Start of saturation of the particle filter.	As soon as the driving conditions allow, regenerate the filter by driving at a speed of at least 25 mph (40 km/h) for around 20 minutes (with the 1.6 litre HDi engine the minimum speed is 36 mph (60 km/h)).	If the message remains on, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
+		The particle filter is faulty.	Stop as soon as it is safe to do so.	Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible.

Screen 1	Screen 2	Cause	Solution - Action	Observations
CHECK ENGINE OIL LEVEL	CHECK ENGINE OIL LEVEL	Incorrect engine oil level (below minimum level or above maximum level).	Stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Check the level with the dipstick and top up if the level is too low. If the level is above the maximum mark, do not restart the engine and contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.	**Never drive with an incorrect oil level.**
REMOVE WATER IN SEPARATOR *	REMOVE WATER IN SEPARATOR *	Presence of water in the Diesel fuel filter.	Risk of damage to the injection system on Diesel engines.	Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible.
POSSIBLE ICY ROADS	POSSIBLE ICY ROADS	The exterior temperature is at or below 3 °C (37 °F).	There may be black ice on the road. Take care and drive gently.	
	CLUTCH PRESS CLUTCH PEDAL TO START ENGINE	The clutch pedal is not depressed while starting the engine.	Depress the clutch pedal to start the engine.	For vehicles fitted with a manual gearbox.
	BRAKE P SHIFT PRESS BRAKE PEDAL TO START ENGINE	The gear lever is not in position **P** or position **N** when starting the engine.	Place the gear lever at position **P** to start the engine.	For vehicles fitted with a CVT gearbox.
		The brake pedal is not pressed while starting the engine.	Press the brake pedal to start the engine.	

* Depending on country of sale.

Information messages (ignition at "ON")

Screen 1	Screen 2	System	Observations
2WD	2WD	**2WD two wheel drive system**	Flashes for a few moments when the "2WD" (2 wheel drive) mode is selected using the transmission mode selector, for 4 wheel drive versions.
4WD AUTO	4WD AUTO	**4WD four wheel drive system**	Flashes for a few moments when the "4WD" (4 wheel drive) mode is selected using the transmission mode selector, for 4 wheel drive versions.
4WD LOCK	4WD LOCK	**4WD LOCK four wheel drive system**	Flashes for a few moments when the "LOCK" (4 wheel drive) mode is selected using the transmission mode selector, for 4 wheel drive versions.
		Active stability control (ASC)	Flashes when the stability control system (ASC) is operating.

Prevention messages

Screen 1	Screen 2	System	Cause	Observations	Solution - Action
ROUTINE MAINTENANCE REQUIRED	ROUTINE MAINTENANCE REQUIRED	**Service indicator**	Informs the driver that the next service is overdue.	This is displayed for a few seconds when the ignition is switched on.	Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
REST REMINDER	REST REMINDER	**Rest reminder**	Informs the driver that they should stop to take a break.	This is displayed when the driving time that you set previously is reached. An audible signal sounds 3 times and then every 5 minutes until the vehicle stops.	You are advised to take a break approximately every two hours.

Trip computer

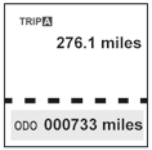
Information display

With the ignition on, each press on the **INFO** button displays the following screens in succession:

- distance recorder and trip recorder A,
- distance recorder and trip recorder B,
- service indicator,
- coolant temperature,
- range,
- average fuel consumption,
- average speed,
- current fuel consumption,
- setting menu,
- any alert messages.

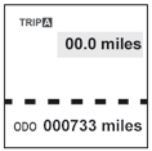
Distance recorder

System for measuring the total distance travelled by the vehicle during its life.



The total distance is displayed in the lower part of the screen.

Trip distance recorder (Trip A or B)



Each of these trip recorders indicates the distance travelled since the last reset. Press the **INFO** button to display the desired trip.

Reset to zero

With the ignition on and either trip **A** or **B** displayed, press the **INFO** button for more than 2 seconds. Only the trip displayed will be reset.

Service indicator

System which informs the driver when the next service is due, in accordance with the manufacturer's servicing schedule.
The point at which the next service is due is calculated from the last service indicator zero reset.
It is determined by two parameters:
- the distance travelled (in miles (km)),
- the time elapsed since the last service (in months).

The distance remaining to be travelled may be weighted by the time factor, depending on the use made of the vehicle.

Operation

When the ignition is switched on, you must press the **INFO** button several times in succession until the service indicator is displayed. The distance recorder display line indicates the number of miles or kilometres remaining and the time elapsed line indicates the number of months remaining before the next service is due.

Example: the screen indicates that 7300 miles (kilometres) remain before the next service is due.

The symbol **"--"** remains displayed until the first service of a new vehicle has been carried out.

Service overdue

Each time the ignition is switched on, the **"ROUTINE MAINTENANCE REQUIRED"** symbol is displayed for a few seconds to indicate that the service must be carried out without delay.

Example: the screen indicates that the service is overdue. This service must be carried out by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

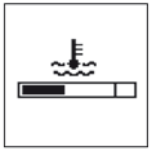
Resetting the service indicator to zero

Your CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop carries out this operation after each service.
If you have carried out your vehicle's service yourself, the zero reset procedure is the following:

- ☞ switch off the ignition,
- ☞ press the **INFO** button several times in succession until the service indicator is displayed,
- ☞ press and hold the **INFO** button for a few seconds until the **spanner flashes**,
- ☞ press the **INFO** button while the spanner is flashing to change the display **"---"** to **"CLEAR"** then the time remaining before the next service is due is displayed.

After a certain distance and a certain time, the display of **"---"** is reset automatically and the display indicates the time remaining before the next service is due.

Coolant temperature gauge



When the engine is running, this indicates the temperature of the coolant.

If the bar is close to the **critical** position located on the right, the temperature is too high.
The symbol flashes when your engine is overheating.

You must stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.
Wait a few minutes before switching off the engine.

Wait for the engine to cool before topping up the level. The cooling system is pressurised.
To avoid any risk of scalding, unscrew the cap by two turns to allow the pressure to drop.
When the pressure has dropped, remove the cap and top up the level, if necessary.
Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Range

When the engine is running, this indicates the distance which can still be travelled with the fuel remaining in the tank based on the average fuel consumption over the last few miles/kilometres travelled.

When the range is less than **30 miles (50 km)**, dashes are displayed.
Refuel as soon as possible. The display of the range is updated.

This value may vary following a change in the style of driving or the relief, resulting in a large variation in the current fuel consumption.
If you only add a few litres, the value displayed will be incorrect. Therefore, you must fill the tank whenever possible.

When you disconnect the battery, the previous fuel consumption data is lost and the value displayed will be different from that displayed before the battery was disconnected. The distance displayed must be considered an approximate indication.

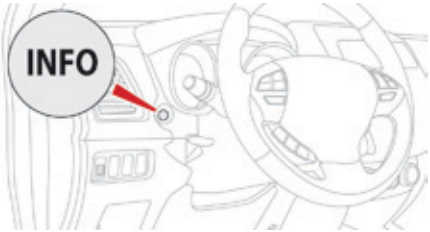
Average fuel consumption (l/100 km or km/l or mpg)

This is the average fuel consumption calculated since the trip computer was last reset.

Average speed (km/h or mph)

This is the average speed calculated since the trip computer was last reset.

Resetting the information to zero



When the required information is displayed, press the **INFO** button for more than two seconds to reset all of the information to zero.
When the ignition is switched on, the zero reset switches automatically from manual mode to automatic mode.

Automatic

If the ignition key remains in the OFF position for more than 4 hours, the information is reset to zero automatically.

Current fuel consumption (l/100 km or km/l or mpg)

This is the average fuel consumption calculated over the last few seconds.

This value may change following a change in the style of driving or the relief.

If dashes "---" are displayed for long periods in place of the digits while driving, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Adjusting vehicle settings

With the ignition on, press the **INFO** button, located on the dashboard to the left of the instrument panel several times until the "SETTING MENU" screen is displayed.

When the vehicle is stationary, this menu allows the user to change the following settings:

- The reinitialisation mode for average fuel consumption and average speed.
- The fuel consumption units.
- The temperature display unit.
- The display language.
- The activation/deactivation of the sound when pressing the **INFO** button.
- The break (rest) reminder display interval.
- The reinitialisation of the under-inflation alert threshold.

For more information on **Under-inflation detection**, refer to the corresponding section.

- Choose a set of tyres.

For more information on **Under-inflation detection**, refer to the corresponding section.

- Restore the factory settings.

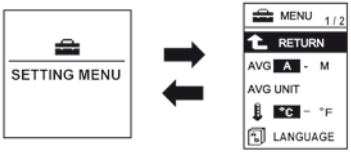
! To change the settings, you must stop the vehicle and the ignition must be on. Apply the parking brake and place the gear lever in neutral.

i There are some differences in the content of the menus of the type 1 and type 2 display screens.

i **For your safety**, **when the vehicle is moving**, the function settings are not displayed when you press the **INFO** button.

Operation

☞ Press and hold the **INFO** button for a few seconds to display the menu screen.



☞ In the menu screen, press the **INFO** button to select a function from the list:

MENU 1/3:

- **1 - 2, A - M, A - P*** (choice of the resetting of average fuel consumption and average speed),
- **UNIT** (choice of the fuel consumption units),
- choice of the **temperature display unit**,
- **LANGUAGE** (choice of the display language).

* Depending on display language.

MENU 2/3:
- **activation / deactivation** of the **INFO** button **sound**,
- **ALERT** (changing of the "REST REMINDER" display interval),
- **selection of the sound** for the direction indicators,
- **activation / deactivation** of the **current fuel consumption**.

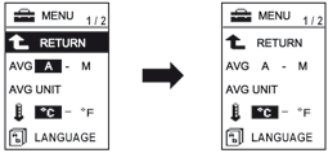
MENU 3/3:
- **REINITIALISE** (reinitialise the under-inflation alert threshold),
- **choice of set of tyres**,
- **REINITIALISE** (restore factory settings).

Press and hold the **INFO** button for a few seconds to return to the previous screen.
When the menu screen is displayed, if no operation is carried out within 15 seconds, the Setting Menu screen is displayed.

Choice of the reset mode for average fuel consumption and average speed

You can choose between two average fuel consumption and average speed reset modes:
- automatic reset,
- manual reset.

In the menu screen:
☞ press the **INFO** button to select:



☞ press and hold the **INFO** button for a few seconds to switch in succession from reset mode **1 - A (automatic)*** to reset mode **2 - M - P (manual)***.

The mode selected is confirmed.

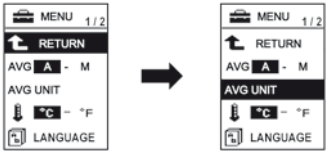
* According to display language.

Choice of the fuel consumption unit

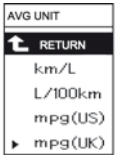
The distance, speed and quantity of fuel units will also be changed in accordance with your choice of fuel consumption unit.

In the menus screen:

☞ press the **INFO** button to select **"UNIT"**.



☞ press and hold the **INFO** button for a few seconds to display the **"UNIT"** screen.



☞ press the **INFO** button to scroll through the units (km/L, L/100km, mpg (US), mpg (UK) and RETURN) in succession.

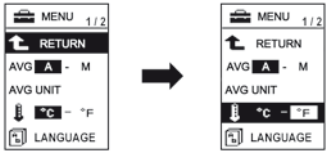
☞ press and hold the **INFO** button for a few seconds to confirm your selection.

> ℹ If the battery is disconnected, the settings memory is cleared and the default unit (km/L) is restored automatically.

Choice of the temperature display unit

In the menu screen:

☞ press the **INFO** button to select the temperature unit setting symbol (thermometer):



☞ press and hold the **INFO** button for a few seconds to scroll the units (°C and °F) in succession.

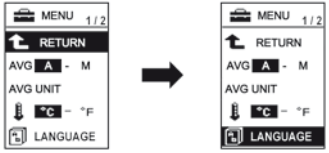
The mode selected is confirmed.

> ℹ If the battery is disconnected, the settings memory is cleared and the default unit (°C) is restored automatically.

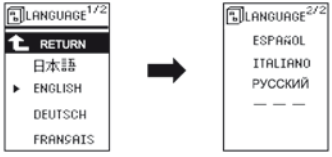
Choice of the display LANGUAGE

In the menu screen:

☞ press the **INFO** button to select **"LANGUAGE"**:



☞ press and hold the **INFO** button for a few seconds to display the **"LANGUAGE"** screen:



☞ press the **INFO** button to scroll the languages (Japonais, English, Deutsch, Français, Espanol, Italiano, Russe "---" and RETURN) in succession,

☞ press and hold the **INFO** button for a few seconds to confirm your selection.

ℹ If you select the "---" setting, no message will be displayed in message display situations.

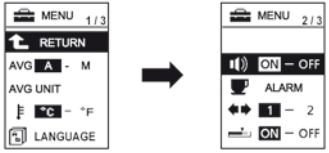
ℹ If the battery is disconnected, the settings memory is cleared and the default language (ENGLISH) is restored automatically.

Activation / deactivation of the "INFO" button sound

You can activate or deactivate the sound associated with the **INFO** button.

In the menu screen:

☞ press the **INFO** button to select the **INFO** button sound activation / deactivation symbol **(located in menu 2/3)**:



☞ press and hold the **INFO** button for a few seconds to scroll the choices (ON, OFF) in succession.

The mode selected is confirmed.

> ℹ If the battery is disconnected, the settings memory is cleared and the default choice (ON) is restored automatically.

Changing the display interval of the "REST REMINDER" message

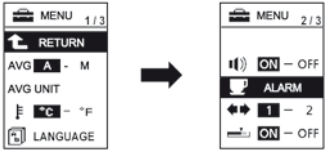
The "REST REMINDER" function allows you to programme an alert message reminding you to take a break.

The **"REST REMINDER"** message appears accompanied by an audible signal.

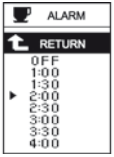
You can change the display interval of the **"REST REMINDER"** message.

In the menu screen:

☞ press the **INFO** button to select **"ALARM" (located in menu 2/3)**:



☞ press and hold the **INFO** button for a few seconds to display the **"ALARM"** screen,



☞ press the **INFO** button to select the display interval of the **"REST REMINDER"** message,

☞ press and hold the **INFO** button for a few seconds to confirm.

> ℹ As a safety measure, it is recommended that you stop for a break every two hours.

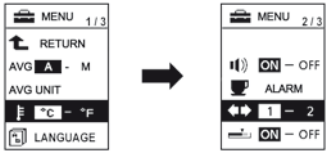
> ℹ If the battery is disconnected, the settings memory is cleared and the default value (OFF) is restored automatically.

Selection of the sound for the direction indicators

You can select the sound for the direction indicators, with the type 2 instrument panel only.

In the menu screen:

☞ press the **INFO** button to select sound 1 or 2 **(located in menu 2/3)**:

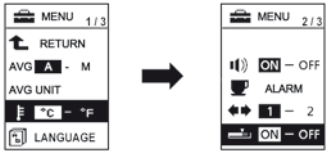


Activation / deactivation of the current fuel consumption*

You can activate or deactivate the display of the current fuel consumption, with the type 2 instrument panel only.

In the menu screen:

☞ press the **INFO** button to select the current fuel consumption activation / deactivation symbol **(located in menu 2/3)**:



☞ press and hold the **INFO** button for a few seconds to scroll through the choices in succession (ON, OFF).

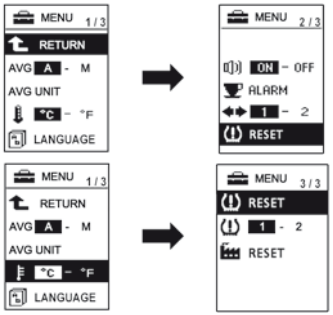
* Depending on equipment.

Reinitialising the under-inflation detection system (REINITIALISE)

You must reinitialise the under-inflation detection system after adjusting one or more tyre pressures or replacing one or more wheels.

In the menu screen:

☞ press the **INFO** button to select **"REINITIALISE" (located in menu 2/3 or 3/3 depending on the instrument panel)**:



☞ press and hold the **INFO** button for **at least 3 seconds**.

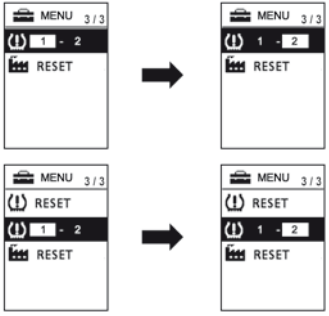
There is an audible signal and the under-inflation warning lamp flashes slowly until reinitialisation is complete.

Choice of the set of tyres fitted

If you have previously registered a second set of tyres with sensors, you must select the set in use in the display screen after every change.

In the menu screen:

☞ press the **INFO** button to select the set of tyres 1 or 2 **(located in menu 3/3)**:



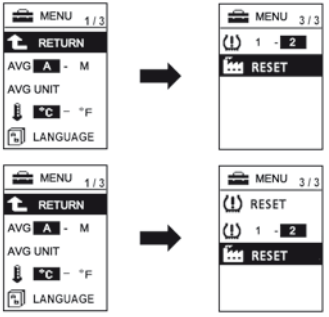
☞ press and hold the **INFO** button for **at least 3 seconds**.

Restoring factory settings (RESET)

You can restore the factory settings for all functions (except the under-inflation alert threshold and the choice of a set of tyres).

On the menu screen:

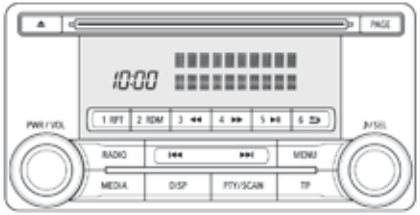
☞ press the **INFO** button to select **"RESET" (located in menu 3/3)**:



☞ press and hold the **INFO** button for **at least 5 seconds**.

There is an audible signal and all of the factory settings are restored for all functions.

Audio-CD system screen



Associated with the Audio-CD system, this screen displays the following information:

- the time,
- audio system information.

For more information on the **Audio and telematics**, refer to the corresponding section.

Setting the time

Selecting the adjustment mode

The digital clock can be set in **automatic mode** or in **manual mode**.

Automatic mode

This mode permits automatic setting of the local time using the signal from RDS stations. The symbol **"CT"** appears in the screen.

Manual mode

This mode permits manual setting of the time using the audio system buttons.
It can also be used when the "Automatic mode" displays an inaccurate time, when the local RDS stations are broadcasting from a different time zone.

To select the mode:

- ☞ Press the "**PWR/VOL**" button to switch on the audio system.
- ☞ Press the **MENU** button.
- ☞ Press the **SEL** knob to scroll through the menus and select "**RDS setting - CT ON - CT OFF**" (clock time).
- ☞ Turn the **SEL** knob to the left or to the right to select **"CT OFF"** (manual mode) or **"CT ON"** (automatic mode).
- ☞ Press the **SEL** knob to confirm.

i If no action is carried out within 10 seconds, the selection menu closes automatically.

Manual adjustment

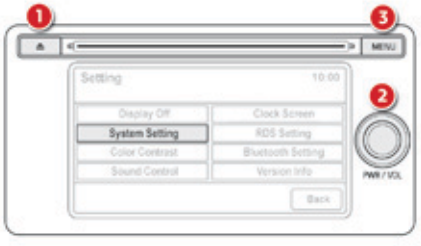
- ☞ Press the **PWR/VOL** button to switch on the audio system.
- ☞ Press the **MENU** button.
- ☞ Press the **SEL** knob to scroll through the menus and select "**Time Setting Adjust**".
- ☞ Turn the **SEL** knob to select "**ON**" for access to the time setting.
- ☞ Press the **SEL** knob to confirm.
- ☞ Turn the **SEL** knob to adjust the time.
- ☞ Press the **SEL** knob to confirm.

i The digital clock does not display seconds.
The time setting is lost if the battery is disconnected.

Audio-CD system touch screen

Associated with the touch screen Audio-CD system, this screen can display:
- the time,
- information related to the audio system.

For more information on the **Audio and telematics**, refer to the corresponding section.



1. CD eject.
2. System On / Off.
   Volume adjustment.
3. Access to the different menus in the system.

! For safety reasons, the driver should only carry out operations that require close attention with the vehicle stationary.

General operation

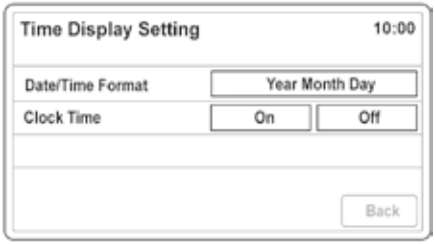
Use the buttons arranged on the screen to operate the system.

! Do not use pointed objects on the touch screen.
Do not touch the screen with wet hands.

i Use a clean soft cloth to clean the screen.

Setting the time

☞ Press the **MENU** button to display the main menu.
☞ Press "**Setting**".
☞ Press "**System Setting**".
☞ Press "**Time Setting**".



- ☞ Press "**Time Adjustment**".
- ☞ Use the virtual arrows in the screen to adjust the date and time.
- ☞ Press "**Set**" to confirm or "**Back**" to cancel and return to the previous screen.

Month.
Date.
Year.
Hour.
Min.
Day.

Display format

You can change the display format for the date and time:

- ☞ Press the **MENU** button.
- ☞ Press "**Setting**".
- ☞ Press "**System Setting**".

- ☞ Press "**Time Setting**".
- ☞ Press "**Time Display Setting**".

You can then select the format for the display of the date and time ("**Date/Time Format**") and activate automatic adjustment of the time ("**Clock Time**").

Permanent display

Once the data and time are set, you can choose to have them always displayed in the screen. To do this:

- ☞ Press the **MENU** button.
- ☞ Press "**Setting**".
- ☞ Press "**Clock Screen**".

The date and time are displayed.
Simply touch the screen again to return to the original display.

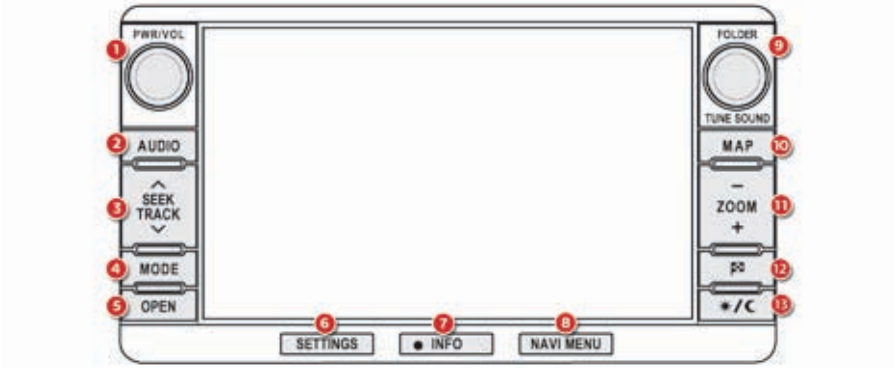
Audio-Telematic system touch screen

Associated with the touch screen Audio-Telematic system, this screen can display:

- the time,
- information related to the audio and navigation systems.
  For more information on the **Audio and telematics**, refer to the corresponding section.

General operation

Use the buttons on either side of the screen, or touch the virtual buttons in the screen to operate the system.



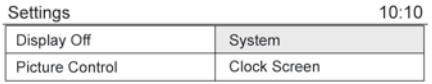
1. **PWR/VOL**: audio system on/off, volume adjustment.
2. **AUDIO**: display of the last audio source used.
3. **SEEK TRACK**: change of audio source, fast forward / rewind, automatic frequency search.
4. **MODE**: selection of an audio source.
5. **OPEN**: access to the CD/DVD player.
6. **SETTINGS**: access to system settings.
7. **INFO**: access to information (calendar, voice commands, etc.).
8. **NAVI MENU**: access to navigation settings.
9. **FOLDER / TUNE SOUND**: selection of a folder or search for a radio station.
10. **MAP**: display the map with the location of the vehicle.
11. **ZOOM**: zoom (in or out) on the map.
12. Access to the navigation settings and the selection of destination.
13. Day / night mode.

! For safety reasons, the driver should only carry out operations that require close attention with the vehicle stationary.
In addition, some functions are not accessible when driving.

! Do not use pointed objects on the touch screen.
Do not touch the screen with wet hands.

i Uses a soft clean cloth to clean the screen.

i For more information on the **Audio and telematics** and these menus in particular, refer to the corresponding section.



"Settings" menu

Press the **SETTINGS** button on the control panel to open the menu.

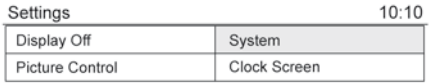
System screen

Once in the "**Settings**" menu, select "**System**" to modify the time zone, the units or the display language (English, Dutch, Swedish, French, Portuguese, Italian, German, Spanish, Norwegian, Flemish or Danish) and adjust other settings.

Setting the time

The digital clock is set **automatically**.
This mode enables the system to set the local time automatically using the signal from the RDS stations.

☞ On the control panel, press the **SETTINGS** button for access to settings.

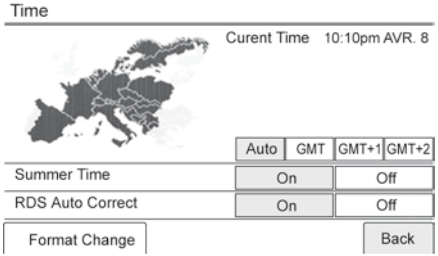


☞ On the touch screen, press the "**System**" button.

The system settings screen is displayed.

☞ Press the **"Time"** button.

Once this menu has been selected, you can access the following functions:



1. **Auto / GMT / GMT+1 / GMT+2:**
   Select the time zone.
2. **Summer Time:**
   Summer time On / Off.
3. **RDS Auto Correct:**
   Automatic adjustment On / Off.

☞ Press the **Back** button to confirm and return to the previous menu.

> ℹ You must deactivate automatic adjustment (RDS Auto Correct) to change the time zone and summer time settings.

Setting the display format

From the "**Time**" menu:

☞ press the "**Format Change**" button.

☞ adjust the display settings.

☞ press the "**Back**" button to confirm.

Lighting dimmer

System for manual adjustment of the brightness of the instruments and controls in relation to the exterior brightness.

With the lighting on or off, press the button to change the intensity of the lighting of the instruments and controls in "day" or "night" mode.

With the vehicle's lighting off, only the brightness of the instrument panel is modified.

Wit the vehicle's lighting on, the brightness of the entire dashboard (instrument panel, screen, air conditioning control panel...) is modified.

> i There is an audible signal and the intensity of the lighting increases each time the button is pressed.

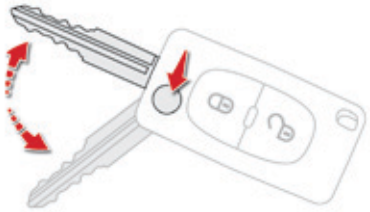
When the lighting reaches the maximum setting, press again to change to the minimum setting.
When the lighting reaches the required intensity, release the button.

The setting is saved when the ignition switch is turned to OFF.

Remote control key

System which permits central unlocking or locking of the vehicle using the door lock or remotely. It is also used for the guide-me-home lighting and starting the engine, as well as providing protection against theft.

Unlocking the vehicle

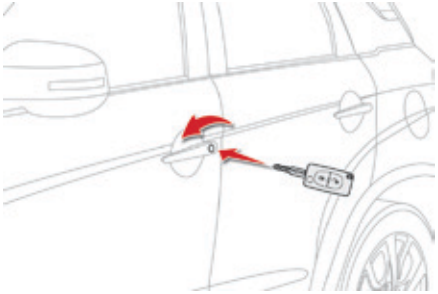


Unfolding the key

☞ First press this button to unfold the key.

Complete unlocking using the remote control

☞ Press the open padlock to unlock the vehicle.



Unlocking using the key

☞ Turn the key to the front in the driver's door lock to unlock it.

Unlocking is confirmed by the interior lighting which comes on for around 15 seconds and the direction indicators which flash **twice**.
According to version, the door mirrors unfold at the same time.

Selective unlocking using the remote control

☞ Press the open padlock once to unlock the driver's door only.

☞ Press the open padlock again to unlock the other doors and the boot.

Unlocking is confirmed by illumination of the interior lighting for about 15 seconds and the direction indicators, which flash **twice**.
According to version, the door mirrors unfold at the same time as the first unlocking action.

Selective unlocking is only available on versions not fitted with deadlocking.
Selective unlocking is not available using the key.

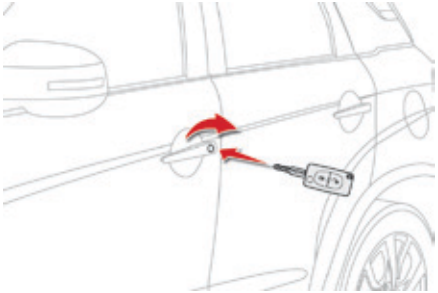
Locking the vehicle

Normal locking using the remote control

☞ Press the closed padlock to lock the vehicle completely.

Locking is confirmed by the direction indicators which flash **once**.
According to version, the door mirrors fold at the same time.

If one of the doors or the boot is still open, the central locking does not take place.
When the vehicle is locked, if it is unlocked inadvertently, it will lock itself again automatically after a certain time unless a door is open.



Normal locking using the key

☞ Turn the key to the rear in the driver's door lock to lock it.

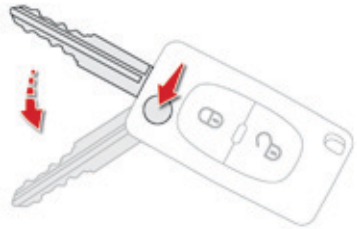
Deadlocking using the remote control

☞ Press the closed padlock to lock the vehicle completely.

☞ Press the closed padlock again within five seconds to deadlock the vehicle.

ℹ Deadlocking is confirmed by the direction indicators, which flash **three times**.
According to version, the door mirrors fold at the same time.

! Deadlocking renders the exterior and interior door controls inoperative.
It also deactivates the manual central control button.
Therefore, you should never leave anyone inside the vehicle when it is deadlocked.

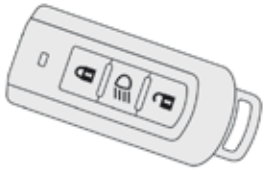


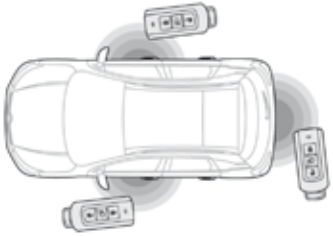
Folding the key

☞ Press this button before folding the key.

! If you do not press the button, there is a risk of damaging the remote control.

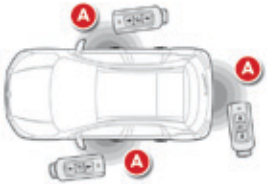
"Keyless Entry and Starting" system

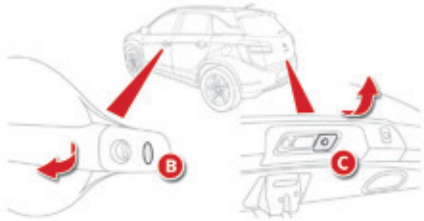




System that allows the locking, unlocking and starting of the vehicle while keeping the electronic key on your person.
It can also be used as a remote control.
For more information on the **Remote control key**, refer to the corresponding section.

Unlocking the vehicle





Complete unlocking

☞ With the electronic key on your person and in one of the defined zones **A**, press one of the buttons **B** or **C** to unlock the vehicle, then pull on the handle to open the door.
Your passengers can also open their doors, as soon as the electronic key is in one of the defined zones.

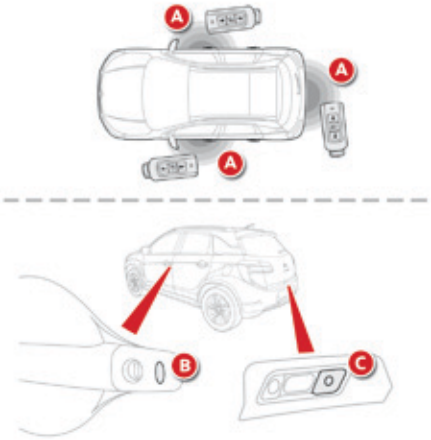
! For security, the detection zones in which the electronic key is operational have a radius of about 70 cm around each opening button.

Selective unlocking

☞ With the electronic key on your person, press button **B** once to unlock only the driver's door, then pull on the door handle to open.
☞ Press button **B** again to unlock the vehicle completely.

i Unlocking is confirmed by an audible signal and the direction indicators which flash **twice**.
The door mirrors unfold at the same time.
Selective unlocking is only available on versions not fitted with deadlocking.

Locking the vehicle



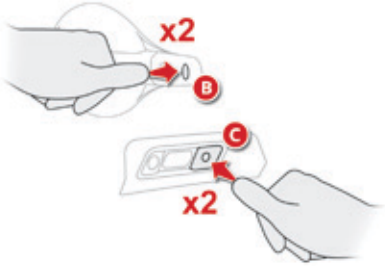
Locking

☞ With the key in one of the defined zones **A**, press one of the buttons **B** or **C**.

ℹ Locking is confirmed by an audible signal and the direction indicators, which flash **once**.
The door mirrors fold at the same time.

ℹ The operating mode must be "OFF". With Stop & Start, if the engine is in Stop mode, the vehicle cannot be locked.

! Always ensure that you have the electronic key on your person before locking the vehicle: in some circumstances, it is possible to lock the vehicle without the presence of the electronic key having been detected inside the vehicle.



Deadlocking

☞ With the electronic key in one of the defined zones **A**, press button **B** or **C** to lock the vehicle.

☞ Within five seconds, press button **B** or **C** again to deadlock the vehicle.

ℹ Locking is confirmed by two audible signals and by the direction indicators which flash **three times**.
The door mirrors unfold at the same time.

! Deadlocking renders the exterior and interior door controls inoperative.
It also deactivates the manual central control button.
Therefore, never leave anyone inside the vehicle when it is deadlocked.

Switching on the lighting remotely

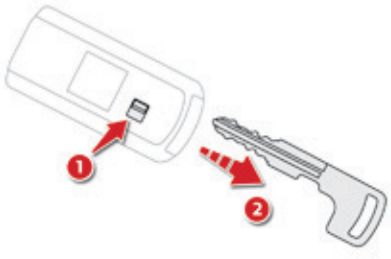
This only operates with the **ignition off** and the lighting control in the "**OFF**" or "**AUTO**" position.

Press this button to switch on the lighting remotely (illumination of the sidelamps and dipped beam headlamps) for a period of 30 seconds.
A second press switches off the lighting.

Remote operation of the lighting will be switched off:
- on switching on the ignition,
- if the lighting control is not in the "**OFF**" or "**AUTO**" position,
- when activating manual guide-me-home lighting.

Emergency procedure with the Keyless Entry and Starting system

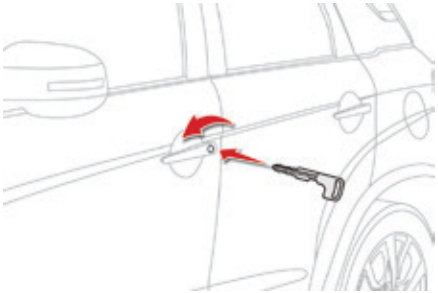
Emergency unlocking/locking using the integral key



The integral key is used to lock and unlock the vehicle when the electronic key cannot operate:

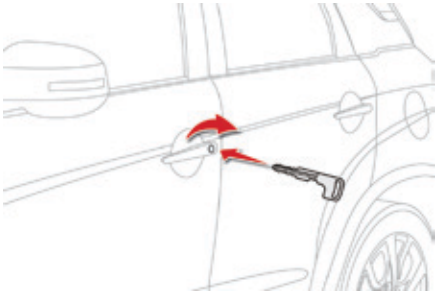
- cell battery flat, vehicle battery discharged or disconnected, etc.
- vehicle located in an area with strong electro-magnetic signals.

☞ Pull and hold button **1**, to extract the integral key **2**.



Unlocking

☞ Turn the key towards the front in the driver's door lock to unlock it.



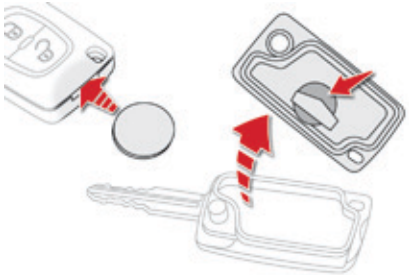
Locking

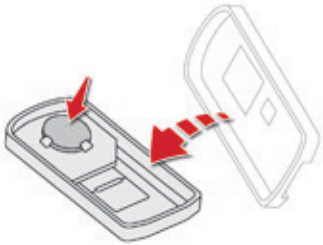
☞ Turn the key towards the rear in the driver's door lock to lock it.

ℹ The emergency key allows you to lock or unlock the driver's door only.
To lock or unlock the other doors, use the interior controls.
For more information on **Locking / unlocking from inside**, refer to the corresponding section.

Changing the batteries

With the Keyless Entry and Starting system, a message appears in the instrument panel when replacement of the battery is needed.





Remote control key

Battery ref.: CR1620 / 3 volts.

Electronic key

Battery ref.: CR2032 / 3 volt.

- Unclip the cover using a small screwdriver at the cut-out.
- Lift off the cover.
- Remove the flat battery from its location.
- Fit the new battery into its location observing the original direction of fitment.
- Clip the cover onto the casing.

! Observe the polarity when fitting the cell battery, as it could explode.
Always replace the cell battery with one that is identical or of equivalent type.
When the housing is open, take car to protect it from water and dust.

Do not throw the remote control batteries away, they contain metals which are harmful to the environment. Take them to an approved collection point.

Lost electronic key

Visit a CITROËN dealer with the vehicle's registration document and your personal identification documents and if possible the key code label.
The CITROËN dealer will be able to retrieve the key code and the transponder code required to order a new key.

Electronic key

The electronic key is a sensitive system; do not operate it while it is in your pocket as there is a possibility that it may unlock the vehicle, without you being aware of it.
Do not repeatedly press the buttons of your electronic key out of range and out of sight of your vehicle. You run the risk of stopping it from working and the remote control would have to be reinitialised.
The electronic key cannot operate as a remote control when it is in the reader or even when the ignition is switched on.

Locking the vehicle

Driving with the doors locked may make access to the passenger compartment by the emergency services more difficult in an emergency.
As a safety precaution, never leave children alone in the vehicle, even for a very short time.
In all cases, take the remote control or electronic key (if Keyless Entry and Starting) with you when leaving the vehicle.

Electrical interference

The Keyless Entry and Starting electronic key may not operate if close to certain electronic devices: telephone, laptop computer, strong magnetic fields, ...

Anti-theft protection

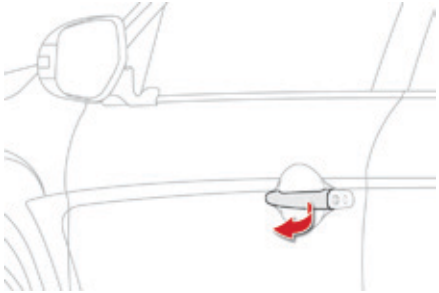
Do not make any modifications to the electronic engine immobiliser system; this could cause malfunctions.
Don't forget to turn the steering to engage the steering lock.

When purchasing a second-hand vehicle

Have all of the keys in your possession paired by a CITROËN dealer, to ensure that only your keys allow your vehicle to be unlocked and started.

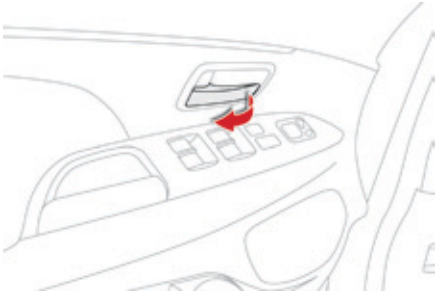
Doors

Opening



From outside

☞ After unlocking the vehicle using the remote control or the key, pull the door handle.



From inside

☞ Pull the front or rear door lever to open the door.

On the driver's side, this action on the door lever unlocks the door if it was locked.

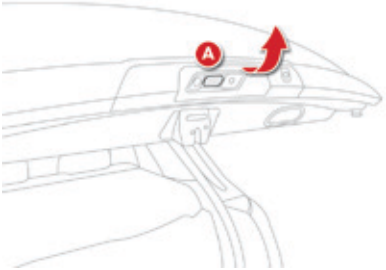
On the passenger's side or for the rear doors, the door must first be unlocked manually if it was locked.
For more information on **Locking / unlocking from inside** and in particular the individual controls, refer to the corresponding section.

Closing

If a door is not closed correctly, this symbol comes on in the instrument panel screen until the door concerned is closed.

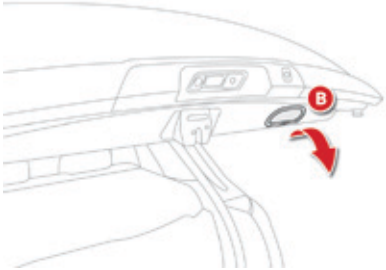
Boot

Opening



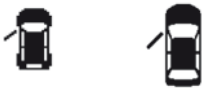
☞ After unlocking the vehicle, press the handle **A** and raise the tailgate.

Closing



☞ Pull the handle **B** downwards to guide the tailgate.

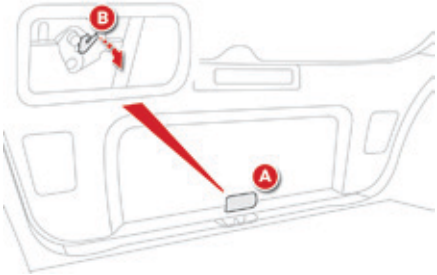
☞ Release the handle and press gently on the exterior surface of the tailgate to close it.



If the tailgate is not fully closed, this symbol comes on in the instrument panel screen until it is closed.

Emergency release

This enables the boot to be unlocked in the event of a central locking fault.



- Fold back the rear seats to gain access to the tailgate release from inside the boot.
- Remove the plastic cover from the opening **A** in the tailgate interior pillar.
- Move the control **B** to the right to unlock and open the boot.

Locking / unlocking from inside

Central locking control

System which provides full manual locking or unlocking of the doors and boot from the inside.

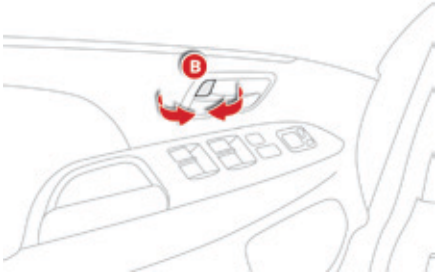
Locking

☞ Press the front of button **A** to lock the vehicle.

Unlocking

☞ Press the rear of button **A** to unlock the vehicle.

Individual controls



Locking the front and rear doors

☞ Pivot the interior control **B** towards the front.

This control can also be used to lock the front passenger's door and the rear doors in the event of a failure with the central locking. To do this:

☞ Open the door in question.

☞ Pivot the interior control **B** towards the front, then close the door.

! It is possible to lock the vehicle with a passenger door open, using using the individual locking controls: ensure that you have the key before closing the passenger door.

Unlocking the front and rear doors

☞ Pivot the interior control **B** towards the rear.

Alarm*

System which protects and provides a deterrent against theft and break-ins. It provides the following types of monitoring:

- perimeter

The system checks for any opening of the vehicle.
The alarm is triggered if anyone tries to open a door, the boot, the bonnet, etc.

- volumetric

The system checks for any variation in the volume of the passenger compartment.
The alarm is triggered if anyone breaks a window, enters the passenger compartment or moves inside the vehicle.

- tilt

The system checks for any change in the position of the vehicle.
The alarm is triggered if the vehicle is lifted, moved or knocked.

Self-protection function

The system checks for the putting out of service of its components.
The alarm is triggered if the battery, the central control or the siren wiring are put out of service or damaged.

! For all work on the alarm system, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Locking the vehicle with full alarm system

Activation

- ☞ Switch off the ignition (OFF mode if your vehicle has the Keyless Entry and Starting system).
- ☞ Remove the key from the ignition switch, if your vehicle does not have the "Keyless Entry and Starting" system.
- ☞ Leave the vehicle, and close all the doors and the bonnet.
- ☞ Press the locking button on the remote control or one of the door or boot buttons if your vehicle has the "Keyless Entry and Starting" system.

The alarm is being activated: the indicator lamp **A** flashes rapidly accompanied by an intermittent audible signal for about 20 seconds.
Once the 20 seconds have expired, **the system is active**. The audible signal stops and the indicator lamp in the button flashes slowly.

Deactivation

Do one of the following to deactivate the alarm:

- ☞ Press the unlocking button on the remote control or one of the door or boot buttons if your vehicle has the "Keyless Entry and Starting" system.
- ☞ Switch on the ignition (ON mode if your vehicle has the "Keyless Entry and Starting" system).
- ☞ Open a door or the boot while the system is being activated.

The alarm system is deactivated: the indicator lamp **A** goes off.

* Depending on equipment.

Locking the vehicle with perimeter monitoring only

Deactivate the interior volumetric and tilt monitoring to avoid unwanted triggering of the alarm in certain cases, such as:
- an animal left in the vehicle,
- a window left partly open,
- washing your vehicle.

Deactivation of the interior volumetric and tilt monitoring

☞ Switch off the ignition and remove the key from the ignition switch (OFF mode if your vehicle has the "Keyless Entry and Starting" system).
☞ Raise and hold the wiper control stalk in the **"MIST"** position for about 3 seconds.
☞ The audible signal sounds **once** and the interior volumetric and tilt monitoring are deactivated.

Raise and hold the wiper control stalk in the "**MIST**" position for about 3 seconds to activate them again, the audible signal sounds **twice**.

Triggering of the alarm

This is indicated by sounding of the siren and flashing of the direction indicators for thirty seconds.
A message then appears in the instrument panel screen while the siren is operating.
When the ignition is next switched on (ON mode if your vehicle has the "Keyless Entry and Starting" system), an audible signal sounds four times to inform you that the alarm was triggered during your absence.

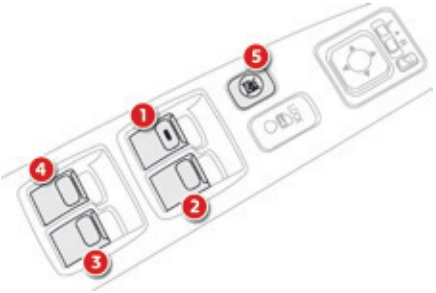
Complete deactivation of the alarm

You can completely deactivate the alarm system. To do this, proceed as follows:

- ☞ Switch off the ignition (OFF mode if your vehicle has the "Keyless Entry and Starting" system).
- ☞ Remove the key from the ignition switch, if your vehicle does not have the "Keyless Entry and Starting" system.
- ☞ Open the driver's door.
- ☞ Place the lighting control stalk in the "**OFF**" position.
- ☞ Pull the wiper control stalk towards you and hold.
  After about ten seconds there is an audible signal.
- ☞ When the audible signal stops, continue to hold the wiper stalk pulled towards you and press the remote control locking button.
- ☞ The state of the system is then signalled to you by the number of beeps:
  One beep: the alarm system is completely deactivated.
  Two beeps: the alarm system is activated.
  Each new press of the remote control locking button changes the state of the system.

Electric windows

System which opens or closes a window manually or automatically. It is fitted with a system which provides protection if an obstacle is detected on one-touch models and a deactivation system to prevent misuse of the rear controls.



1. **Driver's electric window.**
2. **Passenger's electric window.**
3. **Rear right electric window.**
4. **Rear left electric window.**
5. **Deactivating the passenger and rear electric window switches.**

Front and rear passengers' electric windows

☞ With the ignition on, press or pull the switch. The window stops when you release the switch.

Driver's one-touch electric window

With the ignition on, you have two options:

- **manual mode**
  ☞ Press the switch gently to open or pull it gently to close. The window stops as soon as the switch is released.
- **automatic mode**
  ☞ Press the switch fully to open or pull it fully to close. The window opens or closes completely when the switch is released.
  ☞ Pressing the switch again stops the movement of the window.

ℹ The electric window switches remain operational for approximately 30 seconds after the ignition is switched off.
The windows can no longer be opened or closed once a front door is opened.
The rear windows do not lower fully.

Safety anti-pinch (driver's side)

In automatic mode, when the window rises and meets an obstacle, it stops and lowers again.

Reinitialising the electric windows

Should there be no automatic movement of a window when rising or after the safety anti-pinch has been triggered three times in succession, the electric windows must be reinitialised.

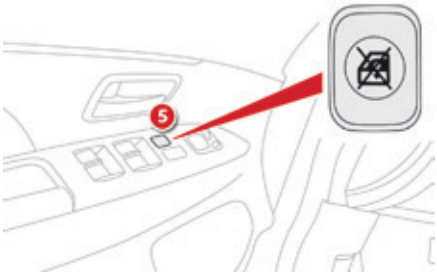
From the switch in the driver's door:

- pull the switch until the window is fully closed, then release it,
- pull the switch again for at least one second after reaching the window closed position.

The safety anti-pinch function is not active during these operations.

Always remove the key from the ignition when leaving the vehicle, even for a short time.
In the event of contact during operation of the windows, you must reverse the movement of the window. To do this, press the switch concerned.
When the driver operates the passenger electric window switches, they must ensure that no one is preventing correct closing of the windows.
The driver must ensure that passengers use the electric windows correctly.
Be particularly aware of children when operating the windows.

Deactivating the passenger and rear electric window switches



- For the safety of your children, press switch **5** to prevent operation of the passenger and rear electric windows irrespective of their position.

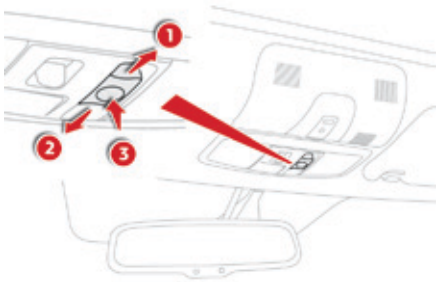
When the button is pressed down, the switches are deactivated.
When the button is up, the switches are activated.

When the button is pressed down, only the window in the driver's door operates.

Panoramic sunroof

It has a motorised blind.

Motorised blind



With the ignition on, there are two ways of opening or closing the blind:

- ☞ Briefly pull or push the control in direction **1** or **2**, the blind stops when you release the control.
- ☞ Maintain pressure on the control in direction **1** or **2** until movement starts, the blind then opens or closes fully.

Stopping temporarily

- ☞ To stop the opening or closing of the blind, press part **3** of the control or reverse the movement of the control.

Safety anti-pinch

At the end of its travel, if the blind encounters an obstacle to closing, it stops and moves back slightly.

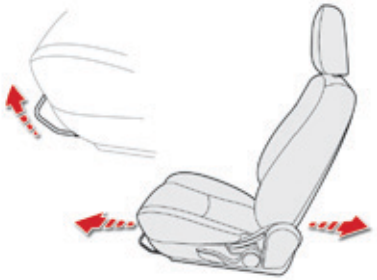
! Remember to always switch off the ignition when leaving the vehicle, even for a short time.
When operating the control, the driver should ensure that there is nothing preventing movement of the blind.
The driver must ensure that passengers use the blind correctly.
Be particularly aware of children when operating the blind.

Front seats

Seat consisting of a seat cushion, a seat back and a head restraint which can all be adjusted to adapt your position for ease of driving and comfort.

i As a safety measure, seat adjustments should only be done when stationary.

Manual adjustments

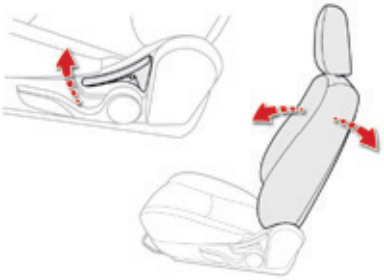


Forwards-backwards

☞ Raise the control bar and slide the seat forwards or backwards.

When the seat is in the correct position, push it forwards and backwards without raising the control bar to check that the it has latched.

! Before moving the seat backwards, ensure that there is nothing that might prevent the full travel of the seat. There is a risk of trapping or pinching passengers if present in the rear seats or jamming the seat if large objects are placed on the floor behind the seat.

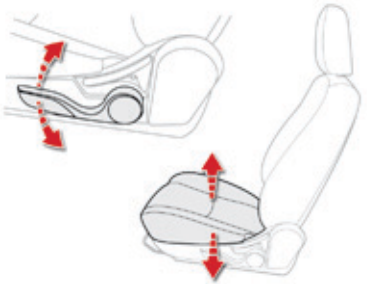


Seat backrest angle

☞ Pull the control lever up to adjust the seat backrest.

! When the backrest is at the desired angle, release the control.

When the backrest is at the correct angle, release the control lever. To ensure that the backrest does not suddenly fold forwards and hurt you, restrain it with your back or your hand while operating the control.



Driver's seat height

☞ Pull the control upwards to raise or push it downwards to lower, as many times as necessary, to obtain the position required.

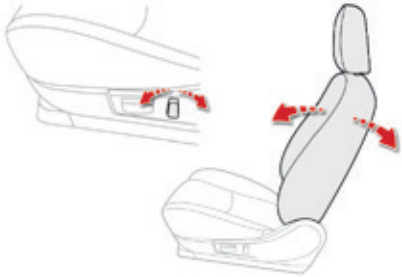
Front seats

Electric adjustments

Forwards-backwards

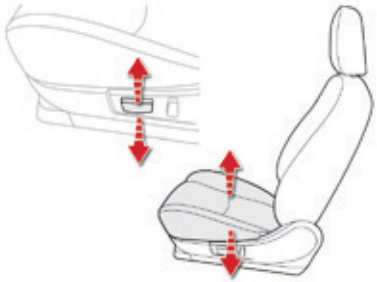
☞ Push the control forwards or rearwards to slide the seat.

! Before moving the seat backwards, ensure that there is nothing that might prevent the full travel of the seat. There is a risk of trapping or pinching passengers if present in the rear seats or jamming the seat if large objects are placed on the floor behind the seat.



Seat backrest angle

☞ Tilt the control forwards or rearwards to adjust the angle of the seat backrest.



Driver's seat cushion height and angle

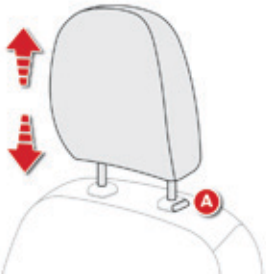
☞ Pull or push the front part of the control upwards or downwards to raise or lower the front of the seat cushion.

☞ Pull or push the rear part of the control upwards or downwards to raise or lower the rear of the seat cushion.

☞ Pull or push all of the control upwards or downwards to raise or lower the whole seat cushion.

i To avoid discharging the battery, carry out these adjustments with the engine running.

Additional adjustments



Head restraint height

- To raise a head restraint, pull it upwards.
- To lower the head restraint, press the lug **A** and the head restraint at the same time.

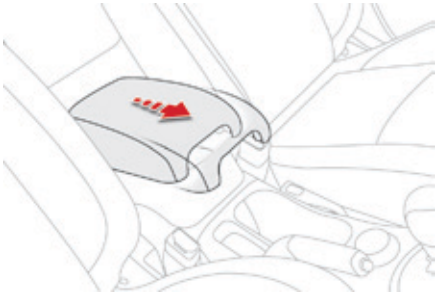
The head restraint is fitted with a frame with notches which prevents it from lowering; this is a safety device in case of impact.
The adjustment is correct when the upper edge of the head restraint is level with the top of the head.

Removing a head restraint

- To remove a head restraint, press the lug **A** and pull the head restraint upwards.
- To put the head restraint back in place, engage the head restraint stems in the openings keeping them in line with the seat back and press the lug **A** at the same time.

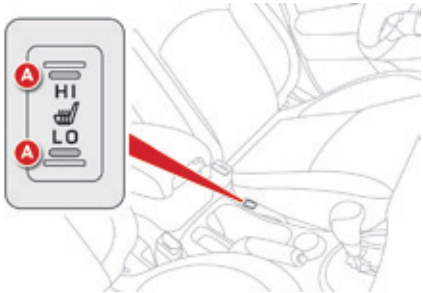
! Never drive with the head restraints removed; they must be in place and adjusted correctly.

Front armrest



You can move the console housing cover in order to use it as an armrest.

Heated seats adjustment



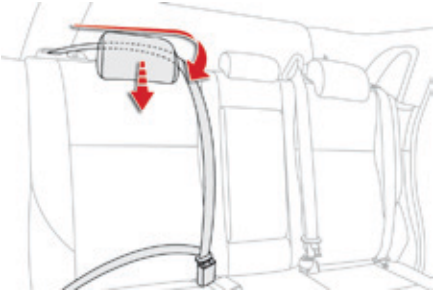
With the engine running, tilt the button to the position required.
The temperature of the seat is regulated automatically.
There are two setting positions:
- "HI": High heating
- "LO": Low heating

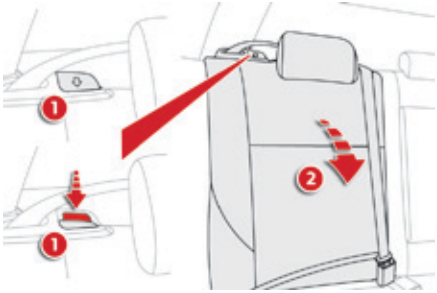
When the button is in the intermediate position, the heating is switched off.
The indicator lamps **A** come on when the system is activated.

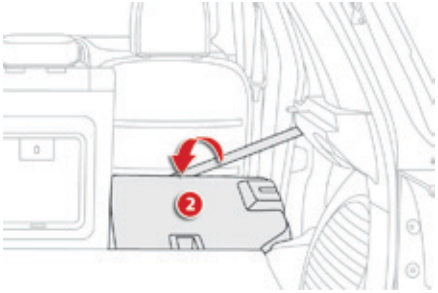
Rear seats

Bench seat with fixed one-piece cushion and split backrest (left-hand 2/3, right-hand 1/3) which can be folded individually to adapt the load space in the boot.

Folding the backrest



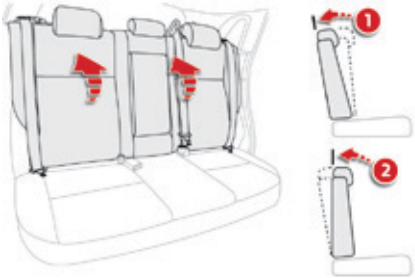




- ☞ Move the corresponding front seat forward if necessary.
- ☞ Place the head restraints in the low position (see "Rear head restraints").
- ☞ Press control **1** forwards to release the seat backrest **2**.
- ☞ Fold the backrest **2** on to the cushion.

Repositioning the seat backrest

- ☞ Straighten the seat backrest **2** and secure it.
- ☞ Check that the red indicator, located next to the control **1**, is no longer visible.

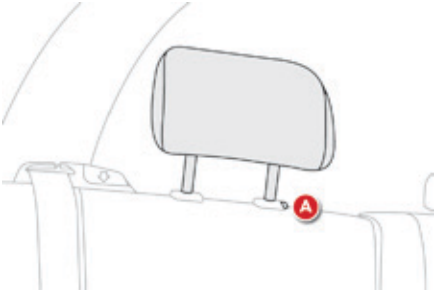


When repositioning the seat backrests, they can be locked in one of two different positions, depending on the speed at which the operation is carried out:

- if done quickly, the backrest returns to its original position **1**,
- if done slowly, the backrest goes into the vertical position **2**.

To go from position **2** to position **1**, simply release the backrest and push it until it locks in place.

Rear head restraints



These have one position for use (up) and a stowed position (down).
They can also be removed.
To remove a head restraint:

- ☞ pull the head restraint upwards to the stop,
- ☞ then, press the lug **A**.

> ! Never drive with the head restraints removed; they must be in place and correctly adjusted.

Rear armrest

- ☞ Lower the rear armrest for a more comfortable position.

It may be fitted with cup holders and also gives access to the ski flap.

Ski flap

Device for storing and transporting long objects.

Opening

- ☞ Lower the armrest.
- ☞ Lower the flap opening control.
- ☞ Lower the flap.
- ☞ Load the objects from inside the boot.

Mirrors

Door mirrors

Each fitted with an adjustable mirror glass permitting the lateral rearward vision necessary for overtaking or parking. They can also be folded for parking in confined spaces.

Demisting - Defrosting

If your vehicle is fitted with heated mirrors, the demisting-defrosting operates with the engine running, by switching on the heated rear screen.

For more information on **Demisting-defrosting the rear screen**, refer to the corresponding section.

Adjustment

Adjustment is possible when the ignition switch is in the "ON" or "ACC" position.

- ☞ Move control **A** to the right or to the left to select the corresponding mirror.
- ☞ Move control **B** in all four directions to adjust.
- ☞ Return control **A** to the central position.

! The objects observed are, in reality, closer than they appear.
Take this into account in order to correctly judge the distance of vehicles approaching from behind.

Electric folding / unfolding

From inside:

- with the ignition switch in the "ON" or "ACC" position, by pressing the control **C**,
- with the ignition switch in the "LOCK" position, by pressing control **C**, **within 30 seconds**.

From the outside:

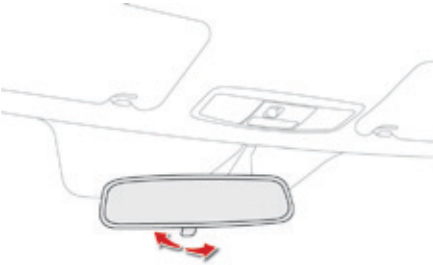
☞ by locking or unlocking the vehicle, using the remote control or the locking / unlocking buttons (for vehicles fitted with the "Keyless Entry and Starting" system).

! If you have folded the mirrors using the control **C**, you must use this control to unfold them, otherwise the mirrors will not be lock in place correctly.
The mirrors can also be folded manually.

Rear view mirror

Equipped with an anti-dazzle system, which darkens the mirror glass and reduces the nuisance to the driver caused by the sun, headlamps from other vehicles...

Manual model



Adjustment

☞ Adjust the mirror so that the glass is directed correctly in the "day" position.

Day / night position

☞ Pull the lever to change to the "night" anti-dazzle position.

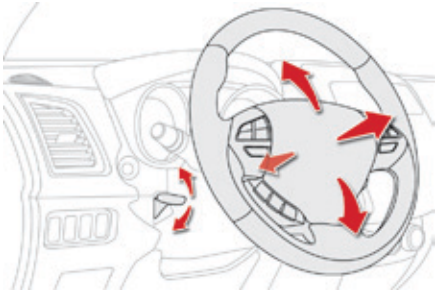
☞ Push the lever to change to the normal "day" position.

Automatic "electrochrome" model

This system automatically and progressively changes between the day and night uses by means of a sensor, which measures the light from the rear of the vehicle.

ℹ In order to ensure optimum visibility during your manoeuvres, the mirror lightens automatically when reverse gear is engaged.

Steering wheel adjustment



☞ **When stationary**, lower the control lever to release the steering wheel adjustment mechanism.

☞ Adjust the height and reach to suit your driving position.

☞ Pull the control lever to lock the steering wheel adjustment mechanism.

! As a safety precaution, these operations should only be carried out while the vehicle is stationary.

Ventilation

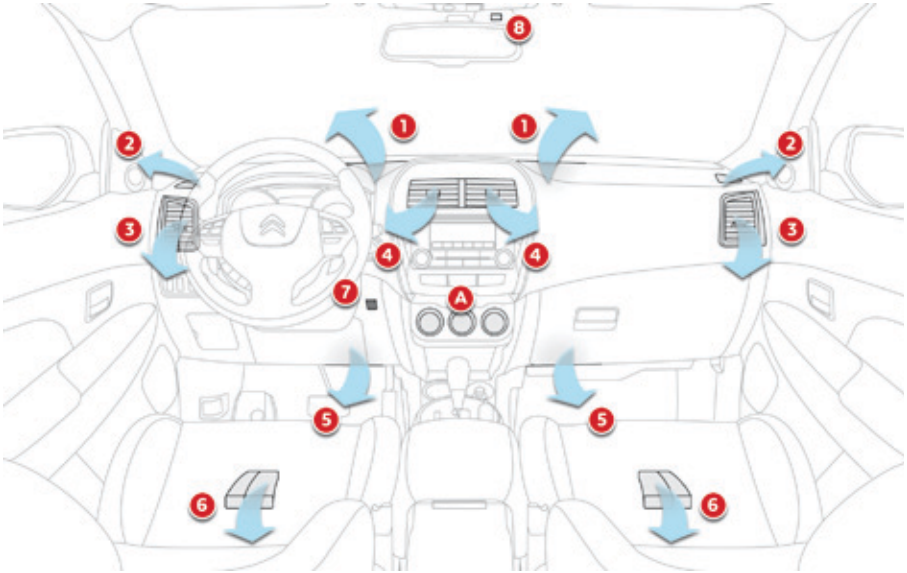
Air intake

The air circulating in the passenger compartment is filtered and originates either from the outside via the grille located at the base of the windscreen or from the inside in air recirculation mode.

Air treatment

The incoming air follows various routes depending on the controls selected by the driver:

- direct arrival in the passenger compartment (air intake),
- passage through a heating circuit (heating),
- passage through a cooling circuit (air conditioning).



Control panel

The controls of this system are grouped together on control panel **A** on the centre console.

Air distribution

1. Windscreen demisting-defrosting vents.
2. Front side window demisting-defrosting vents.
3. Side adjustable air vents.
4. Central adjustable air vents.
5. Air outlets to the front footwells.
6. Air outlets to the rear footwells.
7. Temperature sensor.
8. Sunshine / rain sensor.

Recommendations for ventilation and air conditioning

In order for these systems to be fully effective, follow the operation and maintenance guidelines below:

- To obtain an even air distribution, take care not to obstruct the exterior air intake grilles located at the base of the windscreen, the nozzles, the vents and the air outlets, as well as the air extractor located in the boot.
- Do not cover the sunshine sensor, located on the dashboard; this is used for regulation of the air conditioning system.
- Operate the air conditioning system for at least 5 to 10 minutes, once or twice a month to keep it in perfect working order.
- Ensure that the passenger compartment filter is in good condition and have the filter elements replaced regularly.
  We recommend the use of a combined passenger compartment filter. Thanks to its special active additive, it contributes to the purification of the air breathed by the occupants and the cleanliness of the passenger compartment (reduction of allergic symptoms, bad odours and greasy deposits).
- To ensure correct operation of the air conditioning system, you are also advised to have it checked regularly as recommended in the maintenance and warranty guide.
- If the system does not produce cold air, switch it off and contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

When towing the maximum load on a steep gradient in high temperatures, switching off the air conditioning increases the available engine power and so improves the towing ability.

If after an extended stop in sunshine, the interior temperature is very high, first ventilate the passenger compartment for a few moments.
Put the air flow control at a setting high enough to quickly change the air in the passenger compartment.

Humid air cooled quickly by the vehicle's air conditioning system may produce condensation at the vent outlets.
This phenomenon disappears after a few seconds.

The condensation created by the air conditioning results in a discharge of water under the vehicle which is perfectly normal.

Manual heating / air conditioning

The system operates with the engine running.

1. Temperature setting

☞ Turn the temperature control dial to the right to raise the temperature, and to the left to lower it.

2. Air flow setting

☞ Turn the dial to the right to increase and to the left to reduce the air flow.

i To avoid misting and deterioration of the air quality in the passenger compartment, ensure that an adequate air flow is maintained.

3. Air distribution setting

☞ Place the dial in the desired position, to direct air towards:

the centre and side vents,

the centre, side and footwell vents,

the footwells,

the windscreen, side windows and footwells,

the windscreen and side windows.

The air distribution can be modulated by placing the dial in intermediate positions.

4. Exterior air intake / Recirculation of interior air

☞ Press button **4** to select the air entry mode.

This function allows the passenger compartment to be isolated from exterior odours and smoke.
When the warning lamp in button **4** is off, the intake of exterior air is active.
When the warning lamp in button **4** is on, the intake of exterior air is deactivated, and you are in air recirculation.
Do not drive for long with interior air recirculation, except in truly exceptional atmospheric conditions.

5. Air conditioning On / Off

The air conditioning is designed to operate effectively in all seasons, with the windows closed.
It enables you to:
- lower the temperature, in summer,
- increase the effectiveness of the demisting in winter, above 3 °C.

Switching on

☞ Press button **5**, the lamp in the button comes on.

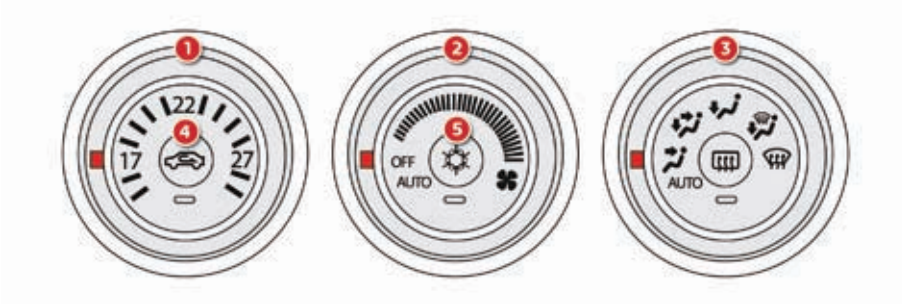
Switching off

☞ Press button **5** again, the lamp in the button goes off.

Switching off may affect comfort levels (humidity, condensation).

ℹ If your vehicle is not fitted with air conditioning, the button is not active.

Automatic air conditioning



1. Temperature adjustment
2. Air flow adjustment
3. Air distribution adjustment
4. Intake of exterior air / Recirculation of interior air
5. Air conditioning On / Off

Automatic operation

- ☞ Set the temperature control dial **1** to the temperature required.
- ☞ Place the air flow control dial **2** in the **"AUTO"** position.
- ☞ Place the air distribution adjustment dial **3** in the **"AUTO"** position.

The system controls the air distribution, the flow, the temperature and the air intake to ensure the level of comfort selected and adequate air circulation in the passenger compartment. No further action on your part is required.

In automatic mode:

- ☞ when the temperature is set to maximum (Rapid heating), the intake of exterior air is activated and the air conditioning stops.
- ☞ when the temperature is set to minimum (Rapid cooling), air recirculation is activated and the air conditioning operates.

ℹ When the engine is cold, to avoid an excessive distribution of cold air, the ventilation will reach its optimum level gradually.
On entering the vehicle, the interior temperature may be much colder (or warmer) than the temperature setting. There is no need to change the temperature setting in order to reach the comfort required rapidly.
The automatic regulation of the air conditioning will operate to correct the temperature difference as quickly as possible.

Manual settings

It is possible to set one or more functions manually while leaving the other functions in automatic mode.
Switching to manual mode may result in discomfort (temperature, humidity, odour, condensation) and does not offer optimum comfort.

1. Temperature setting

☞ Turn the temperature control dial to the right to increase the temperature and to the left to decrease it.

2. Air flow setting

☞ Turn the dial to the right to increase the air flow or to the left to decrease it.

To avoid condensation and deterioration of the quality of the air in the passenger compartment, ensure that a sufficient flow of air is maintained.

3. Air distribution setting

☞ Place the dial in the position required to direct the air towards:

the central and side vents,

the central and side vents and the footwells,

the footwells,

the windscreen, the side windows and the footwells,

the windscreen and the side windows.

The air distribution can be adapted by placing the adjustment dial in the intermediate positions.

4. Intake of exterior air / Recirculation of interior air

This function insulates the passenger compartment from exterior odours and smoke.

☞ Press button **4** to select the air intake mode.

When the indicator lamp on button **4** is off, the exterior air intake function is on.
When the indicator lamp on button **4** is on, the intake of exterior air is off and the system is in air recirculation mode.

ℹ Do not drive for long periods in interior air recirculation mode, except in truly exceptional atmospheric conditions.

Personalisation of the Exterior air intake / Interior air recirculation function

This function is controlled automatically. However, you can deactivate its automatic control if you wish to change the air intake mode at any time.

Changing the status

Press the Air intake / Interior air recirculation button for at least 10 seconds.
When the status changes from active to inactive, three bleeps are heard and the indicator lamp flashes three times.
When the status changes from inactive to active, two bleeps are heard and the indicator lamp flashes three times.

Automatic control active

If the air distribution adjustment dial and the air flow adjustment dial are placed in the "AUTO" position, the Air intake / Interior air recirculation function is also controlled automatically.

Automatic control inactive

Even if the air distribution adjustment dial and the air flow adjustment dial are placed in the "AUTO" position, the Air intake / Interior air recirculation function is no longer controlled automatically.
The settings are retained, even after switching off the ignition.

5. Air conditioning On / Off

☞ Press button **5** to activate the air conditioning.

The indicator lamp comes on.

Personalisation of the Air Conditioning On / Off function

This function is controlled automatically. However, you can deactivate its automatic control if you wish to activate or deactivate the air conditioning at any time.

Changing the status

Press the Air Conditioning On / Off button for at least 10 seconds.
When the status changes from active to inactive, three bleeps are heard and the indicator lamp flashes three times.
When the status changes from inactive to active, two bleeps are heard and the indicator lamp flashes three times.

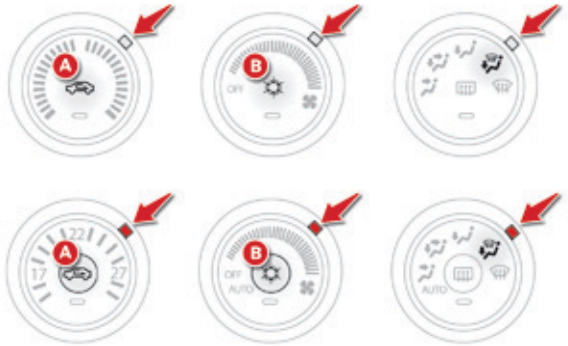
Automatic control active

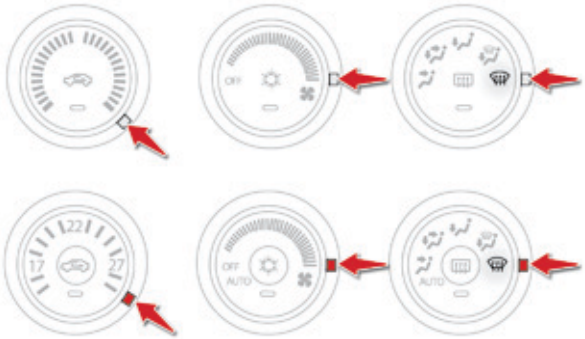
If the air distribution adjustment dial and the air flow adjustment dial are placed in the "AUTO" position, or if the temperature control dial is set to the minimum temperature, the air conditioning system is controlled automatically.

Automatic control inactive

The air conditioning system is no longer controlled automatically.

Front demist - defrost





1. Press button **A**, to select "exterior air intake". The lamp in the button is off.
2. Place the air distribution dial in the "windscreen, side windows and footwells" position.
3. Select the desired level of air flow.
4. Select the desired temperature.
5. If your vehicle has air conditioning, switch it on by pressing button **B**. The lamp in this button comes on.

Rapid demisting

1. Place the distribution control on the "windscreen and side window" position.
2. Select maximum air flow.
3. Select maximum temperature.

Rear screen demist - defrost

The control button is located on the air conditioning system control panel.

Switching on

The rear screen demisting/defrosting can only operate when the engine is running.

☞ Press this button to demist/defrost the rear screen and (depending on version) the door mirrors. The indicator lamp associated with the button comes on.

Switching off

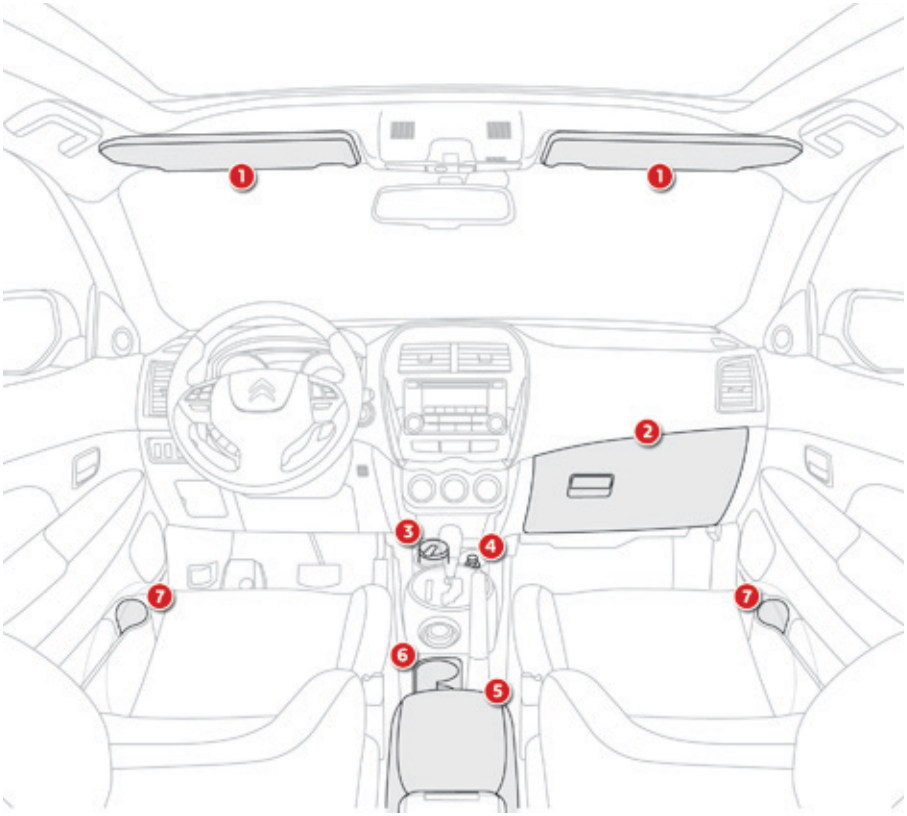
The demisting/defrosting switches off automatically to prevent an excessive consumption of current.

☞ It is possible to stop the demisting/defrosting operation before it is switched off automatically by pressing the button again. The indicator lamp associated with the button goes off.

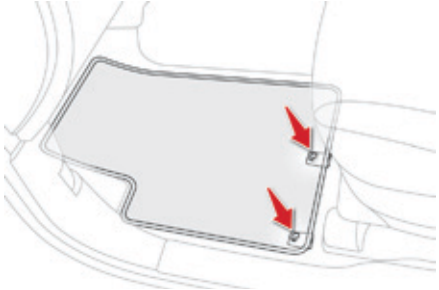
☞ Switch off the demisting/defrosting of the rear screen and door mirrors as soon as appropriate, as lower current consumption results in reduced fuel consumption.

Front fittings

1. Sun visor.
2. Glove box.
3. Portable ashtray.
4. Cigarette lighter
   12 V socket (120 W max).
5. Armrest with storage compartments.
6. Cup holder.
7. Bottle holder.



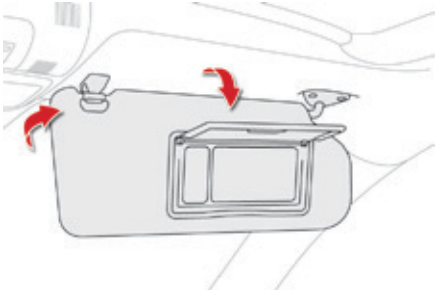
Mat



When removing the mat on the driver's side, move back the seat as far as possible and remove the fixings.
When refitting, position the mat correctly on the pins and clip the fixings. Check that the mat is secured firmly.
To prevent any risk of jamming under the pedals:

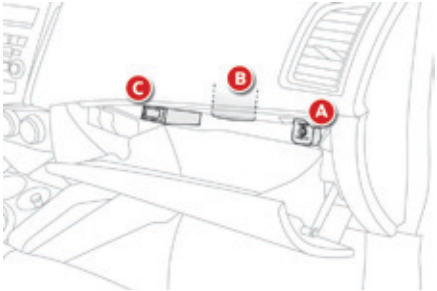
- only use mats suited to the fixings already present in the vehicle; it is imperative that these fixings are used.
- never fit one mat on top of another.

Sun visor



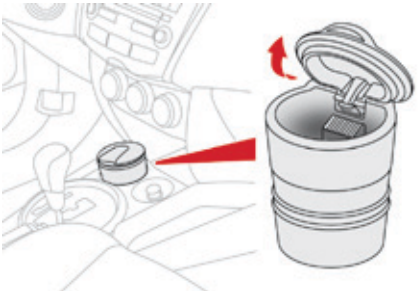
The sun visors fold forwards, and to the side when they are unhooked.
They are fitted with a courtesy mirror and a ticket holder.

Glove box



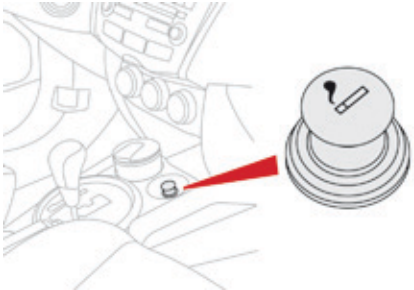
It has dedicated locations for storing a water bottle, the vehicle's handbook pack...
☞ To open the glove box, raise the handle.
It is illuminated when the lid is opened.
It houses the front passenger airbag deactivation switch **A**.
If the vehicle is fitted with air conditioning, it has a ventilation nozzle **B**, distributing the same conditioned air as the vents in the passenger compartment.
If your vehicle is fitted with the "Keyless Entry and Starting" system, it contains the back-up starting unit **C**.

Portable ashtray



- Pull the cover to open the ashtray.
- To empty it, remove the ashtray by pulling it upwards.

Cigarette lighter / 12 V accessory socket

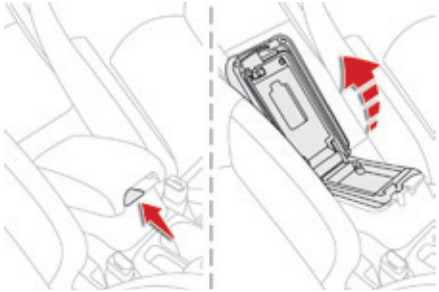


- To use the cigarette lighter, press it in and wait a few seconds until it pops out automatically.
- To connect a 12 V accessory (max power: 120 W), remove the cigarette lighter and connect a suitable adaptor.

You can use this socket to connect a telephone charger, a bottle warmer...
After use, put the cigarette lighter back into place straight away.

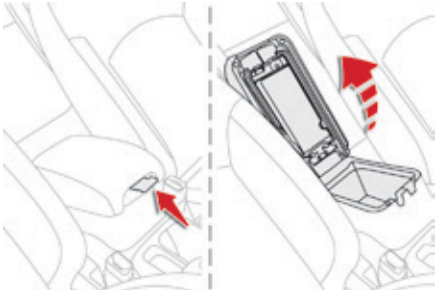
Front armrest

Upper storage compartment



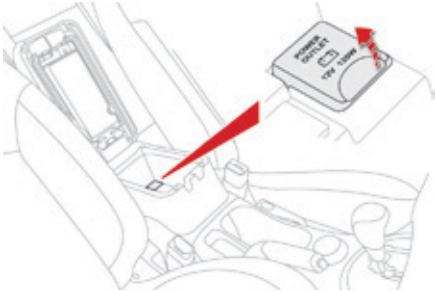
Pull the right-hand lever to open the storage compartment lid, which serves as an armrest.
To close, fold down the lid until it locks.

Lower storage compartment



Pull the left-hand lever to open the lid.
To close, fold down the lid until it locks.
This storage compartment may contain up to 3 accessory sockets.

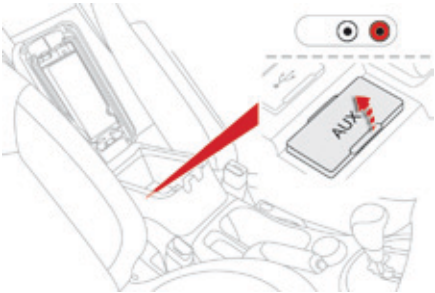
12 V socket (120 W max)



This operates when the ignition switch is in the "LOCK", "ACC" or "ON" position.
Open the cover of the front armrest to gain access to the socket.

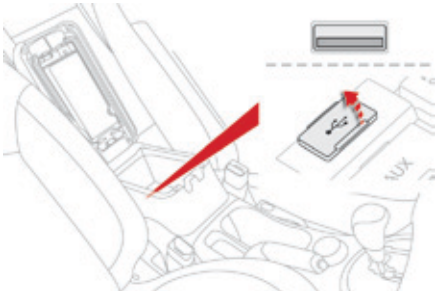
! Check that the electrical equipment operates on 12 V and that its maximum electrical power is 120 W.
The prolonged use of electrical equipment without running the engine may discharge the battery.

Auxiliary sockets (RCA)



They are used to connect a portable device (MP3 player, etc.).
Open the front armrest cover for access to the sockets.
For more information on **Audio and Telematics** and in particular the use of this equipment, refer to the corresponding section.

USB port



It permits the connection of a portable device, such as a digital audio player of the iPod® or USB memory stick type.
Open the front armrest cover for access to the port.
It reads certain audio file formats allowing them to be heard via the vehicle's speakers.
You can manage these files using the steering mounted controls or the audio system control panel.

Connected to the USB port, the portable device charges automatically while in use.
During charging, a message is displayed if the consumption of the portable device is higher than the amperage supplied by the vehicle.

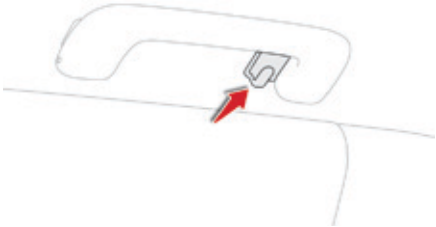
For more information on **Audio and Telematics** and in particular the use of this equipment, refer to the corresponding section.

Rear fittings

Grab handle

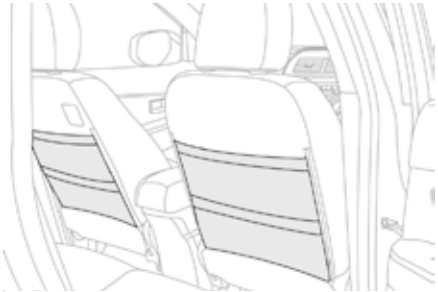
Pull the handle downwards to lower it.

Coat hook



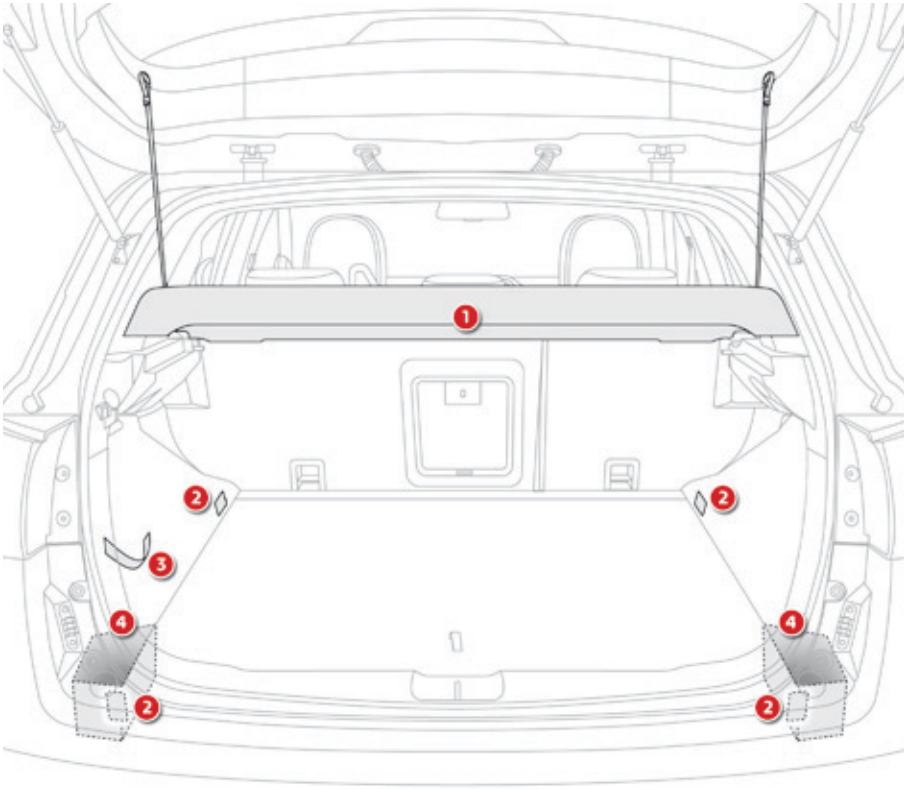
The rear left grab handle is fitted with a coat hook.

Seat pockets

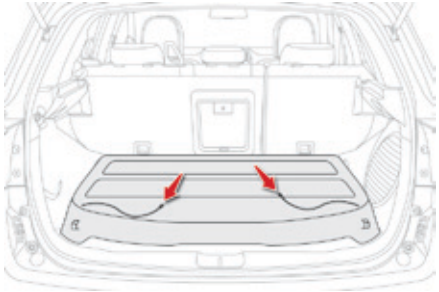


Boot fittings

1. **Rear parcel shelf**
   (see details on a following page)
2. **Stowing rings**
3. **Retaining strap**
4. **Side storage**



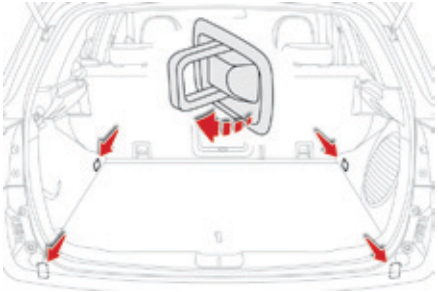
Rear parcel shelf



To remove the shelf:
- ☞ unhook the two cords,
- ☞ raise the shelf slightly, then remove it.

There are several options for storing the shelf:
- either upright behind the front seats,
- or flat at the base of the boot.

Stowing rings



There are four stowing rings in the boot for securing luggage:
- two rings are located on the boot floor,
- two rings are located on the rear side pillars.

Driving recommendations

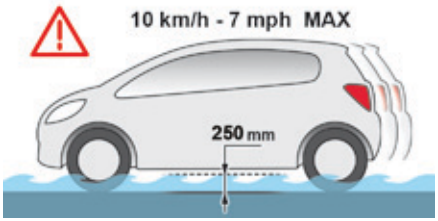
Observe the driving regulations and remain vigilant whatever the traffic conditions.
Pay close attention to the traffic and keep your hands on the wheel so that you are ready to react at any time to any eventuality.
On a long journey, a break every two hours is strongly recommended.
In difficult weather, drive smoothly, anticipate the need to brake and increase the distance from other vehicles.

Driving on flooded roads

We strongly advise against driving on flooded roads, as this could cause serious damage to the engine or gearbox, as well as to the electrical systems of your vehicle.

! Never drive in a depth of water which could cover the axles, the wheel shafts and which could enter the exhaust.

If you are obliged to drive through water:



- check that the depth of water does not exceed 25 cm, taking account of waves that might be generated by other users,
- deactivate the Stop & Start system,
- drive as slowly as possible without stalling. In all cases, do not exceed 6 mph (10 km/h),
- do not stop and do not switch off the engine.

On leaving the flooded road, as soon as circumstances allow, make several light brake applications to dry the brake discs and pads.
If in doubt on the state of your vehicle, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

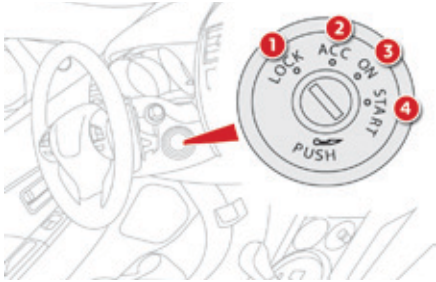
Important!

! Never drive with the parking brake applied - Risk of overheating and damage to the braking system!
Risk of fire!
As the exhaust system of your vehicle is very hot, even several minutes after switching off the engine, do not park or run the engine over areas where inflammable substances and materials are present: grass, leaves, etc.

! Never leave a vehicle unsupervised with the engine running. If you have to leave your vehicle with the engine running, apply the parking brake and put the gearbox into neutral or position **N** or **P**, depending on the type of gearbox.

Starting - switching off the engine with the key

Ignition switch



- Position 1: **LOCK**
  The steering is locked.
- Position 2: **ACC**
  The accessories (radio, 12 V socket, etc.) can be used.
- Position 3: **ON**
  Ignition on.
- Position 4: **START**
  Starting the engine.

! If you use accessories for a prolonged period (with the key in position **2 (ACC)**), you risk discharging the battery. Starting your vehicle will then no longer be possible. **Take care**.
For more information on the **Automatic power cut-off to accessories**, refer to the corresponding section.

Starting using the key

☞ Insert the key in the ignition switch.
☞ Turn the key to position **2 (ACC)** and unlock the steering column, by turning the wheel slightly.
☞ Press and hold the brake pedal.
☞ Fully depress the clutch pedal (vehicles fitted with a manual gearbox).
☞ Put the gear lever into neutral (vehicles fitted with a manual gearbox), or into position **P** (vehicles fitted with a CVT gearbox).
☞ Operate the starter by turning the key to position **4 (START)**.
☞ Once the engine is running, release the key.
The key returns automatically to position **3 (ON)**.

i For Diesel vehicles, when the engine is cold, wait with the ignition switch in position **3 (ON)** until the preheater warning lamp goes off, before turning the key to position **4 (START)**.
The warning lamp does not come on when the engine is hot.

Switching off

☞ Immobilise the vehicle.
☞ Put the gear lever into neutral (vehicles fitted with a manual gearbox), or into position **P** (vehicles fitted with a CVT gearbox).
☞ While pressing the key, turn it to position **1 (LOCK)**.
☞ Remove the key from the ignition switch.
☞ Lock the steering column.

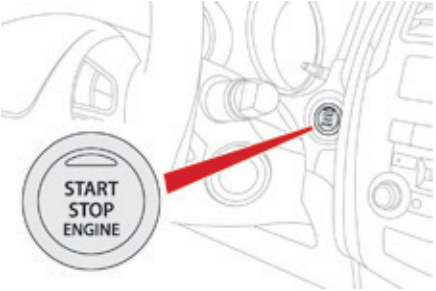
i Never attach a heavy object to the key or to the remote control key: by weighing down on the shaft of the key when it is in the ignition switch, it could cause a fault.
Furthermore, a heavy or sharp object could hinder the deployment of the knee airbag or be projected and cause serious injuries in the event of deployment of the knee airbag.

! Switching off the engine leads to a loss of braking assistance.

i **Key in ignition**
A buzzer sounds on opening the driver's door, if the key has been left in the ignition.

Starting - switching off the engine with the Keyless Entry and Starting system

Changing the vehicle's mode



With the electronic key inside the vehicle; each press on the "**START/STOP**" button, **with no action on the pedals**, changes the vehicle's mode:

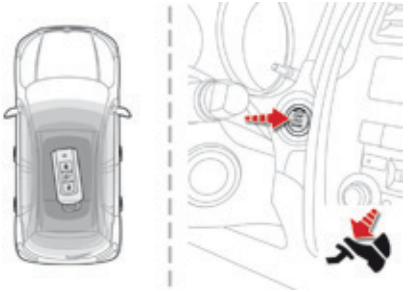
- First press (ACC mode), the button's warning lamp comes on in orange.
  The accessories (audio system, 12 V socket, etc.) can be used.
- Second press (ON mode), the button's warning lamp comes on in green.
  Switching on the ignition.
- Third press (OFF mode), the warning lamp in the button goes off.

If the warning lamp flashes orange, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible.

If you use the accessories for a prolonged period with the ignition switch in position **2 (ACC)**, you risk discharging the battery. Starting your vehicle will then no longer be possible. **Take care**.
For more information on the **Automatic power cut-off to accessories**, refer to the corresponding section.

Starting using the electronic key

For vehicles fitted with a manual gearbox, put the gear lever in neutral.
For vehicles fitted with a CVT gearbox, put the gear lever in **P**.



- With the electronic key inside the vehicle, depress the clutch pedal fully on vehicles with a manual gearbox or press the brake pedal on vehicles with a CVT gearbox.

- Press and release the "**START/STOP**" button.

Each attempt at starting takes around 15 seconds. If the engine does not start, press the "**START/STOP**" button once more to try again.

If one of the starting conditions is not met, a reminder message appears in the instrument panel screen. In some circumstances, it is necessary to turn the steering wheel slightly while pressing the "**START/STOP**" button to assist unlocking of the steering; a message warns you when this is needed.
The presence of the electronic key in the defined zone is essential. For safety reasons, do not leave this area when the engine is running.

For Diesel vehicles, when the engine is cold, starting does not take place until the pre-heater warning lamp has gone off.

The presence of the electronic key in the vehicle is essential only for switching on the ignition and for starting the engine. Once the engine has started, make sure that the electronic key remains with the vehicle until the end of the journey: otherwise you would not be able to lock the vehicle.

Switching off using the electronic key

- Immobilise the vehicle.
- Place the gear lever in neutral for vehicles fitted with a **manual gearbox**, or on **P** for vehicles fitted with a **CVT gearbox**.
- With the electronic key inside the vehicle, press the "**START/STOP**" button.

The engine switches off.
The steering locks when a door is opened or on locking the vehicle.

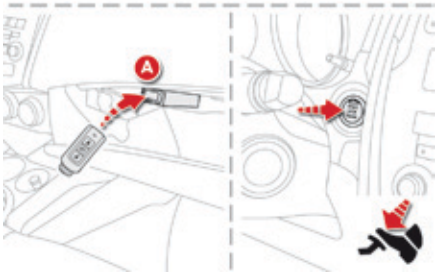
If the vehicle is not immobilised, the engine will not switch off.

This message is displayed when the driver's door is opened and the vehicle is not in "OFF" mode.

- Press the "**START/STOP**" button again to change to "OFF" mode.

Switching off the engine leads to a loss of braking assistance.

Back-up starting with the electronic key



When the electronic key is in the defined zone and your vehicle does not start after pressing the "**START/STOP**" button:

☞ Open the glove box.

☞ Insert the electronic key in the location **A**.

☞ Press the brake pedal on vehicles fitted with a CVT gearbox or depress the clutch pedal fully on vehicles with a manual gearbox.

☞ Press the "**START/STOP**" button.

ℹ Once the engine has started, you can remove the electronic key from its housing **A** and close the glove box.

The message is displayed when you open the driver's door and the electronic key has not been removed from its location **A**. Remember to take the electronic key with you when you leave the vehicle.

Emergency stop with the electronic key

In the event of an emergency only, the engine can be stopped without any conditions. To do this, press and hold the "**START/STOP**" button for about 3 seconds or make 3 successive presses on the button.
The engine stops and the vehicle goes into "ACC" mode.

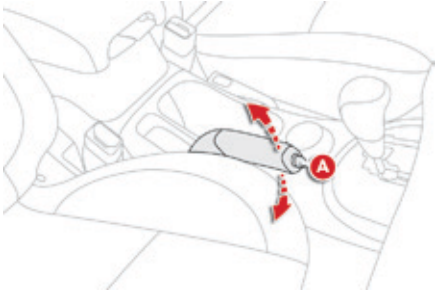
! During an emergency stop, the braking servo assistance and steering power assistance functions are no longer provided. Take great care.

Anti-theft protection

Electronic engine immobiliser

The keys contain an electronic chip which has a secret code. When the ignition is switched on, this code must be recognised in order for starting to be possible.
This electronic engine immobiliser locks the engine management system a few minutes after the ignition is switched off and prevents starting of the engine by anyone who does not have the key.
In the event of a malfunction, you are informed by a message in the instrument panel screen. In this case, your vehicle does not start; contact a CITROËN dealer if required.

Parking brake



Applying

☞ Pull the parking brake lever fully up to immobilise your vehicle.

Releasing

☞ Pull the parking brake lever up gently, press the release button **A** then lower the lever fully.

When the vehicle is being driven, if the parking brake is still on or has not been fully released, a message appears in the screen.

! When parking on a slope, direct your wheels against the kerb, apply the parking brake, engage a gear or place the gear lever in position **P** for vehicles fitted with a CVT gearbox, and switch off the ignition ("OFF" mode).

5-speed manual gearbox

Engaging reverse gear

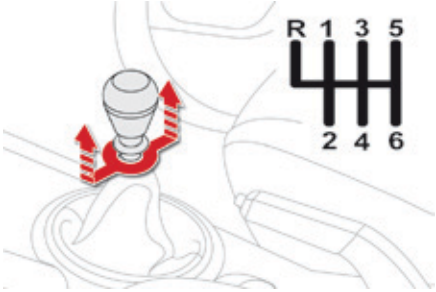
☞ Push the gear lever to the right then backwards.

! Only engage reverse gear when the vehicle is stationary with the engine at idle.

i As a safety precaution and to facilitate starting of the engine:
- always select neutral,
- press the clutch pedal.

6-speed manual gearbox

Engaging 5th or 6th gear



☞ Move the lever fully to the right to engage 5th or 6th gear.

Failure to observe this procedure may cause permanent damage to the gearbox (engaging 3rd or 4th gear by mistake).

Engaging reverse gear

☞ Raise the ring under the knob and move the gear lever to the left then forwards.

! Only engage reverse gear when the vehicle is stationary with the engine at idle.

i As a safety precaution and to facilitate starting of the engine:
- always select neutral,
- press the clutch pedal.

Gear shift indicator*

System which reduces fuel consumption by advising the driver to change gear on vehicles fitted with a manual gearbox.

Operation

The system intervenes only when driving economically.
Depending on the driving situation and your vehicle's equipment, the system may advise you to skip one or more gears. You can follow this instruction without engaging the intermediate gears.
The gear recommendations should not be considered compulsory. In fact, the configuration of the road, the amount of traffic and safety remain determining factors when choosing the best gear. Therefore, the driver remains responsible for deciding whether or not to follow the advice given by the system.
This function cannot be deactivated.

A symbol appears in the instrument panel when the system suggests changing to a more suitable gear:

SHIFT ▲ - for a change up,

or

SHIFT ▼ - for a change down.

In the case of driving which makes particular demands on the performance of the engine (firm pressure on the accelerator pedal, for example, when overtaking...), the system will not recommend a gear change.
The system never suggests engaging reverse gear.

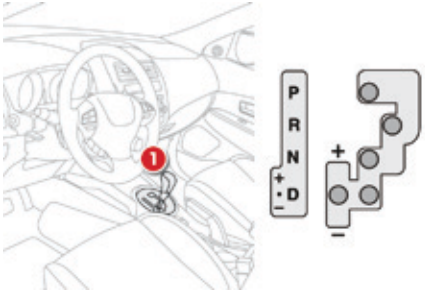
* Depending on engine.

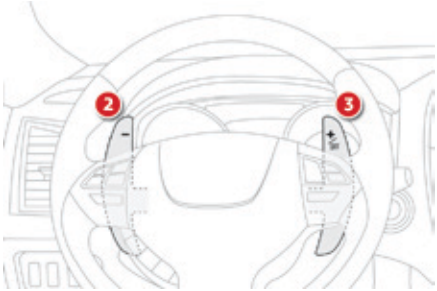
CVT gearbox

The six-speed automatic gearbox offers a choice between the comfort of automatic regulation or the pleasure of manual gear changing.

This gearbox has two driving modes:

- an automated mode for automatic control of the gears by the gearbox and therefore without any action on the part of the driver,
- a manual mode for sequential changing of the gears by the driver using the steering mounted controls or the gear lever.





4

The mode can be changed at any time.

It includes the following controls:

- a gear lever **1** on the centre console for selecting the driving mode, reverse gear and neutral or for changing gear in manual mode,
- a **"-"** steering mounted control paddle **2** for manual downward gear changes,
- a **"+/OFF"** steering mounted control paddle **3** for manual upward gear changes.

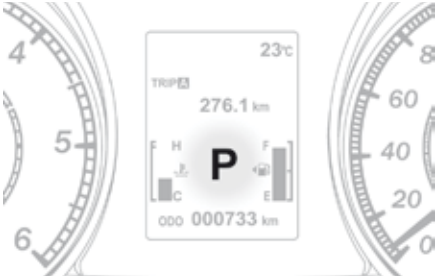
Gear lever positions

P: park.
Immobilisation of the vehicle, parking brake applied or not.
R: reverse gear.
With the vehicle stationary, keep your foot on the brake pedal and push the gear lever forwards.
N: neutral.
D: driving in automated mode.
Move the lever backwards to select this mode.
+/-: manual mode with sequential gear changing.
Move the lever backwards, then to the left to select this mode, then:
- push forward to change up,
- pull backward to change down.

Functions of the steering mounted control paddles

+: gear changing in manual mode.
Press behind the **"+/OFF"** steering mounted control paddle to change up.
-: gear changing in manual mode.
Press behind the **"-"** steering mounted control paddle to change down.

Moving off



From position **P**, parking brake applied:

Press the brake pedal firmly while starting the engine.

☞ Start the engine.

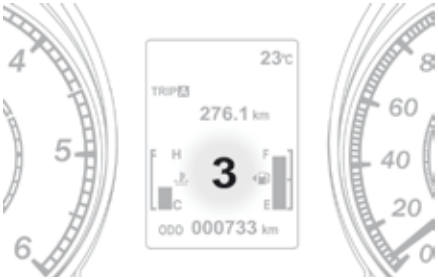
Press the brake pedal firmly to release the gear lever.

☞ Select first gear (position **D** or **+/-**) or reverse (position **R**).
"D" or **"1"** or **"R"** appear in the instrument panel screen.
☞ Release the parking brake, the vehicle moves off on its own.

Stopping - Starting on a slope

It is essential to use the parking brake to hold the vehicle on a slope and not the accelerator pedal.
When starting on a slope, accelerate gradually while releasing the parking brake.

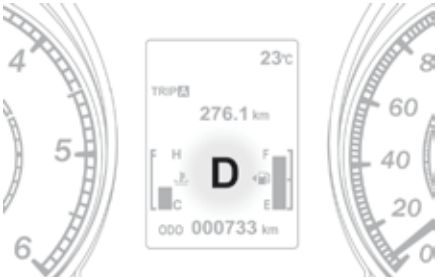
Manual mode



☞ Select position **+/-**.
☞ Use the steering mounted controls or the gear lever to change gear.

The gears engaged appear in succession in the instrument panel screen.
The gear change instructions are only carried out if the engine speed permits it.
You can change gear without taking your foot off the accelerator pedal.
When decelerating, the gearbox changes down automatically.
With the vehicle stationary, first gear is engaged.

Automated mode



☞ Select position **D**.

"D" appears in the instrument panel screen.
The gearbox operates in auto-active mode, without any action on the part of the driver.
It continuously selects the gear most suited to the conditions of:
- driving style,
- road characteristics,
- vehicle load.

To optimise driving comfort and obtain the most suitable gear, avoid sharp variations in the pressure on the accelerator pedal.

> ℹ For the best acceleration, when overtaking another vehicle, for example, press firmly on the accelerator going beyond the point of resistance.

Manual gear changing

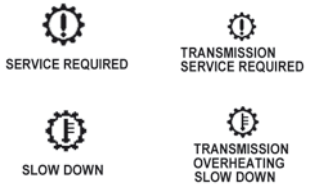
In the automated mode, you can take over control temporarily at any time using the steering mounted controls.
The use of these controls permits manual selection of the gears in situations which require a faster change down than that offered in automated mode (arrival at a roundabout, exit from a car park with a steep gradient, overtaking...).
The gearbox engages the gear requested if the engine speed permits it. The gear engaged appears.
To return to the automated mode, do one of the following:

- press the back of the **"+/OFF"** steering mounted control **3** for approximately 2 seconds,
- move the gear lever quickly towards position **+/-** and then return it to position **D**,
- stop the vehicle.

Stopping the vehicle

Before switching off the engine, you must place the gear lever in position **P**.
You must apply the parking brake to immobilise the vehicle.

Operating fault

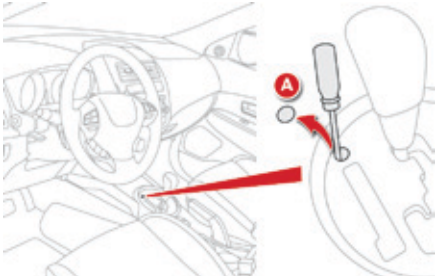


With the ignition on, if the message **"Slow down"** or **"Service required"** appears in the instrument panel screen, this indicates a gearbox malfunction.
When a message is displayed, carry out the following operations:

- slow down and stop your vehicle in a safe place,
- place the lever in position **P** and let the engine run,
- open the bonnet to allow the engine to cool.

If the message disappears for a long period, you can set off again.
If the message remains displayed or appears frequently, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop without delay.

Emergency release



If the battery is discharged or if the gear lever locking mechanism is damaged, it is possible for the gear lever to be locked in position **P**, even when you press the brake pedal firmly.

! **You must contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked**.

However, if you have to move the vehicle, release the gear lever using the following procedure:

- ☞ Apply the parking brake.
- ☞ Switch off the engine if necessary.
- ☞ Remove the cap **A**, using a flat screwdriver covered with a cloth.
- ☞ Press the brake pedal firmly.
- ☞ Put the ignition switch into position ACC (ACC mode, if you vehicle has the Keyless Entry and Starting system).
- ☞ Insert the screwdriver into the aperture.
- ☞ While pushing the screwdriver downwards, move the gear lever to position **N**.

Hill start assist

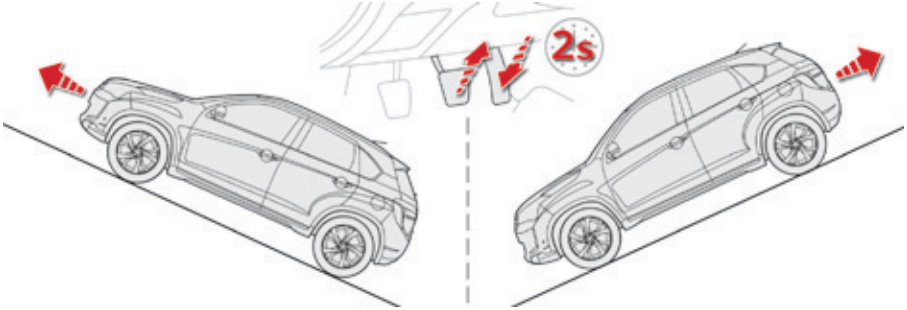
System which keeps your vehicle immobilised temporarily (approximately 2 seconds) when starting on a gradient, the time it takes to move your foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator pedal.
This function is only active when:
- the vehicle is completely stationary, with your foot on the brake pedal,
- when certain conditions of gradient are met,
- with the driver's door closed.

The hill start assist function cannot be deactivated.

! When the engine is not running, including periods on standby with the Stop & Start (AS&G) system, the function is not operative.

! Do not leave the vehicle while it is being held in the hill start assist phase.
If you need to leave the vehicle while the engine is running, apply the parking brake.

Operation



On an ascending slope, with the vehicle stationary, the vehicle is held for a brief moment when you release the brake pedal:
- if you are in first gear or neutral with a manual gearbox,
- if you are in position **D** with the CVT gearbox.

On a descending slope, with the vehicle stationary and reverse gear engaged, the vehicle is held for a brief moment when you release the brake pedal.

Operating fault

If a fault occurs with the system, this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by a message in the instrument panel screen. Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.

Stop & Start (Auto Stop & Go) system

The Stop & Start (Auto Stop & Go) system puts the engine temporarily into standby during stops in the traffic (red lights, traffic jams, etc.). The engine restarts automatically as soon as you want to move off. The restart takes place instantly, quickly and silently.
Perfect for urban use, the Stop & Start (Auto Stop & Go) system reduces fuel consumption and exhaust emissions as well as the noise level when stationary.

Operation

Going into engine STOP mode

AS&G The **"AS&G"** warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel or the instrument panel screen and the engine goes into standby after a few seconds:

- **with a manual gearbox**, with the vehicle stationary and your foot on the brake, when you put the gear lever into neutral and release the clutch pedal.

i If you move the gear lever, the **"AS&G"** warning lamp flashes, accompanied by an audible signal.
The alert stops as soon as the gear lever is returned to the neutral position.

! When the engine is stopped automatically, the operation of certain vehicle systems, such as braking and power steering for example, are modified. **Take care**.

! Never refuel with the engine in STOP mode; you must switch off the ignition with the key or the START/STOP button.

! When driving, prolonged pressing of the clutch pedal may cause a malfunction of the Stop & Start (Auto Stop & Go) system.

Special cases: STOP mode not available

STOP mode is not invoked when:

- the driver's seat belt is not fastened,
- the driver's door is open,
- the bonnet is open,
- the minimum time period of 30 seconds since starting the engine has not elapsed,
- the vehicle speed has not exceeded 3 mph (5 km/h) since the last engine start,
- the vehicle has restarted less than 10 seconds ago,
- the engine is needed to maintain a comfortable temperature in the passenger compartment,
- demisting is active,
- some special conditions (battery charge, engine temperature, braking assistance, exterior temperature, etc.) where the engine is needed to assure control of a system,
- AS&G the **"AS&G"** warning lamp is flashing in the instrument panel.

This operation is perfectly normal.

Going into engine START mode

AS&G The **"AS&G"** warning lamp goes off and the engine starts automatically:

- **with a manual gearbox**, when you **fully** depress the clutch pedal, with the gearbox in neutral.

i If the bonnet is opened while the engine is in standby, the **"AS&G"** warning lamp flashes, accompanied by an audible signal. The engine will not restart automatically.
To restart the engine with the bonnet open, use the ignition key or press the START/STOP button, while pressing fully on the brake and clutch pedals.

Special cases: START invoked automatically

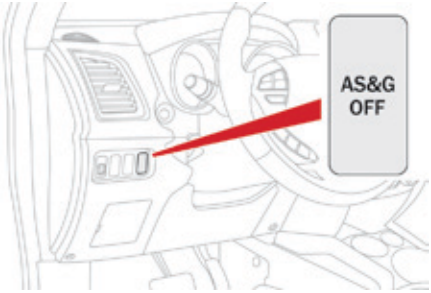
For safety reasons or to ensure smooth operation, START mode is invoked automatically when:

- the speed of the vehicle exceeds 2 mph (3 km/h),
- you open the driver's door,
- you unfasten the driver's seatbelt,
- some special conditions (battery charge, engine temperature, braking assistance, exterior temperature, etc.) where the engine is needed to assure control of a system.

AS&G In this case, the **"AS&G"** warning lamp flashes for few seconds, then goes off.

This operation is perfectly normal.

Manual Deactivation / Reactivation



At any time, press the **"AS&G OFF"** switch to deactivate the system.

AS&G OFF This is confirmed by the **"AS&G OFF"** warning lamp coming on in the instrument panel or instrument panel screen.

i If the system has been deactivated in STOP mode, the engine will not restart.

Press the **"AS&G OFF"** switch again to reactivate the function.
The system is active again; this is confirmed by the **"AS&G OFF"** warning lamp going off in the instrument panel or instrument panel screen.

The system is reactivated automatically at every new start using the key or the START/STOP button.

Opening the bonnet
Before carrying out any work under the bonnet, deactivate Stop & Start to avoid any risk of injury caused by automatic triggering of START mode.

Operating fault

In the event of a malfunction with the system, the **"AS&G OFF"** warning lamp flashes in the instrument panel or instrument panel screen, and the system no longer operates.
Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

In the event of a fault in STOP mode, the vehicle may stall. The following warning lamps come on in the instrument panel or instrument panel screen:

It is then necessary to switch off the ignition, then restart the engine using the key or the START/STOP button.

Under-inflation detection

System which continuously and automatically checks the pressures of the four tyres after switching on the ignition.
A pressure sensor is located in the valve of each tyre (except the spare wheel).
The system triggers an alert if a drop in pressure is detected in one or more tyres, compared to the reference pressure registered in the system. This reference pressure must be reinitialised every time the tyre pressures are adjusted or a wheel changed.
The system operates on condition that the sensor identifiers have first been memorised in the system by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
You can memorise two sets of tyres (e.g. wheels with "standard" tyres and wheels with "winter" tyres).

! The tyre under-inflation detection system is an aid to driving which does not replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.

! This system does not avoid the need to check the tyre pressures regularly (including the spare wheel) and before a long journey.
Driving with under-inflated tyres adversely affects road holding, extends braking distances and causes premature tyre wear, particularly under arduous conditions (vehicle loaded, high speed, long journey).

Driving with under-inflated tyres increases fuel consumption.

! The tyre pressures for your vehicle can be found on the tyre pressure label.
For more information on **Identification markings**, refer to the corresponding section.
The tyre pressures must be checked when the tyres are cold (vehicle stopped for 1 hour or after driving for less then 6 miles (10 km) at moderate speed). Otherwise, add 0.3 bar to the values indicated on the label.

Under-inflation alert

The alert is given by the fixed illumination of this warning lamp and the display of a message.

- Reduce speed immediately, avoid sudden steering movements or harsh brake applications.
- Stop as soon as it is safe to do so.

! The loss of pressure detected does not always lead to visible deformation of the tyre. Do not rely on just a visual check.

- If you have a compressor (the one in the temporary puncture repair kit, for example), check the four tyre pressures when cold.
  If it is not possible to check the tyre pressures immediately, drive carefully at reduced speed.
  or
- In the event of a puncture, use the temporary puncture repair kit or the spare wheel (depending on equipment).

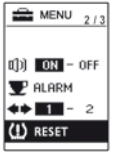
i The alert is maintained until the reference pressure is reinitialised after the inflation, repair or replacement of the tyres concerned. In the event of the repair or replacement of tyres, the sensor identifiers must be registered in the system by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
The spare wheel does not have a sensor, so there is no need to reinitialise the system for driving with the spare wheel fitted.

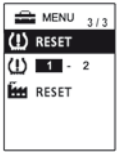
Reinitialising the reference pressure

! Before reinitialising the system, ensure that the pressures in the four tyres are suitable for the conditions of use of the vehicle and are as specified on the tyre pressure label.
The under-inflation detection system cannot warn of an incorrect pressure at the time of reinitialisation.

The system must be reinitialised after any adjustment of tyre pressures and after changing one or more wheels.

The reinitialisation instruction is entered in the screen menu, with the ignition in the **"ON"** position and the vehicle stationary.





- ☞ Press several times on the **INFO** button, located below the instrument panel to the left of the steering wheel.
- ☞ Select **"REINITIALISE" (located in menu 2/3 or 3/3 depending on the instrument panel)**.
- ☞ Press and hold the **INFO** button for at least 3 seconds to reinitialise the under-inflation detection system.

Reinitialisation of the system is confirmed by the flashing of the warning lamp in the instrument panel.

Operating fault

The flashing and then fixed illumination of the under-inflation warning lamp accompanied by the display of a message indicates a fault with the system.
In this case, monitoring of the tyre pressures is not assured.

This alert is also displayed if:
- at least one wheel is not fitted with a sensor (spare wheel in use),
- a wireless device operating on the same frequency is close to the vehicle,
- there are accumulations of snow or ice in the wings or wheels,
- the state of charge of the tyre pressure monitoring system battery is too low,
- the wheel sensor identifiers have not been memorised in the system by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

ℹ Go to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked or, after a puncture, to have the original wheel, equipped with a sensor, refitted.

! The under-inflation alert is only reliable if the system has been reinitialised with the four tyre pressures correctly adjusted.

! Any tyre repair or replacement on a wheel fitted with this system must be carried out by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
If you fit the second set of tyres memorised in the system, a fault will be signalled until the second set is selected in the configuration menu.

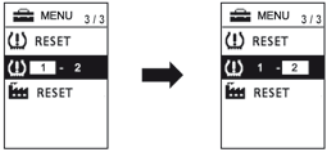
Managing sets of tyres

If you have had a second set of tyres registered by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop, every time you change the set of tyres (fitting a set of winter tyres, for example), you must select the set you have just fitted in the configuration menu.

After fitting the new set of tyres, you should check and adjust the tyre pressures to the values specified on the tyre pressure label.
For more information on **Identification markings** and in particular the tyre pressure label, refer to the corresponding section.

Selection of the other set of tyres is done via the menu screen, with the ignition on and the vehicle stationary.

☞ Press several times on the **INFO** button to select the menu for managing sets of tyres **(located in menu 3/3)**.

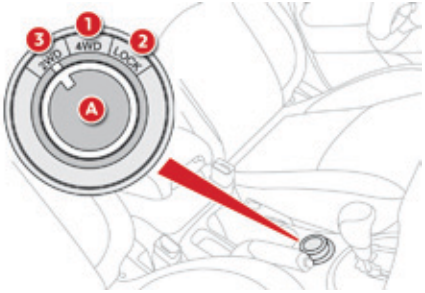


☞ Press and hold the **INFO** button for **at least 3 seconds** to change successively from set of tyres **1** to set of tyres **2** or the other way round.

The system automatically reinitialises the reference pressure based on the pressure in the new set (the under-inflation detection warning lamp flashes during the operation).

Four wheel drive system

System which permits the selection of a transmission mode in relation to the driving conditions.
Three transmission modes are available and can be selected manually by the driver in accordance with his requirements.



You can change transmission mode when stationary or while driving.
The transmission mode can be selected by turning the control **A**.

Selecting the transmission mode

4WD AUTO (position 1)

The vehicle operates with four wheel drive and provides optimum traction for all levels of grip. This is the vehicle's normal and regular operating mode, the distribution of the torque between the front and rear axles is controlled automatically.
The distribution favours the front wheels, the transfer of torque to the rear wheels is managed electronically by the control unit in relation to the level of grip, so providing optimum road holding.

4WD LOCK (position 2)

The vehicle operates with four wheel drive in this mode also.
It is recommended when grip is particularly poor or difficult (sand, mud, slopes, ...).

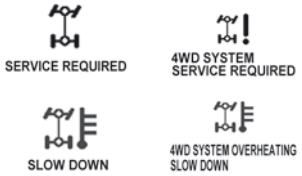
2WD (position 3)

The vehicle operates with front two wheel drive. This is suitable for use on a tarmac roads or where the driver considers that there is no risk of loss of grip (dry road).

The selection of this mode is recommended when the level of grip permits.

Display in the instrument panel

The transmission mode is displayed in the form of an intermittent display in the instrument panel screen when the transmission mode is selected.



Operating faults

If the selected transmission mode display flashes, the vehicle switches automatically to front **"2WD"** transmission mode.
It is then no longer possible to select the transmission mode using the control **A**.
If the message "SLOW DOWN" is displayed on the instrument panel, let the transmission cool down then wait for the display to clear before setting off again.
If "4WD" and "LOCK" are displayed alternately and if "SERVICE REQUIRED" is displayed in the instrument panel, the system has failed and the safety system has been activated.
Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop without delay.

As the engine torque is applied to all four wheels, the condition of the tyres has a considerable impact on the performance of the vehicle.
Ensure that all four tyres are in good condition.
Avoid driving the vehicle in sandy or muddy areas or in other areas in which the wheels could spin.
Spinning the wheels places the transmission components under pressure and could cause a serious malfunction.
Do not drive the vehicle through deep water.
Avoid driving over excessively uneven terrain (risk of scraping under the body or of grounding on crossing a bridge).

Have your vehicle towed on a flatbed.
The vehicle must not be towed with the front or rear wheels on the ground even if it is in front "2WD" (2 wheel drive) mode.

If the replacement of a tyre is necessary on 4-wheel drive versions, it is recommended that all four tyres be replaced at the same time, ensuring that the same make, model and size is used on all wheels.
This is because using tyres of different sizes, structure or rate of wear could damage transmission components.

Cruise control

System which automatically maintains the vehicle speed at the value programmed by the driver, without any action on the accelerator pedal.

The cruise control is **switched on** manually: the vehicle speed must be at least 25 mph (40 km/h) and second gear or higher must be engaged in the case of a manual gearbox.

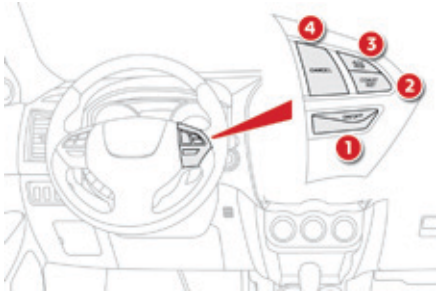
The cruise control is **switched off** manually, by an action on the brake or clutch pedal or if the ASC system is triggered.

The programmed speed can be exceeded temporarily by pressing the accelerator pedal.

To return to the programmed speed, simply release the accelerator pedal.
Switching off the ignition cancels any programmed speed value.

> The cruise control cannot, in any circumstances, take the place of the need to comply with speed limits or of the vigilance of the driver.

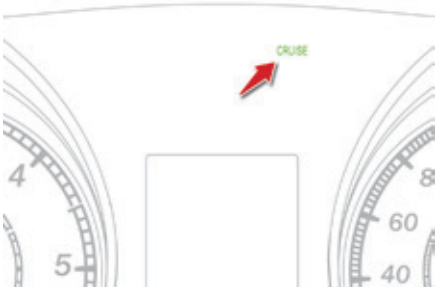
Steering mounted controls



The controls of this system are grouped together on the steering wheel.

1. **"ON/OFF"** button: activation / deactivation of the cruise control mode.
2. **"COAST SET"** button: store a driving speed and decrease the cruising speed.
3. **"ACC RES"** button: increase the cruising speed and recall the stored speed.
4. **"CANCEL"** button: stop cruise control.

Display in the instrument panel



When you press button **1**, the **"CRUISE"** indicator comes on in the instrument panel.

Programming

- ☞ Press button **1**.
- ☞ Set the programmed speed by accelerating to the required speed, then press button **2 "COAST SET"**.

Increasing the programmed speed

☞ Using button **3 "ACC RES"**:
- successive presses increase the speed in steps of approximately 1 mph (1.6 km/h).
- a maintained press of this button increases the programmed speed progressively.

Once the speed required has been reached, release the button, the new speed is stored.

☞ Using the accelerator pedal:
- accelerate to reach the speed required, then press button **2 "COAST SET"**. Release the button to store the new speed.

Decreasing the programmed speed

☞ Using button **2 "COAST SET"**:
- successive presses decrease the speed in steps of approximately 1 mph (1.6 km/h).
- a maintained press of this button decreases the speed progressively.

Once the speed required has been reached, release the button, the new speed is stored.

☞ Using the brake pedal:
- brake to deactivate the cruise control, then press button **2 "COAST SET"**. Release to store the new speed.

Temporary acceleration/ deceleration

Temporary acceleration

Press the accelerator pedal as normal. When the pedal is released, you return to the stored speed.

Temporary deceleration

Press the brake pedal to reduce the speed. To return to the stored speed, press button **3 "ACC RES"**.

Deactivating the function

To deactivate the cruise control:
- ☞ press the **brake** or **clutch** pedal, or
- ☞ press button **1 "ON OFF"**, or
- ☞ press button **4 "CANCEL"**.

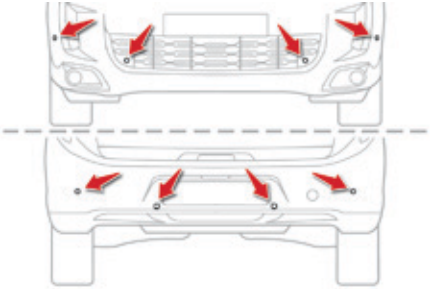
The cruise control may be deactivated automatically:
- ☞ when the vehicle reaches a speed below 22 mph (35 km/h),
- ☞ when the active stability control system (ASC) comes into operation.

Reactivating the function

When the cruise control has been deactivated using the button **4 "CANCEL"**, you can return to the stored speed by pressing button **3 "ACC RES"** when you reach a minimum speed of 25 mph (40 km/h).

! When the cruise control is in operation, pay attention if you press and hold one of the programmed speed adjustment buttons: this can result in a very rapid change in the speed of your vehicle.
Do not use the cruise control on slippery roads or in heavy traffic.
On a steep descent, the cruise control will not be able to prevent the vehicle from exceeding the programmed speed.
To prevent the mat from becoming caught under the pedals:
- ensure that the mat is positioned correctly,
- never fit one mat on top of another.

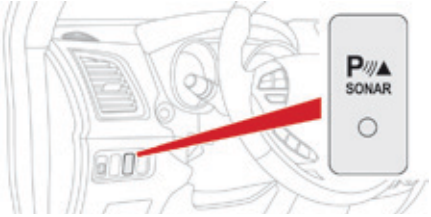
Parking sensors



This system indicates the proximity of an obstacle (person, vehicle, tree, gate, etc.) which comes within the field of detection of sensors located in the bumper.
Certain types of obstacle (stake, roadworks cone, etc.) detected initially will no longer be detected at the end of the manoeuvre due to the presence of blind spots.

! This function cannot, in any circumstances, take the place of the vigilance of the driver.

Rear parking sensors



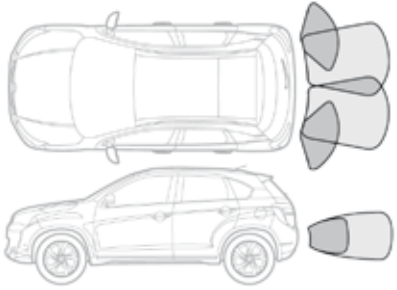
The system is switched on by engaging reverse gear. This is accompanied by an audible signal. The indicator lamp in the button comes on to confirm that the system is active.
The system is deactivated when you come out of reverse gear.

Audible assistance

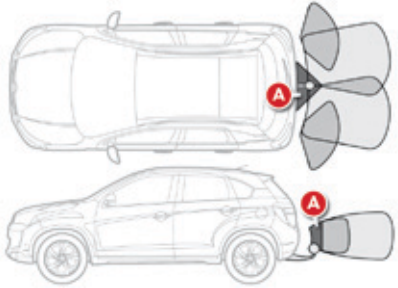
The proximity information is given by an intermittent audible signal, whose frequency increases as the vehicle approaches the obstacle.
Below a certain distance between the vehicle and the obstacle, the audible signal becomes continuous.

Detection zones

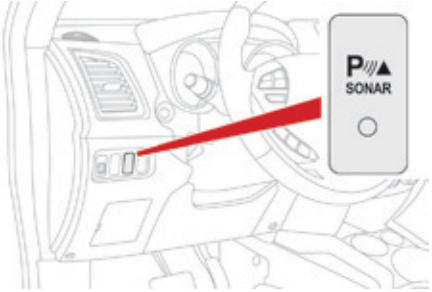
The detection zones differ depending on whether the vehicle is fitted with a towbar.
If you select towbar mode, the towbar zone **A** is excluded from the detection zones.



Vehicle only



Vehicle fitted with a towbar



Modification of the detection zones

☞ Press this button to deactivate the system.
☞ Press this button again for a few seconds and release it.

The detection zone modification information is indicated by an audible signal:

- **double** signal on vehicles fitted with a towbar,
- **single** signal on vehicles which are not fitted with a towbar.

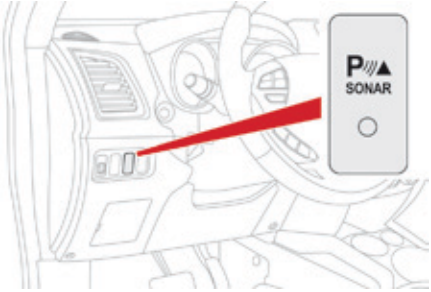
Visual assistance

This supplements the audible signal by displaying bars in the screen, in front of or behind the vehicle.

These bars flash at the start of the manoeuvre then become fixed from a certain distance between the vehicle and the obstacle.

Front parking sensors

The front parking sensors are triggered when an obstacle is detected in front, a gear is engaged (position **D** for vehicles with a CVT gearbox) and the speed of the vehicle remains below 6 mph (10 km/h).
The front parking sensors are interrupted if the vehicle stops for more than five seconds in forward gear, if no further obstacles are detected or when the speed of the vehicle exceeds 6 mph (10 km/h).



Deactivation / Activation of the front and rear parking sensors

The function is deactivated by pressing this button. The indicator lamp in the button goes off.
Pressing this button again reactivates the function. The indicator lamp in the button comes on.

> Remember to deactivate the system if towing a trailer or caravan.

Operating fault

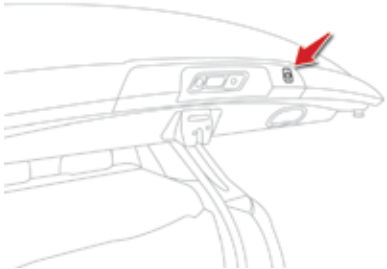
In the event of an problem, when reverse gear is engaged this lamp in the button flashes, accompanied by an audible signal.

If one of the sensors is faulty, it flashes in the instrument panel screen.

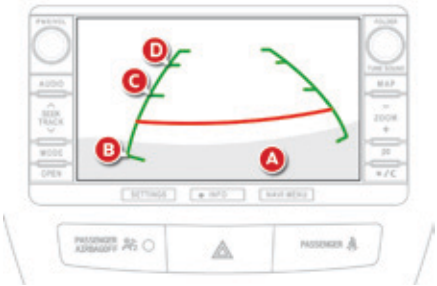
Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

> In bad weather or in winter, ensure that the sensors are not covered with mud, ice or snow.
> When the vehicle is moving at a speed below 6 mph (10 km/h), certain sound sources (motorcycle, lorry, pneumatic drill, etc.) may trigger the audible signals of the parking sensor system.

Reversing camera



Linked with the navigation option, the reversing camera complements the parking sensor system and is activated automatically when reverse gear is engaged.



The image from the camera is displayed in the navigation screen.
The zone **(A)** represents the upper part of the rear bumper.
The red line represents the distance of 50 cm from the edge of the rear bumper.
The green lines represent the width of the vehicle increased by 20 cm on each side.
The marks on the green lines correspond to the edges of the rear bumper **(B)**, then the distance of 1 metre from the edge of the rear bumper **(C)** and 2 metres **(D)**.

! In no circumstances can the reversing camera replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.

i Clean the reversing camera from time to time using a soft dry cloth.

i **High pressure jet wash**
When washing your vehicle, do not direct the lance to within 30 cm of the camera lens.

Lighting controls

Stalk for selecting and switching the vehicle's front and rear exterior lamps.

Main lighting

The various front and rear lamps of the vehicle are designed to adapt the lighting progressively in relation to the climatic conditions and so ensure the best visibility for the driver:

- sidelamps, to be seen,
- dipped beam headlamps to see without dazzling other drivers,
- main beam headlamps to see clearly when the road is clear.

Additional lighting

Other lamps are provided to fulfil the requirements of particular driving conditions:

- rear foglamps to be seen from a distance,
- front foglamps for even better visibility,
- daytime running lamps to be seen during the day.

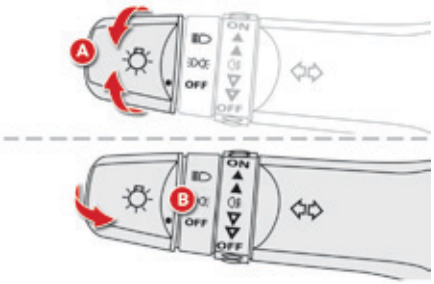
In some weather conditions (e.g. low temperature or humidity), the presence of misting on the internal surface of the glass of the headlamps and rear lamps is normal; it disappears after the lamps have been on for a few minutes.

Other lighting functions are also available:

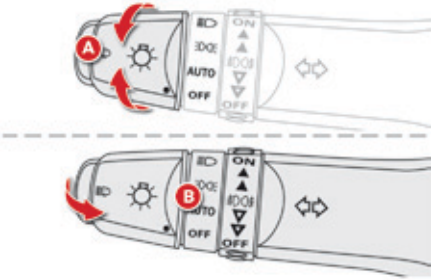
- automatic illumination of headlamps,
- guide-me-home lighting,
- welcome lighting.

Travelling abroad

If using your vehicle in a country that drives on the other side of the road, the headlamps must be adjusted to avoid dazzling on-coming drivers.
Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.



Model without AUTO lighting



Model with AUTO lighting

Manual controls

The lighting is controlled directly by the driver by means of the ring **A** and the stalk **B**.

A. Main lighting mode selection ring: turn it to position the symbol required facing the mark.

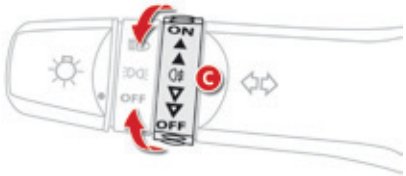
	Dipped headlamps or main beam headlamps.
	Sidelamps.
AUTO	Automatic illumination of headlamps.
OFF	Lighting off (ignition off) / Daytime running lamps (engine running).

B. Stalk for switching headlamps: pull the stalk towards you to switch the lighting between dipped and main beam headlamps.

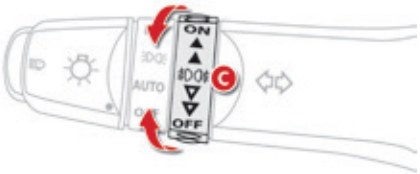
In the lamps off and sidelamps modes, the driver can switch on the main beam headlamps temporarily ("headlamp flash") by maintaining a pull on the stalk.

Displays

Illumination of the corresponding indicator lamp in the instrument panel confirms that the lighting selected is on.



Model with rear foglamps



Model with front foglamps and rear foglamps

Foglamp selection ring.
They operate if at least the sidelamps are on.

rear foglamps

- To switch on the rear foglamps, turn the ring **C** forwards.
- To switch off the rear foglamps, turn the ring **C** rearwards.

front and rear foglamps

Rotate and release the ring **C**:
- forward a first time to switch on the front foglamps,
- forward a second time to switch on the rear foglamps,
- rearward a first time to switch off the rear foglamps,
- rearward a second time to switch of the front foglamps.

! In good or rainy weather, both day and night, the front foglamps and the rear foglamps are prohibited. In these situations, the power of their beams may dazzle other drivers.
Do not forget to switch off the front foglamps and the rear foglamps when they are no longer necessary.

Lighting on reminder

An audible signal when the driver's door is opened warns the driver if the vehicle lighting is on, with the ignition off. Switching off the lighting stops the audible signal.

Daytime running lamps

Daytime lighting which comes on automatically when the engine is started making the vehicle more visible to other users.

This function is assured by special lamps.
The lighting control stalk must be placed in position **"0"** or **"AUTO"** (day mode).

Automatic illumination of headlamps

The sidelamps and the dipped beam headlamps come on automatically, without any action on the part of the driver, if a low level of exterior light is detected or if the wipers are switched on.
When the light returns to a sufficient level or the wipers are switched off, the lighting is switched off automatically.
The sensor is located at the base of the windscreen.
Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to adjust the sensitivity of the sensor.

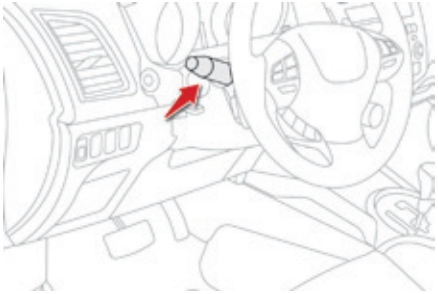
! In foggy weather or in snow, the sunshine sensor may detect sufficient light. The lighting will not come on automatically.
Do not cover the sunshine sensor, the associated functions will no longer be controlled.

Automatic switching off

When the lighting control stalk is at "dipped or main beam headlamps", if the ignition switch is at "LOCK" or "ACC" or if the key has been removed from the ignition switch, the lamps switch off automatically **when the driver's door is opened**.

Manual guide-me-home lighting

Temporarily keeping the dipped beam headlamps on after the vehicle's ignition has been switched off makes the exit of the vehicle's occupants easier when the light is poor.



Switching on

- Place the lighting control stalk in the "OFF" position, or "AUTO" for vehicles that have it.
- Place the ignition switch on "LOCK" and remove the key (or select "OFF" mode for vehicles that have the "Keyless Entry and Starting" system).
- Within one minute after switching off the ignition, "flash" the headlamps using the lighting control stalk.
  The headlamps come on for around 30 seconds.
- A further "headlamp flash" within 60 seconds of switching the ignition to OFF (or selection of "OFF" mode for vehicles with the "Keyless Entry and Starting" system) reactivates the function for a further 30 seconds.

Switching off

The manual guide-me-home lighting switches off immediately if you.

- flash the headlamps again,
- place the lighting control stalk in another position,
- switch the ignition on (or select "ON" mode for vehicle with the "Keyless Entry and Starting" system).

Exterior welcome lighting

Remote switching on of the lighting makes your approach to the vehicle easier in poor light.
It comes on when the vehicle is unlocked remotely.

Switching on

☞ Place the lighting control in position "OFF" or "AUTO".

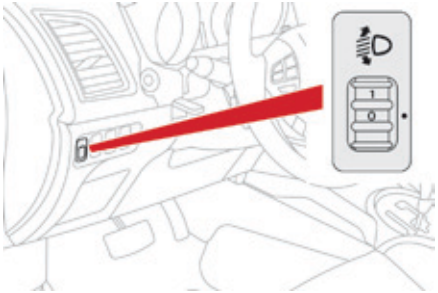
☞ Press the open padlock on the remote control or the electronic key.
The sidelamps come on for about 30 seconds. For vehicles fitted with automatic illumination of headlamps, the welcome lighting only comes on under conditions of low ambient light.

Switching off

The welcome lighting goes off immediately if:

- you press the open padlock on the remote control,
- you place the lighting control in another position,
- you switch on the ignition (or select "ON" mode for vehicles fitted with the "Keyless Entry and Starting" system).

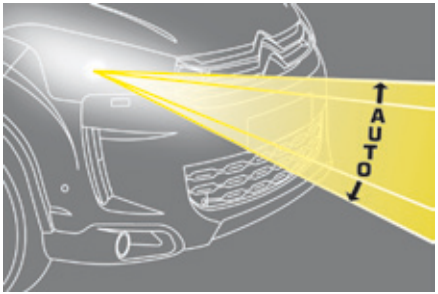
Manual adjustment of the headlamp beams



To avoid causing a nuisance to other road users, the height of the halogen headlamp beams should be adjusted according to the load in the vehicle.

0 1 or 2 people in the front seats.
1 5 passengers (including the driver).
2 5 passengers (including the driver) + maximum authorised load.
3 Driver + maximum authorised load.

Automatic headlamp adjustment



On vehicles with xenon bulbs: **when stationary**, the system automatically corrects the height of the beam, whatever the load of the vehicle. The driver is then assured of having optimum lighting and not causing a nuisance to other road users.

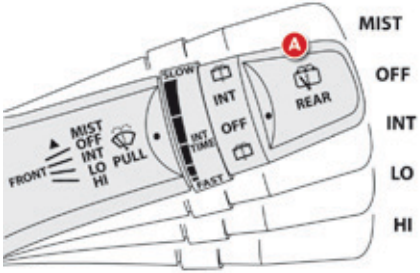
In cases of malfunction, this message appears in the multifunction screen.

! Do not touch the xenon bulbs. Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

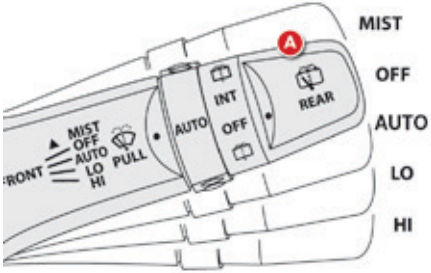
5

Wiper controls

System for selection and control of the various front and rear wiping modes for removing rain and cleaning the screens.
The vehicle's front and rear wipers are designed to improve the driver's visibility according to the climatic conditions.



Model with intermittent wiping



Model with AUTO wiping

Settings

Various automatic wiper control modes are also available depending on whether the following options are fitted:

- automatic rain sensitive windscreen wipers,
- rear wiping on engaging reverse gear.

Manual controls

Windscreen wipers

A. wiping speed selection stalk:

MIST single wipe.

OFF park.

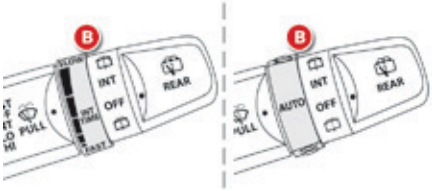
INT intermittent (the speed can be set manually).

or

AUTO automatic rain sensitive wipers (the speed can be set manually).

LO slow.

HI fast.



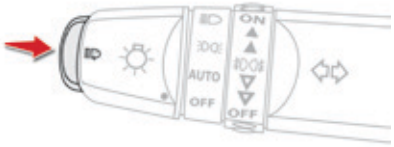
B. intermittent operation or rain sensor sensitivity adjustment ring.

You can increase or decrease:

- the wiping frequency when the intermittent mode is active,
- the sensitivity of the rain sensor when the automatic mode is active.
  - "+": high sensitivity.
  - "-": low sensitivity.

Windscreen wash

Pull the wiper stalk towards you. The windscreen wash then the wipers operate for a set time.
The headlamp wash is also activated **if the dipped beam headlamps are on**.



Headlamp wash

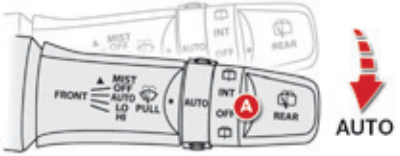
Press the end of the lighting stalk to activate the headlamp wash, when the dipped beam headlamps are on.

> To reduce the consumption of screenwash fluid, the headlamp washers only operate with the first operation of the screenwash.

5

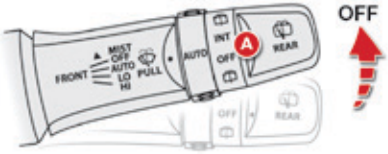
Automatic rain sensitive wipers

The windscreen wipers operate automatically, without any action on the part of the driver, if rain is detected (sensor behind the rear view mirror), adapting their speed to the intensity of the rainfall.



Activation

☞ Move the stalk **A** to the **"AUTO"** position.



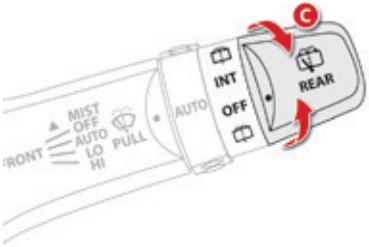
Deactivation

☞ Move the stalk **A** to the **"OFF"** position.

Operating fault

Do not cover the rain sensor, linked with the sunshine sensor and located in the centre of the windscreen behind the rear view mirror.

! Switch off the automatic rain sensitive wipers when using an automatic car wash.
To protect the rubber of the wiper, it is advisable to deactivate the automatic mode when the vehicle is parked and when the exterior temperature is below 0 °C.
In winter, it is advisable to wait until the windscreen is completely clear of ice before activating the automatic rain sensitive wipers.



Rear wiper

C. rear wiper selection ring:

park.

intermittent wipe.

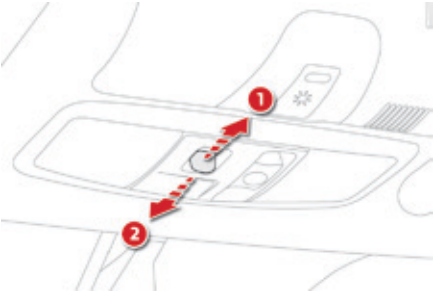
The wiper wipes twice then switches to intermittent mode.

wipe with screen wash.

Keep the ring in this position to operate the screen wash with several wipes of the wiper.

Courtesy lamps

Front courtesy lamp



Position 1

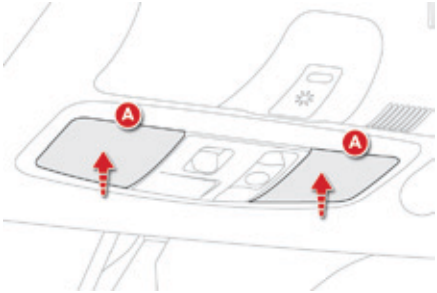
The courtesy lamp comes on when a door or the tailgate is opened.
When the door or the tailgate is closed again, the lighting gradually dims for a few seconds before switching off.
However, the courtesy lamp is switched off automatically in the following cases:

- When the doors and the tailgate are closed and the ignition switch is placed in the **"ON"** position.
- When the doors and the tailgate are closed and you lock the vehicle.

Position 2

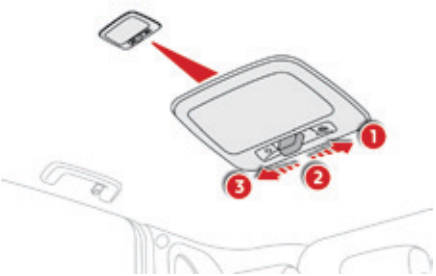
The courtesy lamp is permanently off.

Map reading lamps



There are two map reading lamps, one on each side of the courtesy lamp.
Press the corresponding lamp lens **A**.

Rear courtesy lamp



Position 1 "ON"

The courtesy lamp is permanently on.

Position 2 "●"

The courtesy lamp comes on when a door or the tailgate is opened. When the door or the tailgate is closed again, the lighting gradually dims for a few seconds before switching off. However, the courtesy lamp is switched off immediately in the following cases:

- When the doors and the tailgate are closed and the ignition switch is placed in the **"ON"** position.
- When the doors and the tailgate are closed and you lock the vehicle.

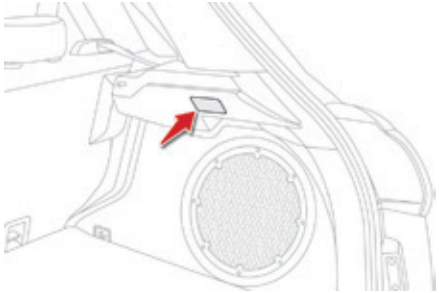
Position 3 "OFF"

The courtesy lamp is permanently off.

Courtesy lamps automatic switch off

With the engine off, the courtesy lamps, map reading lamps and boot lamp switch off automatically after 30 minutes to prevent discharging of the battery.
The courtesy lamps are switched on again if the ignition switch is placed in the **"ON"** or **"ACC"** position, if you open then close a door or the tailgate or if you use the remote control.

Boot lamp



This comes on automatically when the boot is opened and goes off automatically when the boot is closed.

Panoramic roof lighting

When active, the panoramic roof lighting comes on if the ignition switch is placed in the **"ON"** or **"ACC"** position.

Deactivation

When the ignition switch is placed in position **"ON"** or **"ACC"**:

☞ Press this button repeatedly until the lighting goes off.

Settings

When the ignition switch is placed in position **"ON"** or **"ACC"**:

☞ Press this button repeatedly to obtain the desired lighting level (high, medium, low).

General safety recommendations

! Labels are applied at various points on your vehicle. They carry safety warnings as well as vehicle identification information. Do not remove them: they form an integral part of your vehicle.

! For any work on your vehicle, use a qualified workshop that has the technical information, skills and equipment required, all of which a CITROËN dealer is able to provide.

! **We draw your attention to the following points:**

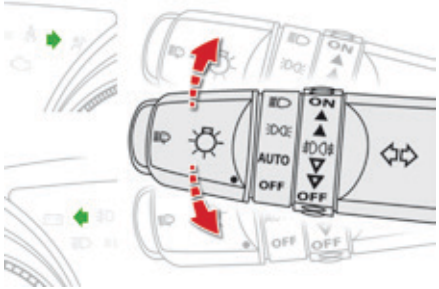
- The fitting of electrical equipment or accessories not listed by CITROËN may cause excessive current consumption and faults and failures with the electrical system of your vehicle. Contact a CITROËN dealer for information on the range of recommended accessories.
- As a safety measure, access to the diagnostic socket, used for the vehicle's electronic systems, is reserved strictly for CITROËN dealers or qualified workshops, equipped with the special tools required (risk of malfunctions of the vehicle's electronic systems that could cause breakdowns or serious accidents). The manufacturer cannot be held responsible if this advice is not followed.
- Any modification or adaptation not intended or authorised by Automobiles CITROËN or carried out without meeting the technical requirements defined by the manufacturer would lead to the suspension of the legal and contractual warranties.

! **Installation of accessory radio communication transmitters**

Before installing a radio communication transmitter, you must contact a CITROËN dealer for the specification of transmitters which can be fitted (frequency, maximum power, aerial position, specific installation requirements), in line with the Vehicle Electromagnetic Compatibility Directive (2004/104/EC).

! Depending on the legislation in force in the country, certain safety equipment may be compulsory: high visibility safety vests, warning triangles, breathalysers, spare bulbs, spare fuses, fire extinguisher, first aid kit, mud flaps at the rear of the vehicle...

Direction indicators

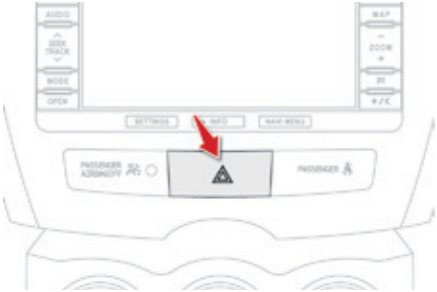


☞ Left: lower the lighting control stalk passing the point of resistance.
☞ Right: raise the lighting control stalk passing the point of resistance.

Three flashes of the direction indicators

☞ Press briefly upwards or downwards, without going beyond the point of resistance; the direction indicators will flash 3 times.

Hazard warning lamps



Visual warning with all of the direction indicators flashing to alert other road users to a vehicle breakdown, towing or accident.

☞ Press this button, all of the direction indicators flash.

They can operate with the ignition off.

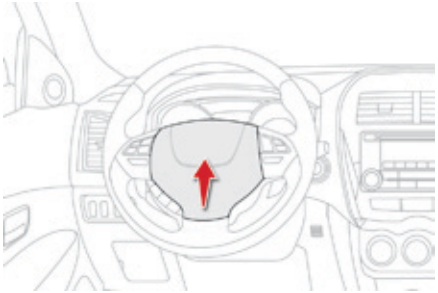
Automatic operation of hazard warning lamps

When braking in an emergency, depending on the deceleration, the hazard warning lamps come on automatically.

They switch off automatically the first time you accelerate.

☞ You can also switch them off by pressing the button.

Horn



☞ Press the central part of the steering wheel.

Braking assistance systems

Group of supplementary systems which help you to obtain optimum braking in complete safety in emergency situations:
- anti-lock braking system (ABS),
- electronic brake force distribution (EBFD).

Anti-lock braking system and electronic brake force distribution

Linked systems which improve the stability and manoeuvrability of your vehicle when braking, in particular on poor or slippery surfaces.

Activation

The anti-lock braking system is active if the vehicle speed is higher than 6 mph (10 km/h). It is deactivated when the vehicle speed falls below 3 mph (5 km/h).
The anti-lock braking system comes into operation automatically when there is a risk of wheel lock.
Normal operation of the ABS may make itself felt by slight vibration of the brake pedal.

! When braking in an emergency, press very firmly without releasing the pressure.

Operating fault

When the vehicle is stationary

If this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by the indication on the instrument panel screen, it indicates a malfunction of the anti-lock braking system which could result in a loss of control of the vehicle when braking.
The vehicle retains normal braking.
Drive carefully at moderate speed and contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible.

i The warning lamp comes on for a few seconds when the ignition is switched on (ON position). If it does not switch off or does not come on, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

When the vehicle is moving

If this warning lamp comes on continuously it indicates a malfunction of the anti-lock braking system which could result in a loss of control of the vehicle on braking.

The vehicle retains normal braking.
Drive carefully at moderate speed and contact a CITROËN dealer or qualified workshop as soon as possible.

If these two warning lamps come on, linked with the warnings on the instrument panel screen, they indicate a malfunction of the electronic brake force distribution which could result in a loss of control of the vehicle on braking.
You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so.
Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

The two warning lamps comes on at the same time and the two warnings are displayed alternately in the instrument panel screen.
When replacing wheels (tyres and rims), ensure that they conform to the manufacturer's recommendations.

Trajectory control systems

Associated systems which contribute to the directional stability of the vehicle within the limits of the laws of physics:
- traction control (TCL),
- active stability control (ASC).

Traction control and active stability control

Traction control optimises traction to prevent wheel spin, by acting on the brakes of the driving wheels and on the engine.
Active stability control acts on the brake of one or more wheels and on the engine to keep the vehicle on the trajectory required by the driver.

Activation

These systems are activated automatically each time the vehicle is started.

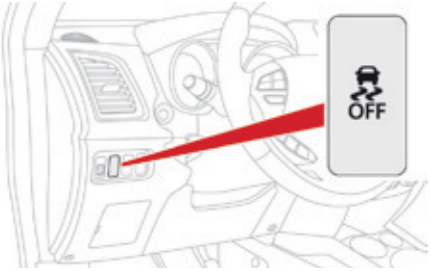
Operation

They operate when the vehicle speed is higher than 9 mph (15 km/h).
They come into operation in the event of a grip or trajectory problem.

This is indicated by the flashing of this symbol on the instrument panel screen.

Deactivation

In exceptional conditions (starting a vehicle which is bogged down, stuck in snow, on soft ground, ...), it may be advisable to deactivate the ASC system, so that the wheels can move freely and regain grip.



☞ Press this button, located to the left of the steering wheel, until the symbol appears in the instrument panel screen.

The illumination of this warning lamp in the instrument panel indicates that the ASC and TCL systems are deactivated.

Reactivation

☞ Press this button again to reactivate the ASC and TCL systems.

When the warning lamp goes off, this indicates the reactivation of the ASC and TCL systems.

Operating fault

SERVICE REQUIRED

ASC SYSTEM
SERVICE REQUIRED

The illumination of one of these warning lamps accompanied by a message in the instrument panel screen indicates a malfunction of these systems. Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to have the ASC/TCL systems checked.

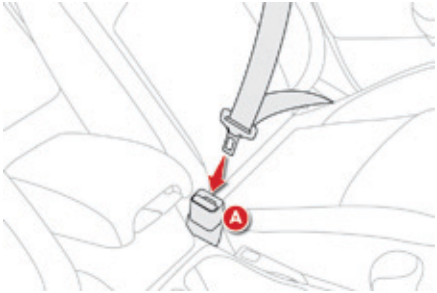
! The ASC/TCL systems offer exceptional safety in normal driving, but this should not encourage the driver to take extra risks or drive at high speed.
The correct functioning of these systems depends on observation of the manufacturer's recommendations on:
- wheels (tyres and rims),
- braking components,
- electronic components,
- assembly and repair procedures.

After an impact, have these systems checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Seat belts

Front seat belts

The front seat belts are fitted with a pretensioning and force limiting system.
This system improves safety in the front seats in the event of a front or side impact.
Depending on the severity of the impact, the pretensioning system instantly tightens the seat belts against the body of the occupants.
The pretensioning seat belts are active when the ignition is on.
The force limiter reduces the pressure of the seat belt on the chest of the occupant, so improving their protection.

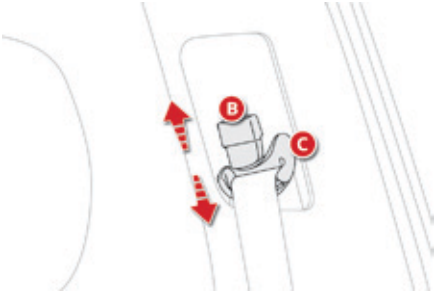


Fastening

- ☞ Pull the strap, then insert the tongue in the buckle **A**.
- ☞ Check that the seat belt is fastened correctly by pulling the strap.

Unfastening

- ☞ Press the red button on the buckle **A**.



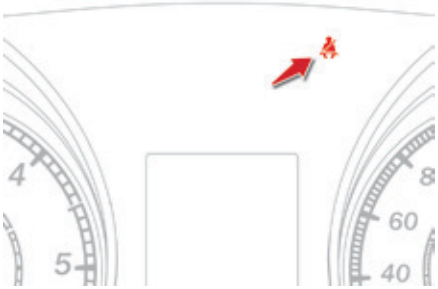
Height adjustment

- ☞ To lower the attachment point, press the control **B** and slide the fixing **C** down.
- ☞ To raise the attachment point, press the control **B** and slide the fixing **C** up.

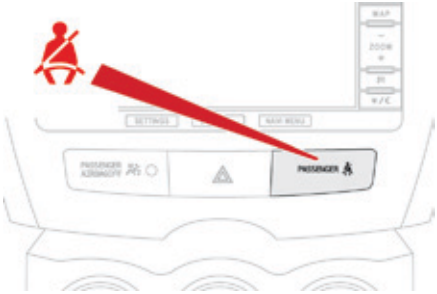
Front seat belt not fastened / unfastened warning lamp

Driver's seat belt

When the ignition is switched on, this warning lamp comes on accompanied by an audible signal for a few seconds if the driver has not fastened their seat belt.



If the driver does not fasten their seat belt within one minute after switching on the ignition, the warning lamp flashes accompanied by an intermittent audible signal and a display on the instrument panel screen.
The warning lamp, the audible signal and the display stop after approximately 90 seconds and return until the driver fastens their seat belt.
If the seat belt is unfastened **while the vehicle is moving**, you are alerted by the same warnings.



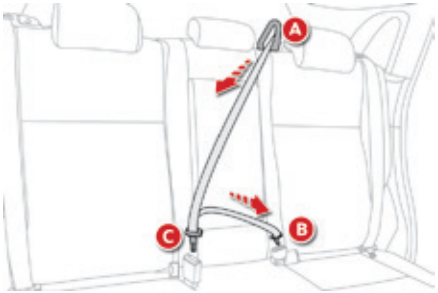
Front passenger's seat belt

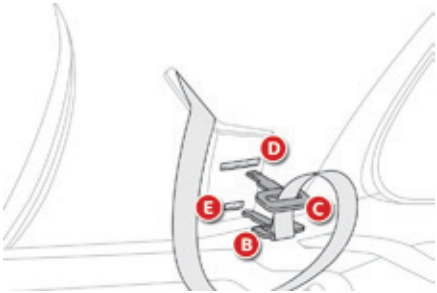
When the ignition is switched on, this warning lamp comes on the centre console panel.

It is accompanied by an audible signal for a few seconds if the passenger has not fastened their seat belt.
If the seat belt is unfastened **while the vehicle is moving**, you are alerted by the same warnings.

Centre rear seat belt

The seat belt for the centre rear seat is fitted in the roof.
It has three anchorage points and a reel.





Fastening the belt

- ☞ Pull out the belt and pass it through the belt guide **A**.
- ☞ Pull on the strap and insert the tongue **B** into the left-hand buckle.
- ☞ Insert the tongue **C** into the right-hand buckle.
- ☞ Check that each buckle has engaged by pulling on the strap.

Unfastening and stowing the belt

- ☞ Press the red button on buckle **C**, and then on the red button on buckle **B**.
- ☞ Guide the belt as it reels in, passing it through the belt guide **A**.
- ☞ Stow the tongue **C** in the upper slot **D** and the tongue **B** in the lower slot **E**.

Outer rear seat belts

Each outer rear seat is fitted with a three-point inertia reel seat belt.

Fastening

- ☞ Pull the strap, then insert the tongue in the buckle.
- ☞ Check that the seat belt is fastened correctly by pulling the strap.

Unfastening

- ☞ Press the red button on the buckle.

Advice

The driver must ensure that passengers use the seat belts correctly and that they are all fastened before setting off.
Wherever you are seated in the vehicle, always fasten your seat belt, even for short journeys.
Do not interchange the seat belt buckles as they will not fulfill their role fully.
The seat belts are fitted with an inertia reel permitting automatic adjustment of the length of the strap to your size. The seat belt is stowed automatically when not in use.
Before and after use, ensure that the seat belt is reeled in correctly.
The lower part of the strap must be positioned as low as possible on the pelvis.
The upper part must be positioned in the hollow of the shoulder.
The inertia reels are fitted with an automatic locking device which comes into operation in the event of a collision, emergency braking or if the vehicle rolls over. You can release the device by pulling the strap firmly and then releasing it so that it reels in slightly.

In order to be effective, a seat belt must:
- be tightened as close to the body as possible,
- be pulled in front of you with a smooth movement, checking that it does not twist,
- be used to restrain only one person,
- not bear any trace of cuts or fraying,
- not be converted or modified to avoid affecting its performance.

In accordance with current safety regulations, for all repairs on your vehicle's seat belts, go to a qualified workshop with the skills and equipment needed, which a CITROËN dealer is able to provide.
Have your seat belts checked regularly by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop, particularly if the straps show signs of damage.
Clean the seat belt straps with soapy water or a textile cleaning product, sold by CITROËN dealers.
After folding or moving a seat or rear bench seat, ensure that the seat belt is positioned and reeled in correctly.

Recommendations for children

Use a suitable child seat if the passenger is less than 12 years old or shorter than one and a half metres.
Never use the same seat belt to secure more than one person.
Never allow a child to travel on your lap.
For more information on **Child seats**, refer to the corresponding section.

In the event of an impact

Depending on the nature and seriousness of the impact, the pretensioning device may be deployed before and independently of the airbags.
Deployment of the pretensioners is accompanied by a slight discharge of harmless smoke and a noise, due to the activation of the pyrotechnic cartridge incorporated in the system.
In all cases, the airbag warning lamp comes on.
Following an impact, have the seat belts system checked, and if necessary replaced, by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

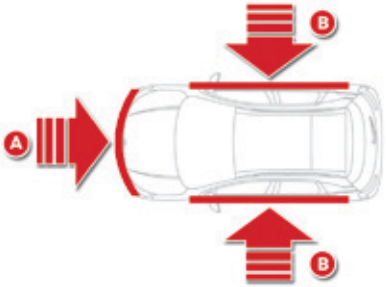
Airbags

General information

System designed to contribute towards improving the safety of the occupants (with the exception of the rear centre passenger) in the event of violent collisions. The airbags supplement the action of the seat belts fitted with force limiters (all except the centre rear passenger belt).
If a collision occurs, the electronic detectors record and analyse the front and side impacts sustained in the impact detection zones:

- in the case of a serious impact, the airbags are deployed instantly and contribute towards better protection of the occupants of the vehicle (with the exception of the rear centre passenger); immediately after the impact, the airbags deflate rapidly so that they do not hinder visibility or the exit of the occupants,
- in the case of a minor or rear impact or in certain roll-over conditions, the airbags may not be deployed; the seat belt alone contributes towards ensuring your protection in these situations.

The airbags do not operate when the ignition is switched off.
This equipment will only deploy once.
If a second impact occurs (during the same or a subsequent accident), the airbag will not be deployed again.

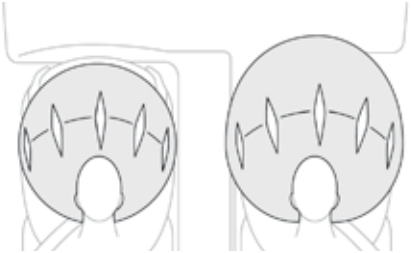


Impact detection zones

A. Front impact zone.
B. Side impact zone.

Deployment of one or more of the airbags is accompanied by a slight emission of smoke and a noise, due to the activation of the pyrotechnic cartridge incorporated in the system.
This smoke is not harmful, but sensitive individuals may experience slight irritation.
The noise of detonation associated with the deployment of one or more airbags may result in a slight loss of hearing for a short time.

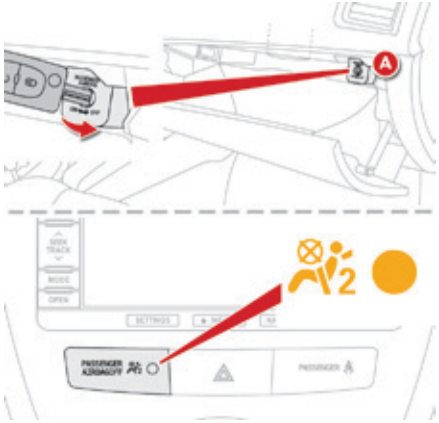
Front airbags



System which contributes toward improving protection for the head and chest of the driver and front passenger in the event of a front impact.
The driver's airbag is fitted in the centre of the steering wheel; the front passenger's airbag is fitted in the dashboard above the glove box.

Deployment

The airbags are deployed, except the passenger's front airbag if it is deactivated, in the event of a serious front impact applied to all or part of the front impact zone **A**, in the longitudinal centreline of the vehicle on a horizontal plane and directed from the front to the rear of the vehicle.
The front airbag inflates between the front occupant of the vehicle and the dashboard to cushion their forward movement.



Deactivation

Only the front passenger's airbag can be deactivated:

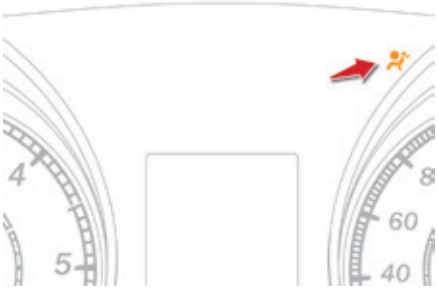
- ☞ insert the key in the passenger's airbag deactivation switch **A**,
- ☞ turn it to the **"OFF"** position,
- ☞ remove the key.

This warning lamp comes on in the centre console panel, when the ignition is on and until the airbag is reactivated.

! To ensure the safety of your child, the passenger's airbag must be deactivated when you install a "rearward facing" child seat on the front passenger seat. Otherwise, the child would risk being seriously injured or killed if the airbag were triggered.

Reactivation

When you remove the "rearward facing" child seat, turn switch **A** to the **"ON"** position to reactivate the airbag and so ensure the safety of your front passenger in the event of an impact.
The associated warning lamp goes off.

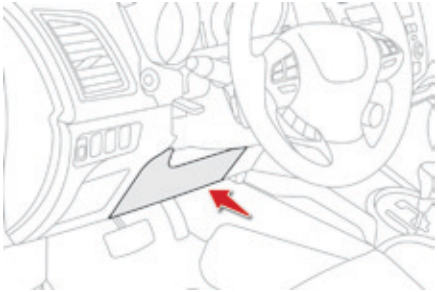


Operating fault

If this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel, accompanied by a message, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop without delay to have the system checked. The airbags may no longer be deployed in the event of a serious impact.

! If the airbag warning lamp and the display come on continuously, do not install a "rearward facing" child seat on the front passenger seat.
Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop without delay.

Knee airbag*



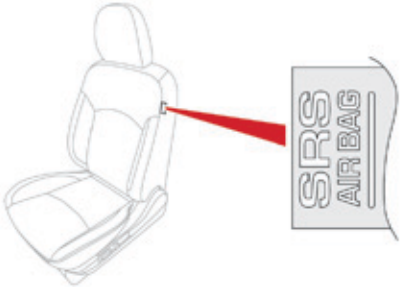
System which contributes towards improving the protection of the driver's knees in the event of a serious front impact.
This airbag is fitted in the dashboard below the steering column.

Deployment

It is deployed at the same time as the front airbags.

* Depending on country of sale.

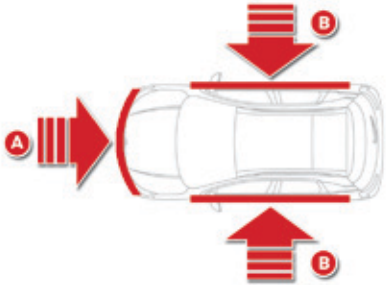
Lateral airbags



System which contributes towards improving protection for the driver and passenger in the event of a serious side impact in order to limit the risk of injury to the chest.
Each lateral airbag is fitted in the front seat back frame, on the door side.

Deployment

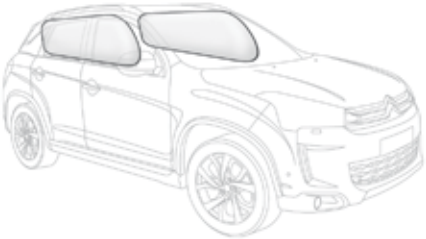
The lateral airbag is deployed unilaterally in the event of a serious side impact applied to all or part of the side impact zone **B**, perpendicular to the longitudinal centreline of the vehicle on a horizontal plane and directed from the outside towards the inside of the vehicle.
The lateral airbag inflates between the front occupant of the vehicle and the corresponding door trim panel.



Impact detection zones

A. Front impact zone.
B. Side impact zone.

Curtain airbags

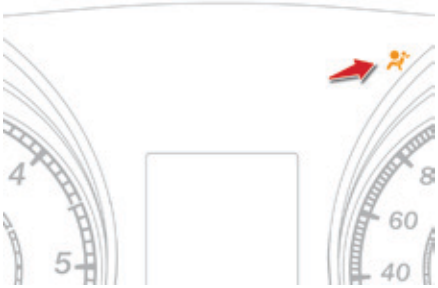


System which contributes towards improving protection for the driver and passengers (with the exception of the rear centre passenger) in the event of a serious side impact in order to limit the risk of injury to the head.
Each curtain airbag is fitted in the pillars and the upper section of the passenger compartment.

Deployment

The curtain airbag is deployed at the same time as the corresponding lateral airbag in the event of a serious side impact applied to all or part of the side impact zone **B**, perpendicular to the longitudinal centreline of the vehicle on a horizontal plane and directed from the outside towards the inside of the vehicle.
The curtain airbag inflates between the front or rear occupant of the vehicle and the windows.

! In the event of a minor impact or bump on the side of the vehicle or if the vehicle rolls over, the airbag may not be deployed.
In the event of a rear or front collision, the airbag is not deployed.



Operating fault

If this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel and this display appears in the instrument panel screen, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked. The airbags may no longer be deployed in the event of a serious impact.

! Advice

For the airbags to be fully effective, observe the safety recommendations below:

Sit in a normal upright position.
Wear a correctly adjusted seat belt.
Do not leave anything between the occupants and the airbags (a child, pet, object...), nor fix or attach anything close to the inflation trajectory of the airbags; this could cause injuries during their deployment.
Never modify the original definition of your vehicle, particularly in the area directly around the airbags.
After an accident or if the vehicle has been stolen or broken into, have the airbag systems checked.
All work on the airbag system must be carried out by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
Even if all of the precautions mentioned are observed, a risk of injury or of minor burns to the head, chest or arms when an airbag is deployed cannot be ruled out. The bag inflates almost instantly (within a few milliseconds) then deflates within the same time discharging the hot gas via openings provided for this purpose.

Front airbags

Do not drive holding the steering wheel by its spokes or resting your hands on the centre part of the wheel.
Passengers must not place their feet on the dashboard.
Do not smoke as deployment of the airbags can cause burns or the risk of injury from a cigarette or pipe.
Never remove or pierce the steering wheel or hit it violently.
Do not fit or attach anything to the steering wheel or dashboard, this could cause injuries with deployment of the airbags.

Knee airbag*

Do not sit with your knees any nearer to the steering wheel than necessary.

Avoid attaching a heavy object to the key as it could become a dangerous projectile if the airbag were deployed.

Lateral airbags

Use only approved covers on the seats, compatible with the deployment the lateral airbags. For information on the range of seat covers suitable for your vehicle, you can contact a CITROËN dealer.
Do not fix or attach anything to the seat backs (clothing...). This could cause injury to the chest or arms if the lateral airbag is deployed.
Do not sit with the upper part of the body any nearer to the door than necessary.

Curtain airbags

Do not fix or attach anything to the roof. This could cause injury to the head if the curtain airbag is deployed.
If fitted on your vehicle, do not remove the grab handles installed on the roof, they play a part in securing the curtain airbags.

* Depending on country of sale.

General points relating to child seats

Although one of CITROËN's main criteria when designing your vehicle, the safety of your children also depends on you.

For maximum safety, please observe the following recommendations:

- in accordance with European regulations, **all children under the age of 12 or less than one and a half metres tall must travel in approved child seats suited to their weight**, on seats fitted with a seat belt or ISOFIX mountings*,
- **statistically, the safest seats in your vehicle for carrying children are the rear seats,**
- **a child weighing less than 9 kg must travel in the rearward facing position both in the front and in the rear.**

CITROËN recommends that children should travel on the **rear seats** of your vehicle:

- **rearward facing** up to the age of 3,
- **forward facing** over the age of 3.

* The regulations on carrying children are specific to each country. Refer to the legislation in force in your country.

Child seat in the front*

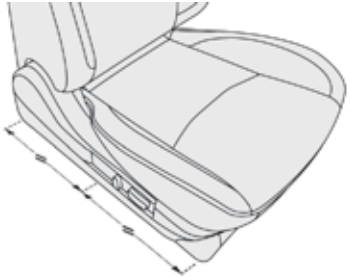
Rearward facing

When a rearward facing child seat is installed on the **front passenger seat**, adjust the seat to the intermediate longitudinal and highest position, with the backrest straightened.
The passenger's front airbag must be deactivated. Otherwise, **the child risks being seriously injured or killed if the airbag were to inflate**.

Forward facing

When a forward facing child seat is installed on the **front passenger seat**, adjust the vehicle's seat to the intermediate longitudinal and highest position with seat backrest straightened and leave the passenger's front airbag activated.

> **i** Ensure that the seat belt is correctly tensioned.
> For child seats with a support leg, ensure that the support leg is in stable contact with the floor. If necessary, adjust the passenger seat.



Passenger seat adjusted to the intermediate longitudinal position.

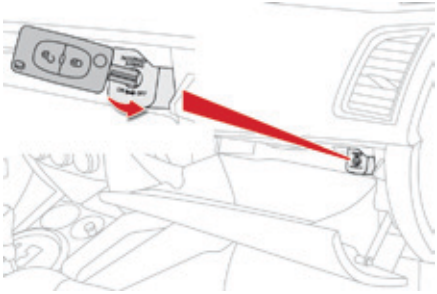
* Refer to the current legislation in your country before installing a child seat on this seat.

Deactivating the passenger's front airbag

! Never install a rearward facing child restraint system on a seat protected by an active front airbag. This could cause the death of the child or serious injury.

The warning label present on both sides of the passenger's sun visor repeats this advice. In line with current legislation, the following tables contain this warning in all of the languages required.

Passenger airbag OFF



i Only the passenger's front airbag can be deactivated.

- ☞ With the ignition off, introduce the key into the passenger airbag deactivation switch.
- ☞ Turn it to the "**OFF**" position.
- ☞ Remove the key, leaving the switch in this position.

When the ignition is on, this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel and stays on while the airbag is deactivated.

AR	لا يجب أبدا تركيب نظام لإجلاس الطفل الوجه باتجاه الوراء على مقعد سيارة مجهز بوسادة أمان هوائية أمامية مفعلة، فقد يؤدي هذا إلى التسبب بموت الطفل أو بإصابات خطيرة لديه.
BG	НИКОГА НЕ инсталирайте детско столче на седалка с АКТИВИРАНА предна ВЪЗДУШНА ВЪЗГЛАВНИЦА. Това може да причини СМЪРТ или СЕРИОЗНО НАРАНЯВАНЕ на детето.
CS	NIKDY neumisťujte dětské zádržné zařízení orientované směrem dozadu na sedadlo chráněné AKTIVOVANÝM čelním AIRBAGEM. Hrozí nebezpečí SMRTI DÍTĚTE nebo VÁŽNÉHO ZRANĚNÍ.
DA	Brug ALDRIG en bagudvendt barnestol på et sæde, der er beskyttet af en AKTIV AIRBAG. BARNET risikerer at blive ALVORLIGT KVÆSTET eller DRÆBT.
DE	Montieren Sie auf einem Sitz mit AKTIVIERTEM Front-Airbag NIEMALS einen Kindersitz oder eine Babyschale entgegen der Fahrtrichtung, das Kind könnte schwere oder sogar tödliche Verletzungen erleiden.
EL	Μη χρησιμοποιείτε ΠΟΤΕ παιδικό κάθισμα με την πλάτη του προς το εμπρός μέρος του αυτοκινήτου, σε μια θέση που προστατεύεται από ΜΕΤΩΠΙΚΟ αερόσακο που είναι ΕΝΕΡΓΟΣ. Αυτό μπορεί να έχει σαν συνέπεια το ΘΑΝΑΤΟ ή το ΣΟΒΑΡΟ ΤΡΑΥΜΑΤΙΣΜΟ του ΠΑΙΔΙΟΥ
EN	NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur
ES	NO INSTALAR NUNCA un sistema de retención para niños de espaldas al sentido de la marcha en un asiento protegido mediante un AIRBAG frontal ACTIVADO, ya que podría causar lesiones GRAVES o incluso la MUERTE del niño.
ET	Ärge MITTE KUNAGI paigaldage "seljaga sõidusuunas" lapseistet juhi kõrvalistmele, mille ESITURVAPADI on AKTIVEERITUD. Turvapadja avanemine võib last TÕSISELT või ELUOHTLIKULT vigastada.
FI	ÄLÄ KOSKAAN aseta lapsen turvaistuinta selkä ajosuuntaan istuimelle, jonka edessä suojana on käyttöön aktivoitu TURVATYYNY. Sen laukeaminen voi aiheuttaa LAPSEN KUOLEMAN tai VAKAVAN LOUKKAANTUMISEN.
FR	NE JAMAIS installer de système de retenue pour enfants faisant face vers l'arrière sur un siège protégé par un COUSSIN GONFLABLE frontal ACTIVÉ. Cela peut provoquer la MORT de l'ENFANT ou le BLESSER GRAVEMENT
HR	NIKADA ne postavljati dječju sjedalicu leđima u smjeru vožnje na sjedalo zaštićeno UKLJUČENIM prednjim ZRAČNIM JASTUKOM. To bi moglo uzrokovati SMRT ili TEŠKU OZLJEDU djeteta.
HU	SOHA ne használjon menetiránynak háttal beszerelt gyermekülést AKTIVÁLT (BEKAPCSOLT) FRONTLÉGZSÁKKAL védett ülésen. Ez a gyermek HALÁLÁT vagy SÚLYOS SÉRÜLÉSÉT okozhatja.
IT	NON installare MAI seggiolini per bambini posizionati in senso contrario a quello di marcia su un sedile protetto da un AIRBAG frontale ATTIVATO. Ciò potrebbe provocare la MORTE o FERITE GRAVI al bambino.

LT	NIEKADA neįrenkite vaiko prilaikymo priemonės su atgal atgręžtu vaiku ant sėdynės, kuri saugoma VEIKIANČIOS priekinės ORO PAGALVĖS. Išsiskleidus oro pagalvei vaikas gali būti MIRTINAI arba SUNKIAI TRAUMUOTAS.
LV	NEKAD NEuzstādiet uz aizmuguri vērstu bērnu sēdeklīti priekšējā pasažiera sēdvietā, kurā ir AKTIVIZĒTS priekšējais DROŠĪBAS GAISA SPILVENS. Tas var izraisīt BĒRNA NĀVI vai radīt NOPIETNUS IEVAINOJUMUS.
MT	Qatt m'ghandek thalli tifel/tifla marbut f'siggu dahru lejn l-Airbag attiva, ghaliex tista' tikkawza korriment serju jew anke mewt lit-tifel/tifla
NL	Plaats NOOIT een kinderzitje met de rug in de rijrichting op een zitplaats waarvan de AIRBAG is INGESCHAKELD. Bij het afgaan van de airbag kan het KIND LEVENSGEVAARLIJK GEWOND RAKEN
NO	Installer ALDRI et barnesete med ryggen mot kjøreretningen i et sete som er beskyttet med en frontal AKTIVERT KOLLISJONSPUTE, BARNET risikerer å bli DREPT eller HARDT SKADET.
PL	NIGDY nie instalować fotelika dziecięcego w pozycji "tyłem do kierunku jazdy" na siedzeniu wyposażonym w CZOŁOWĄ PODUSZKĘ POWIETRZNĄ w stanie AKTYWNYM. Może to doprowadzić do ŚMIERCI DZIECKA lub spowodować u niego POWAŻNE OBRAŻENIA CIAŁA.
PT	NUNCA instale um sistema de retenção para crianças de costas para a estrada num banco protegido por um AIRBAG frontal ACTIVADO. Esta instalação poderá provocar FERIMENTOS GRAVES ou a MORTE da CRIANÇA.
RO	Nu instalati NICIODATA un sistem de retinere pentru copii, dispus cu spatele in directia de mers, pe un loc din vehicul protejat cu AIRBAG frontal ACTIVAT. Aceasta ar putea provoca MOARTEA COPILULUI sau RANIREA lui GRAVA.
RU	ВО ВСЕХ СЛУЧАЯХ ЗАПРЕЩАЕТСЯ использовать обращенное назад детское удерживающее устройство на сиденье, защищенном ФУНКЦИОНИРУЮЩЕЙ ПОДУШКОЙ БЕЗОПАСНОСТИ, установленной перед этим сиденьем. Это может привести к ГИБЕЛИ РЕБЕНКА или НАНЕСЕНИЮ ЕМУ СЕРЬЕЗНЫХ ТЕЛЕСНЫХ ПОВРЕЖДЕНИЙ
SK	NIKDY neinštalujte detské zádržné zariadenie orientované smerom dozadu na sedadlo chránené AKTIVOVANÝM čelným AIRBAGOM. Mohlo by dôjsť k SMRTEĽNÉMU alebo VÁŽNEMU PORANENIU DIEŤAŤA.
SL	NIKOLI ne nameščajte otroškega sedeža s hrbtom v smeri vožnje, če je VARNOSTNA BLAZINA pred sprednjim sopotnikovim sedežem AKTIVIRANA. Takšna namestitev lahko povzroči SMRT OTROKA ali HUDE POŠKODBE.
SR	NIKADA ne koristite dečje sedište koje se okreće unazad na sedištu zaštićenim AKTIVNIM VAZDUŠNIM JASTUKOM ispred njega, jer mogu nastupiti SMRT ili OZBILJNA POVREDA DETETA.
SV	Passagerarkrockkudden fram MÅSTE vara avaktiverad om en bakåtvänd bilbarnstol installeras på denna plats. Annars riskerar barnet att DÖDAS eller SKADAS ALLVARLIGT.
TR	KESİNLKLE HAVA YASTIĞI AKTİF olan ön koltuğa yüzü arkaya dönük bir çocuk koltuğu yerleştirmeyiniz. Bu ÇOCUĞUN ÖLMESİNE veya ÇOK AĞIR YARALANMASINA sebep olabilir.

Child seat at the rear

Rearward facing

When a rearward facing child seat is installed **on a rear passenger seat**, move the vehicle's front seat forward and straighten the backrest so that the rearward facing child seat does not touch the vehicle's front seat.

Remove and stow the head restraint before installing a child seat with a backrest on a passenger seat. Refit the head restraint once the child seat has been removed.

Forward facing

When a forward facing child seat is installed **on a rear passenger seat**, move the vehicle's front seat forward and straighten the backrest so that the legs of the child in the forward facing child seat do not touch the vehicle's front seat.

Ensure that the seat belt is correctly tensioned.
For child seats with a support leg, ensure that this is in firm contact with the floor. If necessary, adjust the front seat of the vehicle.

Centre rear seat

A child seat with a support leg must never be installed on the **centre rear passenger seat**.

The incorrect installation of a child seat in a vehicle compromises the protection of the child in the event of an accident.

Child seats recommended by CITROËN

CITROËN offers a range of recommended child seats which are secured using a **three point seat belt**:

Group 0+: from birth to 13 kg	
	L1 "RÖMER Baby-Safe Plus" Installed in the rearward facing position.
Group 1: from 9 to 18 kg	
	L2 "FAIR G 0/1 S ISOFIX" Installed forward facing, without the ISOFIX base. 6 angled positions for the shell.
	L3 "RÖMER Duo Plus ISOFIX" Installed forward facing. Can be secured with the seat belt. 3 angled positions for the shell.

These seats can also be installed using the ISOFIX mountings (see following pages).
Follow the instructions for fitting the child seat given in the seat manufacturer's installation guide.

Locations for child seats secured using the seat belt

In accordance with European regulations, this table indicates the options for installing child seats secured using a seat belt and universally approved (a) in relation to the weight of the child and the seat in the vehicle.

	Weight of the child and indicative age			
Seat	**Less than 13 kg** (groups 0 (b) and 0+) Up to approx. 1 year	**From 9 to 18 kg** (group 1) From approx. 1 to 3 years	**From 15 to 25 kg** (group 2) From approx. 3 to 6 years	**From 22 to 36 kg** (group 3) From approx. 6 to 10 years
Front passenger seat (c) with passenger airbag activated	**X**	**X**	**X**	**X**
Front passenger seat (c) with passenger airbag deactivated	**L1**	**L2, L3**	**X**	**X**
Outer rear seats (row 2) (d)	**U**	**U**	**U**	**U**
Centre rear seat (row 2) (d)	**L1**	**L2, L3**	**X**	**X**

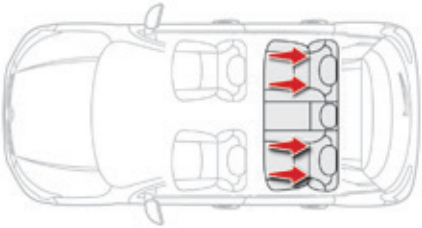
(a) Universal child seat: child seat which can be installed in all vehicles using the seat belt.
(b) Group 0: from birth to 10 kg. Infant car seats and "car cots" cannot be installed on the front passenger seat.
(c) Consult the legislation in force in your country before installing your child on this seat.
(d) To install a child seat on a rear seat, rearward or forward facing, move the front seat forward, then straighten the backrest, so as to leave sufficient space for the child seat and the child's legs.

U: seat suitable for the installation of a child seat secured using the seat belt and universally approved, "rearward facing" and/or "forward facing".
X: seat not suitable for the installation of a child seat of the weight group indicated.
L-: only the child seats indicated can be installed on the seat concerned (depending on country of sale).

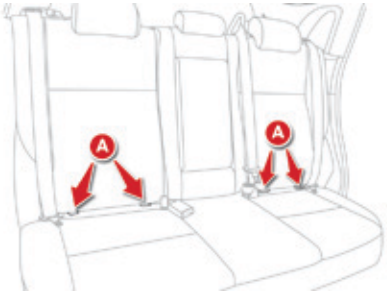
Remove and stow the head restraint before installing a child seat with a backrest on a passenger seat. Refit the head restraint once the child seat has been removed.

"ISOFIX" mountings

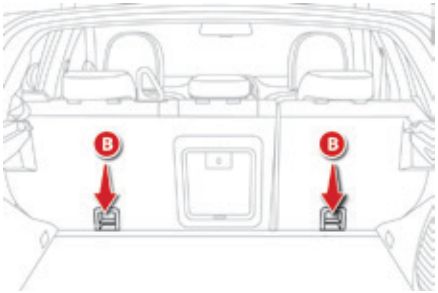
Your vehicle has been approved in accordance with the **latest** ISOFIX **regulation**.
The seats, represented below, are fitted with regulation ISOFIX mountings:



There are three rings for each seat:



- two rings **A**, located between the seat backrest and cushion, indicated by a marking,



- a ring **B**, located behind the seat and identified by a marking, referred to as the **Top Tether** for fixing the upper strap.

This ISOFIX mounting system provides fast, reliable and safe fitting of the child seat in your vehicle.
The **ISOFIX child seats** are fitted with two latches which are secured on the two rings **A**.
Some seats also have an **upper strap**, known as the Top Tether, which is attached to ring **B**.

To secure the child seat to the **TOP TETHER**:
- remove and stow the head restraint before installing the child seat on the seat (refit it once the child seat has been removed),
- pass the upper strap of the child seat behind the seat backrest, centring it between the apertures for the head restraint rods,
- fix the hook of the upper strap to the ring **B**,
- tighten the upper strap.

When fitting an ISOFIX child seat to the left-hand rear seat of the benchseat, before fitting the seat, first move the centre rear seat belt towards the middle of the vehicle, so as to avoid the seat interfering with the operation of the seat belt.

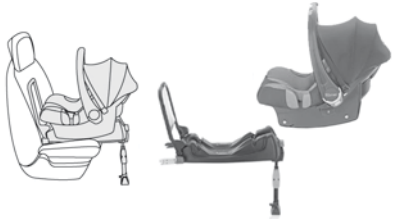
! The incorrect installation of a child seat in a vehicle compromises the child's protection in the event of an accident.

Strictly follow the fitting instructions provided in the user guide supplied with the child seat.

i For information on the possibilities for installing ISOFIX child seats in your vehicle, refer to the summary table.

ISOFIX child seats recommended by CITROËN

CITROËN offers a range of approved child seats secured using the ISOFIX mountings.

Group 0+: up to 13 kg	
IL1 **RÖMER Baby-Safe Plus and its ISOFIX Baby-Safe plus base**	
	Installed in the rearward facing position using an ISOFIX base, which is attached to the rings **A**. The base has a height-adjustable support leg.
IL2 **FAIR G 0/1 S and its ISOFIX RWF base**	
	Installed in the rearward facing position using an ISOFIX base, which is attached to the rings **A**. The base has a support leg. 6 angled positions for the shell. This configuration is reserved for children weighing up to 13 kg.

These child seats can also be used on seats which are not fitted with ISOFIX mountings.
In this case, they must be attached to the vehicle seat using the three point seat belt.
Follow the instructions for fitting the child seat given in the seat manufacturer's installation guide.

Group 1: from 9 to 18 kg	
IL3 **RÖMER Duo Plus ISOFIX**	
	Installed forward facing. Attached to the rings **A**, as well as ring **B**, known as the TOP TETHER, using an upper strap. 3 angled positions for the shell.
IL4 **FAIR G 0/1 S and its ISOFIX FWF base**	
	Installed in the rearward facing position using an ISOFIX base, which is attached to the rings **A**. The base has a support leg. 6 angled positions for the shell. This configuration is suitable for children weighing more than 13 kg.

These child seats can also be used on seats which are not fitted with ISOFIX mountings.
In this case, they must be attached to the vehicle seat using the three point seat belt.
Follow the instructions for fitting the child seat given in the seat manufacturer's installation guide.

Locations for ISOFIX child seats

In accordance with European Regulations, this table indicates the options for installing ISOFIX child seats on seats in the vehicle fitted with ISOFIX mountings.
In the case of universal and semi-universal ISOFIX child seats, the ISOFIX size category, determined by a letter between **A** and **G**, is indicated on the child seat next to the ISOFIX logo.

	Weight of the child / indicative age									
	Less than 10 kg (group 0) Up to approx. 6 months		**Less than 10 kg (group 0) Less than 13 kg (group 0+)** Up to approx. 1 year			**From 9 to 18 kg (group 1)** From approx. 1 to 3 years				
Type of ISOFIX child seat	**infant car seat**		**"rearward facing"**			**"rearward facing"**		**"forward facing"**		
ISOFIX size category	**F**	**G**	**C**	**D**	**E**	**C**	**D**	**A**	**B**	**B1**
Universal and semi-universal ISOFIX child seats which can be installed on the outer rear seats	**X**		**X**		**IL1**	**IL2**	**X**	**IUF**		

IUF: seat suitable for the installation of an **I**sofix **U**niversal seat, "**F**orward facing" secured using the "Top Tether" upper strap.
IL-: only the child seats indicated can be installed using the ISOFIX mountings.
For advice on securing of the "Top Tether" upper strap, refer to the "ISOFIX mountings" section.
X: seat not suitable for the installation of an ISOFIX seat of the size category indicated.

Remove and stow the head restraint before installing a child seat with a backrest on a passenger seat. Refit the head restraint once the child seat has been removed.

Advice on child seats

! The incorrect installation of a child seat in a vehicle compromises the child's protection in the event of an accident.
Remember to fasten the seat belts or the child seat harnesses **keeping the slack** in relation to the child's body **to a minimum**, even for short journeys.
For optimum installation of the forward facing child seat, ensure that the back of the child seat is in contact with the back of the vehicle's seat and that the head restraint does not cause any discomfort.
If the head restraint has to be removed, ensure that it is stored or attached securely to prevent it from being thrown around the vehicle in the event of sharp braking.

Children at the front

The legislation on carrying a child on the front passenger seat is specific to each country. Refer to the legislation in force in your country.
Deactivate the passenger's airbag when a rearward facing child seat is installed on the front seat. Otherwise, the child would risk being seriously injured or killed if the airbag were to inflate.

Installing a booster cushion

The chest part of the seat belt must be positioned on the child's shoulder without touching the neck.
Ensure that the lap part of the seat belt passes correctly over the child's thighs.
CITROËN recommends the use of a booster seat which has a back, fitted with a seat belt guide at shoulder level.
As a safety precaution, do not leave:
- one or more children alone and unsupervised in a vehicle,
- a child or an animal in a vehicle which is exposed to the sun, with the windows closed,
- the keys within reach of children inside the vehicle.

To prevent accidental opening of the doors, use the Child lock.
Take care not to open the rear windows by more than one third.
To protect young children from the rays of the sun, fit side blinds on the rear windows.

Child lock

Mechanical system to prevent opening of the rear doors using their interior controls.
The control is located on the edge of each rear door.

Child lock on

☞ Move the control **A** towards position **1**.

Child lock off

☞ Move the control **A** towards position **2**.

TOTAL & CITROËN

Partners in performance and protecting the environment

Innovation in the search for performance

For over 40 years, the TOTAL Research and Development departments have developed lubricants for CITROËN, to match the latest technical innovations on CITROËN vehicles, both for competition and for everyday motoring.
For you, this is an assurance that you will obtain the best performance from your engine.

Optimum protection for your engine

By having your CITROËN vehicle serviced with TOTAL lubricants, you are contributing towards improving the life and performance of your engine, while also protecting the environment.

CITROËN

CITROËN prefers TOTAL

TOTAL

Fuel tank

Capacity of the tank: approximately 60 litres.

Low fuel level

When the low fuel level is reached, this indication appears in the instrument panel screen. When it first comes on, you have approximately 10 litres of fuel remaining.
The symbol **flashes slowly** (approximately once per second).

! When the symbol begins to **flash rapidly** (approximately twice per second), there is not much fuel remaining in your tank (approximately 5 litres).
You must fill the tank to avoid running out of fuel.

Filling

A label, affixed on the inside of the flap, reminds you of the type of fuel to be used according to your engine.
More than 5 litres of fuel must be added in order to be registered by the fuel gauge.

Location of the cap

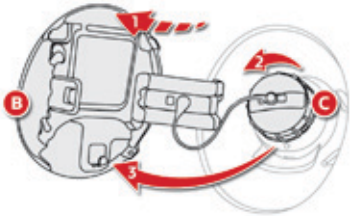
This symbol indicates that the fuel tank cap is located on the left-hand side of the vehicle.

Opening the cap may cause an inrush of air. This vacuum, which is completely normal, is caused by the sealing of the fuel system.

To fill the tank safely:
- ☞ **the engine must be switched off,**
- ☞ pull the control **A** located at the bottom left of the driver's seat to release the fuel filler flap,
- ☞ open the fuel filler flap **B**,
- ☞ turn the filler cap **C** to the left,
- ☞ remove the filler cap **C**,
- ☞ fill the tank, but **do not continue after the 3rd cut-off of the nozzle**; this could cause malfunctions.

When you have filled the tank:
- ☞ refit the filler cap, inserting the upper part first,
- ☞ screw in the filler cap to the right,
- ☞ close the flap.

Ensure that the fuel filler flap is closed correctly.



1. Opening the filler flap.
2. Removing the filler cap.
3. Hooking the filler cap.

Fuel used for petrol engines

The petrol engines are compatible with bio-fuels that conform to current and future European standards and can be obtained from filling stations:

E5 - Petrol that meets the EN228 standard, mixed with a bio-fuel meeting the EN15376 standard.

E10

The only petrol additives authorised for use are those that meet the B715001 standard.

Travelling abroad

Certain fuels could damage the engine of your vehicle. In certain countries, the use of a particular fuel may be required (specific octane rating, specific sales name...) to ensure correct operation of the engine.
For any additional information, contact your dealer.

Fuel used for Diesel engines

The Diesel engines are compatible with biofuels that conform to current and future European standards and can be obtained from filling stations:

B7 - Diesel fuel that meets standard EN590 mixed with a biofuel that meets standard EN14214 (possibly containing up to 7 % Fatty Acid Methyl Ester),

B10 - Diesel fuel that meets standard EN16734 mixed with a biofuel that meets standard EN14214 (possibly containing up to 10 % Fatty Acid Methyl Ester),

XTL - Paraffinic Diesel fuel that meets standard EN15940 mixed with a biofuel that meets standard EN14214 (possibly containing up to 7 % Fatty Acid Methyl Ester).

B20 B30 The use of B20 or B30 fuel meeting standard EN16709 is possible in your Diesel engine*. However, this use, even occasional, requires strict application of the special servicing conditions referred to as "Arduous conditions".

For more information, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

The use of any other type of (bio) fuel (vegetable or animal oils, pure or diluted, domestic fuel, etc.) is strictly prohibited (risk of damage to the engine and fuel system).

The only Diesel additives authorised for use are those that meet the B715000 standard.

* Except MMCD150-M6MMC-STTd engine.

Snow chains

In wintry conditions, snow chains improve traction as well as the behaviour of the vehicle when braking.

The snow chains must be fitted only to the front wheels. They must never be fitted to "space-saver" type spare wheels.

Take account of the legislation in force in your country on the use of snow chains and the maximum running speed authorised.

It is strongly recommended that before you leave, you practise fitting the snow chains on a level and dry surface.

Advice on installation

- If you have to fit the chains during a journey, stop the vehicle on a flat surface on the side of the road.
- Apply the parking brake and position any wheel chocks to prevent movement of your vehicle.
- Fit the chains following the instructions provided by the manufacturer.
- Move off gently and drive for a few moments, without exceeding 30 mph (50 km/h).
- Stop your vehicle and check that the snow chains are correctly tightened.

Avoid driving with snow chains on roads that have been cleared of snow, to avoid damaging your vehicle's tyres and the road surface. If your vehicle is fitted with alloy wheels, check that no part of the chain or its fixings is in contact with the wheel rim.

Use only chains designed for fitment to the type of road wheels on your vehicle:

Original equipment tyre size	Maximum link size
215/70 R16	12 mm
225/55 R18	

For more information on snow chains, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Automatic power cut-off to accessories

After the engine has stopped, **when the ignition switch is in the "ACC" position (or the vehicle in "ACC" mode)** you can still use functions such as the audio equipment, windscreen wipers, dipped beam headlamps, courtesy lamps, etc. for about thirty minutes.

Cutting off

Once the thirty minutes have expired, the power supply to the accessories will be automatically cut off.

Restoring power

The power supply will be restored the next time the ignition is switched on.

Changing a wiper blade

Removing a front or rear wiper blade

- ☞ Raise the corresponding wiper arm.
- ☞ Remove the wiper blade, sliding it towards the outside.

Fitting a front or rear wiper blade

- ☞ At the front, check the size of the wiper blade as the shorter blade is fitted on the right-hand side of the vehicle.
- ☞ Put the corresponding new wiper blade in place and fix it.
- ☞ Fold down the wiper arm carefully.

Towing a trailer, a caravan, etc.

Your vehicle is primarily designed for transporting people and luggage, but it may also be used for towing a trailer.

i We recommend the use of genuine CITROËN towbars and their harnesses that have been tested and approved from the design stage of your vehicle and that the fitting of the towbar is entrusted to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
If the towbar is not fitted by a CITROËN dealer, it is imperative that it is fitted following the manufacturer's instructions.

Driving with a trailer subjects the towing vehicle to more significant stress and its driver must be particularly careful.
For more advice on driving when towing, refer to the corresponding section.
For more information on **Petrol weights** or **Diesel weights** and in particular the towed loads which apply to your vehicle, refer to the corresponding section.
Take care to comply with the gross train weights indicated on the registration certificate or in the technical data for your vehicle.

Advice on driving when towing

Distribution of loads

☞ Distribute the load in the trailer so that the heaviest items are as close as possible to the axle and the nose weight approaches the maximum permitted without exceeding it.

Air density decreases with altitude, thus reducing engine performance. Above 1 000 metres, the maximum towing load must be reduced by 10 % of the GTW and so on for every 1 000 metres of altitude.

For more information on **Petrol weights** or **Diesel weights** and in particular the towed loads which apply to your vehicle, refer to the corresponding section.

Side wind

☞ Take into account the increased sensitivity to side wind.

Cooling

Towing a trailer on a slope increases the temperature of the coolant.

As the fan is electrically controlled, its cooling capacity is not dependent on the engine speed.

☞ To lower the engine speed, reduce your speed.

The maximum towed load on a long slope depends on the gradient and the exterior temperature.

In all cases, pay attention to the coolant temperature.

☞ If this message is displayed, **stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.**

If the message flashes slowly, wait for the engine to cool before topping up the level, if necessary.

If the message flashes rapidly, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop without delay.

Braking

Towing a trailer increases the braking distance. To limit heat build-up in the brakes, use of the engine brake is recommended.

Tyres

☞ Check the tyre pressures of the towing vehicle and of the trailer, observing the recommended pressures.

Lighting

☞ Check the lighting and signalling on the trailer and the adjustment of the vehicle's headlamps.

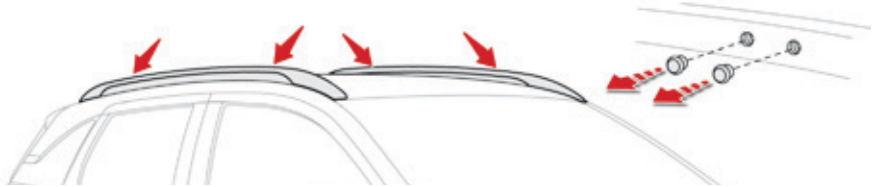
For more information on **Headlamp adjustment**, refer to the corresponding section.

i The rear parking sensors will be deactivated automatically when a genuine CITROËN towbar is used.

Fitting roof bars

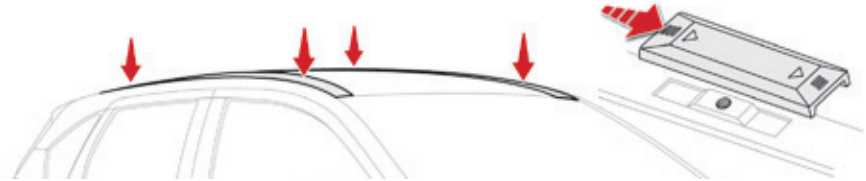
For reasons of safety and to avoid damaging the roof, it is essential to use transverse bars that are approved for your vehicle.

Vehicles fitted with longitudinal bars



The transverse roof bars are fitted to the longitudinal bars at the 8 fixing points masked by covers.
Using a small screwdriver, remove the 8 covers on the inner faces of the longitudinal bars.

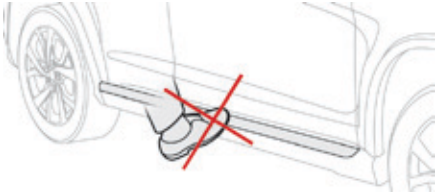
Vehicles not fitted with longitudinal bars



The transverse bars are fitted directly to the roof of the vehicle, at the 4 anchorage points masked by covers.
Slide the covers towards the front of the vehicle to remove them.
Retain the protective covers.
After removing the roof bars, the protective covers should be refitted:

☞ insert the fixing tongues into the apertures then slide the covers towards the rear of the vehicle.

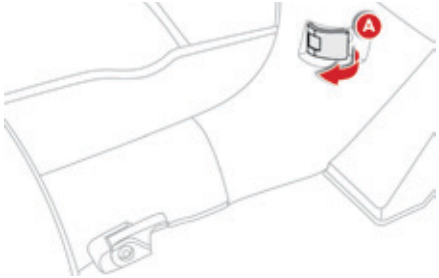
Use accessories recommended by CITROËN and follow the accessory manufacturer's fitting instructions.
Maximum authorised weight on the roof bars, for a loading height not exceeding 40 cm (except bicycle carriers): 80 kg.
If the height exceeds 40 cm, adapt the speed of the vehicle to the condition of the road, to avoid damaging the roof bars and the fixings on the roof.
Please refer to national legislation to comply with the regulations regarding the transportation of objects which are longer than the vehicle.



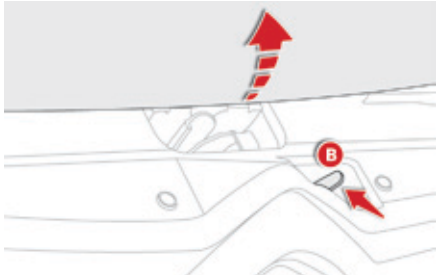
The body sill finishers should not be used as a step when fitting roof bars.

Bonnet

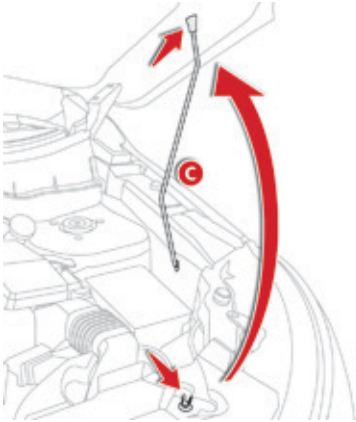
Opening



- Open the left-hand front door.
- Pull the interior bonnet release lever **A**, located at the bottom of the door aperture.



- Push the exterior safety catch **B** to the left and raise the bonnet.



- Unclip the stay **C** from its housing on the back of the bonnet.
- Fix the stay in the notch to hold the bonnet open.

! The cooling fan may start after switching off the engine: take care with articles and clothing that might become caught by the fan blades.

i The location of the interior bonnet release lever prevents opening of the bonnet while the front left door is closed.

! Do not open the bonnet in high winds. When the engine is hot, handle the exterior safety catch and the bonnet stay with care (risk of burns).

Closing

- Take the stay out of the support notch.
- Clip the stay in its housing on the back of the bonnet.
- Lower the bonnet and release it at the end of its travel.
- Pull on the bonnet to check that it is secured correctly.

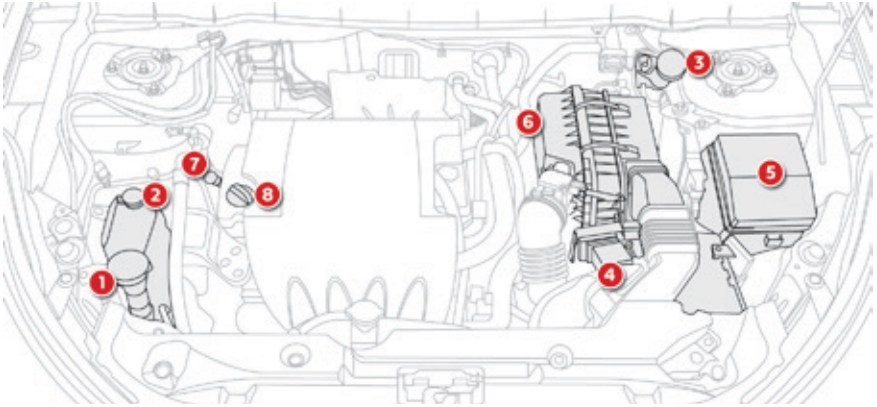
This message appears in the instrument panel screen if the bonnet is not fully closed.

! Because of the presence of electrical equipment under the bonnet, it is recommended that exposure to water (rain, washing, ...) be limited.

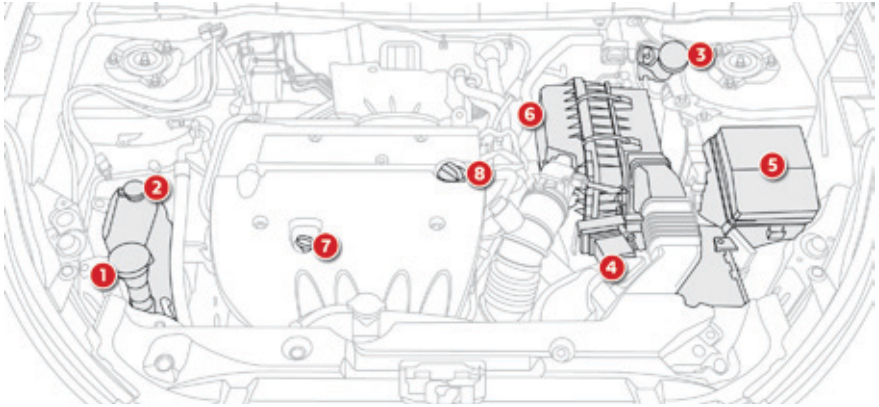
Petrol engines

Access for checking the levels of the various fluids and the replacement of certain components.

1. Screenwash and headlamp wash fluid reservoir.
2. Coolant header tank.
3. Brake fluid reservoir.
4. Battery.
5. Fusebox.
6. Air filter.
7. Engine oil dipstick.
8. Engine oil filler cap.



1.6 litre 115

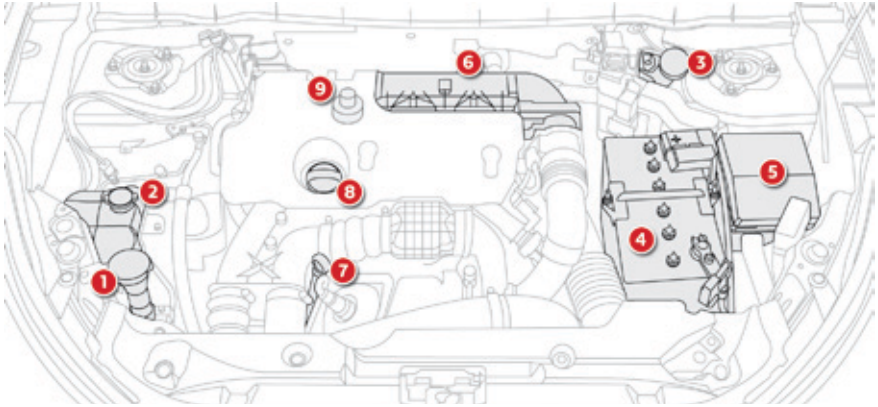


2.0 litre 150

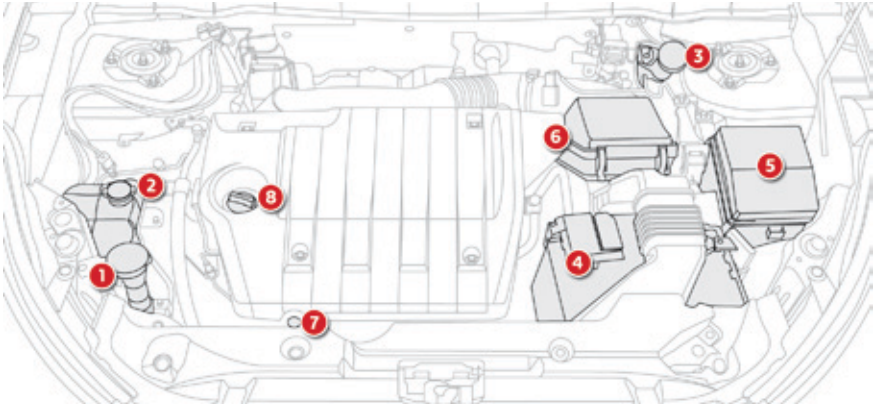
Diesel engines

The various caps and covers allow access for checking the levels of the various fluids, for replacing certain components and for priming the fuel system.

1. Screenwash and headlamp wash fluid reservoir.
2. Coolant reservoir.
3. Brake fluid reservoir.
4. Battery.
5. Fusebox.
6. Air filter.
7. Engine oil dipstick.
8. Engine oil filler cap.
9. Priming pump*.



1.6 HDi 115 S&S



1.8 HDi 140

* According to engine.

Checking levels

Check all of these levels regularly, in line with the manufacturer's service schedule. Top them up if necessary, unless otherwise indicated.
If a level drops significantly, have the corresponding system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

! Take care when working under the bonnet, as certain areas of the engine may be extremely hot (risk of burns) and the cooling fan could start at any time (even with the ignition off).

Oil level

The check of the level is done with the dipstick, located under the bonnet. Refer to the description of your engine compartment for the position of the dipstick.

This check will only be correct if the vehicle is on level ground and the engine has been off for more than 30 minutes.
It is normal to top up the oil level between two services (or oil changes). CITROËN recommends that you check the level, and top up if necessary, every 3 000 miles (5 000 km).
After topping up the oil, the check when switching on the ignition with the oil level indicator in the instrument panel is not valid during the 30 minutes after topping up.

Engine oil change

Refer to the manufacturer's service schedule for details of the interval for this operation.
In order to maintain the reliability of the engine and emission control system, never use additives in the engine oil.

Oil specification

The oil must be the correct grade for your engine and conform to the manufacturer's recommendations.

Dipstick

There are two marks on the dipstick:

A = maximum
If the level is above this mark, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
B = minimum
Top up the level through the oil filler orifice, using the correct grade of oil for your engine. The level must never be below this mark.

Brake fluid level

The brake fluid level should be close to the "MAX" mark. If it is not, check the brake pad wear.

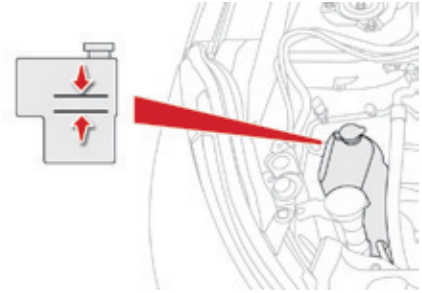
Changing the fluid

Refer to the manufacturer's service schedule for details of the interval for this operation.

Fluid specification

The brake fluid must conform to the manufacturer's recommendations.

Coolant level



The coolant level should be between the two marks.

To ensure that this measurement is reliable, the vehicle must be parked on level ground with the engine cold.

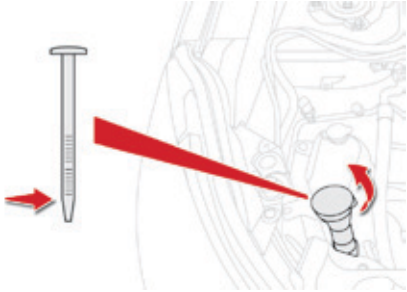
The cooling fan may start after switching off the engine: take care with articles and clothing that might become caught by the fan blades.

When the engine is warm, the temperature of the coolant is regulated by the fan.
As the cooling system is pressurised when the engine is warm, wait at least one hour after switching off the engine before carrying out any work.
To avoid any risk of scalding, unscrew the cap by two turns to allow the pressure to drop.
When the pressure has dropped, remove the cap and top up the level.

Fluid specification

The coolant must conform to the manufacturer's recommendations.

Screenwash and headlamp wash fluid



To check or top up the fluid, stop the vehicle, apply the parking brake and switch off the engine.

- ☞ Open the bonnet and secure it with the stay.
- ☞ Open the filler cap for the screenwash reservoir.
- ☞ Check the level using the gauge, then top up if necessary.
- ☞ Refit the cap on the reservoir and close the bonnet.

Fluid specification

For optimum cleaning, this fluid must not be topped up with or replaced with plain water.

i In wintry conditions, the use of fluid with an ethyl alcohol or methanol base is recommended.

Additive level (1.6 HDi 115 Diesel versions with particle filter)

The additive reservoir low level is indicated by the display of this message.

Topping up

The reservoir must be topped up without delay by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Used products

! Avoid prolonged contact of used oil or fluids with the skin.
Most of these fluids are harmful to health or indeed very corrosive.

Do not discard used oil or fluids into sewers or onto the ground.
Take used oil to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop (France) or to an authorised waste disposal site.

Checking components

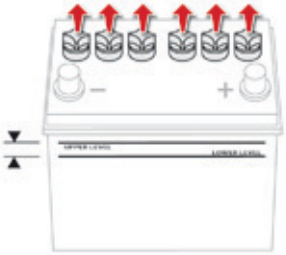
Unless otherwise indicated, check these components in accordance with the manufacturer's service schedule and according to your engine. Otherwise, have them checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

12 V battery

Electrolyte level

For access to the **12 V Battery**, refer to the corresponding section.

The electrolyte level must be between the "LOWER LEVEL" and "UPPER LEVEL" marks.



If necessary, top up using distilled water, removing the battery cap from each cell. Check the electrolyte level at least once a month.
When carrying out work on the **12 V Battery**, refer to the corresponding section for details of the precautions to be taken before disconnecting the battery and following its reconnection.

Air filter and passenger compartment filter

Refer to the manufacturer's service schedule for details of the replacement intervals for these components.
Depending on the environment (e.g. dusty atmosphere) and the use of the vehicle (e.g. city driving), **replace them twice as often if necessary**.
A clogged passenger compartment filter may have an adverse effect on the performance of the air conditioning system and generate undesirable odours.

Oil filter

Replace the oil filter each time the engine oil is changed.
Refer to the manufacturer's service schedule for details of the replacement interval for this component.

Particle filter (Diesel)

The start of saturation of the particle filter is indicated by the temporary illumination of this warning lamp, accompanied by a message in the instrument panel screen.

As soon as the traffic conditions permit, regenerate the filter by driving at a speed of at least 25 mph (40 km/h) for about 20 minutes (with the 1.6 litre HDi engine, the minimum speed is 37 mph (60 km/h)).
If the warning lamp stays on, this indicates a low additive level.
For more information on **Checking levels** and the Diesel additive level in particular, refer to the corresponding section.

On a new vehicle, the first particle filter regeneration operations may be accompanied by a "burning" smell, which is perfectly normal.
Following prolonged operation of the vehicle at very low speed or at idle, you may, in exceptional circumstances, notice the emission of water vapour at the exhaust on acceleration. This does not affect the behaviour of the vehicle or the environment.

Manual gearbox

For servicing of the gearbox, refer to the manufacturer's service schedule for details of the interval for checking this component.

"CVT" gearbox

For servicing of the "CVT" gearbox, refer to the manufacturer's service schedule for details of the interval for checking this component.

Brake pads

Brake wear depends on the style of driving, particularly in the case of vehicles used in town, over short distances. It may be necessary to have the condition of the brakes checked, even between vehicle services.
Unless there is a leak in the circuit, a drop in the brake fluid level indicates that the brake pads are worn.

Brake disc wear

For information on checking brake disc wear, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Parking brake

If excessive travel or a loss of effectiveness of this system is noticed, the parking brake must be checked, even between two services.

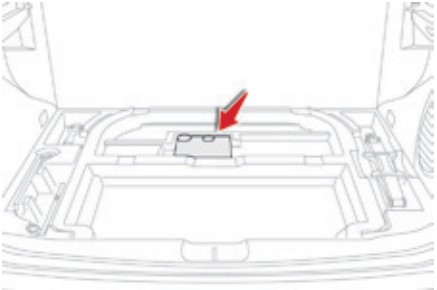
Checking this system must be done by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

! Only use products recommended by CITROËN or products of equivalent quality and specification.
In order to optimise the operation of units as important as those in the braking system, CITROËN selects and offers very specific products.
After washing the vehicle, dampness, or in wintry conditions, ice can form on the brake discs and pads: braking efficiency may be reduced. Make light brake applications to dry and defrost the brakes.

Temporary puncture repair kit

Complete system consisting of a compressor and a sealant cartridge which permits the **temporary repair** of a tyre so that you can drive to the nearest garage.
It is designed to repair most punctures which could affect the tyre, located on the tyre tread or shoulder.

Access to the kit



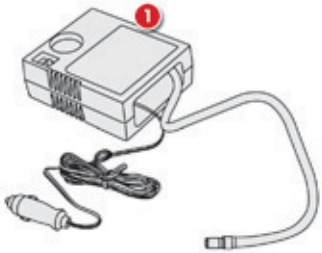
This kit is installed in the boot under the floor.

For access to it:
- ☞ Open the boot.
- ☞ Lift and remove the floor.
- ☞ Take out the kit.

! The puncture repair kit cannot be used in the following circumstances:
- the use-by date for the sealant cartridge has been exceeded (see the label on the cartridge),
- more than one tyre is punctured whereas you have just one sealant cartridge supplied with the kit,
- the hole in the tyre exceeds 4 mm in diameter,
- the puncture is on the sidewall of the tyre,
- you have continued to drive with a flat tyre,
- the bead of the tyre is detached from the wheel rim,
- the wheel rim is damaged.

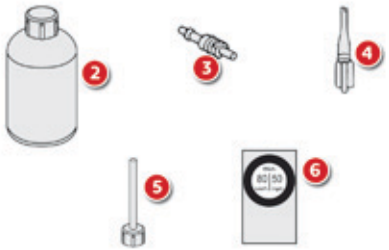
! The vehicle's electric system allows the connection of the compressor for long enough to inflate a tyre after a puncture repair.

Composition of the kit



1. 12 V compressor with integral pressure gauge, to measure and adjust the tyre pressure.

! As the compressor is not sealed, keep it away from sand, dust and water.



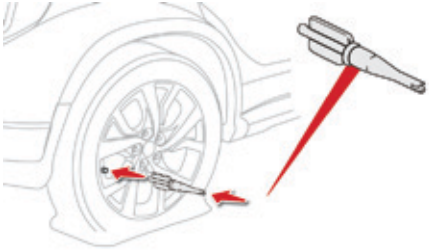
2. Sealant cartridge for the temporary repair of a tyre.
3. Replacement valve core.
4. Valve core removal/fitting tool.
5. Injection end-piece.
6. Speed restriction sticker.

After repairing the tyre, the speed restriction sticker should be affixed to the centre of the vehicle's steering wheel to remind you that this wheel must only be used temporarily.
Do not exceed a speed of 50 mph (80 km/h) when driving with a tyre repaired using this type of kit.

Repair procedure

- Stop the vehicle in as safe a location as possible and on a level and stable surface. Ensure that the tyre valve is not at the bottom of the wheel, in contact with the ground.
- Apply the parking brake.
- Place the gear lever in position **R** for vehicles with a manual gearbox, or in position **P** for vehicles with a CVT gearbox.
- Switch off the ignition.

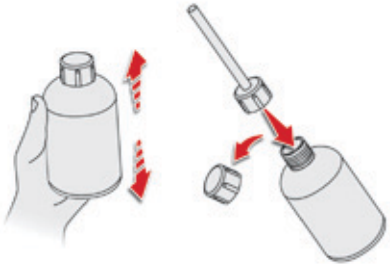
- Remove the valve cap for the tyre to be repaired and keep it in a clean place.



- Insert the tyre valve core removal tool into the valve and press on the tool to exhaust all of the air from the tyre.

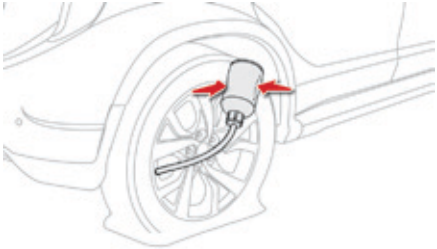
- Turn the valve core tool around, insert it in the valve and unscrew and remove the valve core.
  Keep the valve core in a clean place.

At temperatures below 0°C, the sealant product may thicken. Warm the cartridge inside the vehicle before using it.



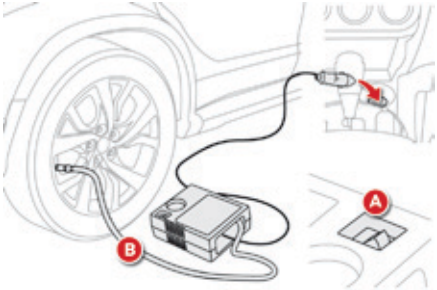
☞ Shake the sealant cartridge, remove the cap and screw on the injection end-piece.

ℹ Avoid removing any foreign bodies which have penetrated into the tyre.



☞ Connect the injection end-piece to the valve of the tyre to be repaired.
☞ Press several times on the sealant cartridge (top down) with your hand, to inject **all of the product** into the tyre.
☞ Remove the injection end-piece.
☞ Refit the valve core and tighten it using the tool provided.

! Take care, this product is harmful if swallowed and causes irritation to the eyes.
Keep it out of reach of children.
The use-by date of the sealant is marked on the cartridge.
After use, do not discard the empty cartridge but take it to a CITROËN dealer or an authorised waste disposal site.
Do not forget to obtain a replacement cartridge; they are available from a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

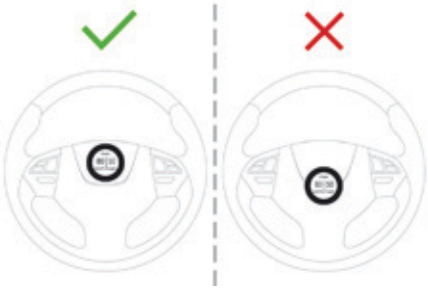


☞ Check that the compressor switch **A** is at the "**OFF**" position.
☞ Uncoil the compressor pipe **B** fully.
☞ Connect this pipe to the valve of the repaired wheel.
☞ Connect the compressor's electric plug to the vehicle's 12 V socket (ignition switch in position "ACC" or ACC mode).
☞ Start the compressor by turning the switch **A** to the "**ON**" position to inflate the tyre to the pressure indicated on the tyre pressure label.
For more information about **Identification markings**, refer to the corresponding section.

- If the specified pressure has not been reached after about 10 minutes, this means that the tyre is not repairable; contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop for roadside assistance.
- Remove the compressor and stow the kit.

! Do not operate the compressor for more than 10 minutes continuously.
If the compressor seems extremely hot, switch it off and disconnect it immediately. Leave it to cool for at least 30 minutes.

i If the vehicle is fitted with under-inflation detection, the under-inflation warning lamp remains on until the system has been reinitialised.
For more information on **Under-inflation detection**, refer to the corresponding section.



- Affix the speed restriction sticker to the centre of the steering wheel.
- Drive off straight away at reduced speed (50 mph (80 km/h) max) to spread the sealant product within the tyre.

i As soon as possible after a repair using the kit, go to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
Make sure that you tell the technician that you have used the kit. After checking, the technician will advise you whether the tyre can be repaired or if it must be replaced.

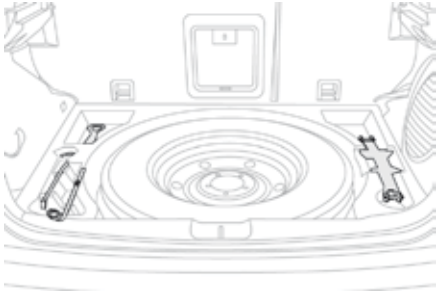
- After about 6 miles (10 km) or 5 minutes, stop and check the repair and the tyre pressure using the compressor. If the pressure has dropped slightly, inflate the tyre again to the specified figure. Carry out the same check after another 6 miles (10 km) or 5 minutes: if the pressure has not held at the specified figure, this indicates that the puncture repair has not sealed; contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop for roadside assistance.

If the pressure is correct, carefully tighten the tyre valve cap. You can drive at reduced speed (50 mph (80 km/h) max) to go to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Changing a wheel

Procedure for replacing a faulty wheel with the spare wheel using the tools supplied with the vehicle.

Access to the vehicle's tools



The tools are stowed in the boot under the floor.

To gain access to them:

☞ Open the boot.

☞ Lift and remove the boot floor.

List of tools

These tools are specific to your vehicle. Do not use them for anything else.

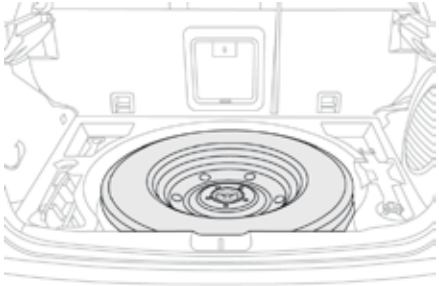
1. Wheelbrace.
   Used to remove the wheel trim and the wheel fixing bolts.
2. Jack.
   Used to raise the vehicle.
3. Handle.
   Used to operate the jack.
4. Removable towing eye.
   For more information on **Towing the vehicle**, refer to the corresponding section.
5. Socket for security wheel bolts (available as an accessory).
   Used to adapt the wheelbrace to the special "security" wheel bolts.

Wheel with trim

When removing the wheel, remove the trim first using the handle **3**, pulling at the cut-out.

When refitting the wheel, refit the trim starting by placing its cut-out opposite the valve and press on its outer edge with the palm of your hand.

Access to the spare wheel



The spare wheel is installed in the boot under the floor.
Depending on version, the spare wheel may be a standard size steel or alloy wheel, or for some countries it is the "space saver" type.
For more information on the vehicle's tools permitting access to the spare wheel, refer to the corresponding section.

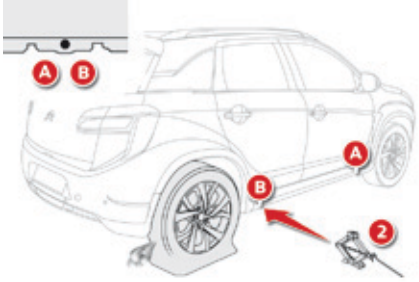
Taking out the standard wheel

- ☞ Unscrew the central bolt **A**.
- ☞ Raise the spare wheel towards you from the rear.
- ☞ Take the wheel out of the boot.

Putting the standard wheel back in place

- ☞ Put the wheel back in its housing.
- ☞ Put the central bolt **A** in place in the centre of the wheel.
- ☞ Tighten fully to retain the wheel correctly.

Removing a wheel



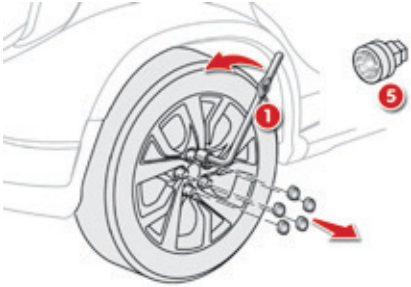
! The jack must only be used to change a wheel with a damaged tyre.
The jack does not require any maintenance.

i The jack meets the European standard as defined in Directive 2006/42/CE on machinery.
The declaration of conformity can be found at the end of this document.
The name and complete address of the manufacturer or, as appropriate, their representative, together with the designation of the jack are given in this certificate of conformity.

Parking the vehicle

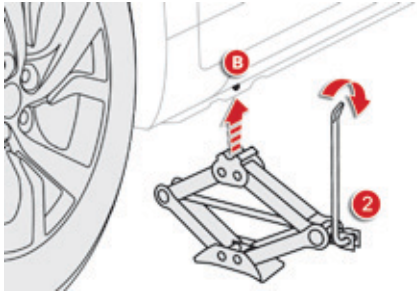
Immobilise the vehicle where it does not block traffic; if possible, the ground must be level, stable and not slippery.
Apply the parking brake, switch off the ignition and engage first gear to block the wheels.
Never go underneath a vehicle raised using a jack; use an axle stand.

! Never use:
- the jack for anything other than lifting the vehicle,
- a jack other than the one provided by the manufacturer.

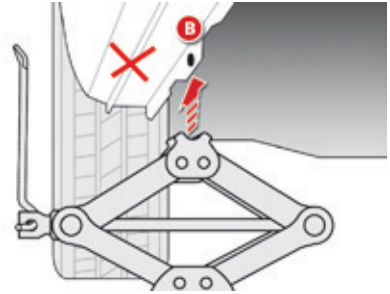


List of operations

☞ If your vehicle has security bolts (available as an accessory), fit the security bolt socket **5** to the wheelbrace **1** to slacken the security bolt.
☞ Slacken the other bolts using the wheelbrace **1** only.



- Place the foot of the jack **2** on the ground and ensue that it is directly below the front **A** or rear **B** jacking point provided on the underbody, whichever is closest to the wheel to be changed.
- Extend the jack **2** until it comes into contact with the jacking point **A** or **B** used; the contact area **A** or **B** on the vehicle must be correctly inserted into the central part of the head of the jack.

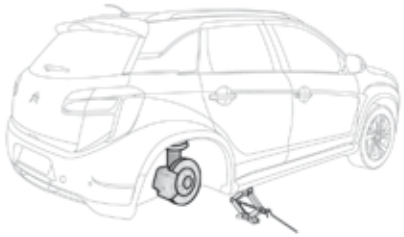


- Raise the vehicle until there is sufficient space between the wheel and the ground to admit the spare (not punctured) wheel easily.

- Remove the bolts and store them in a clean place.
- Remove the wheel.

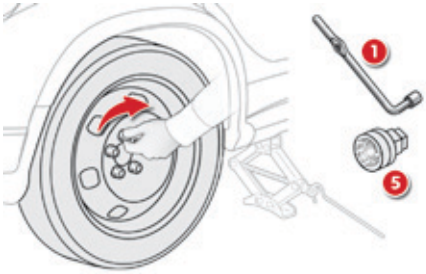
! Ensure that the jack is stable.
If the ground is slippery or loose, the jack may slip or drop - Risk of injury!
Ensure that the jack is positioned only at the jacking point **A** or **B** under the vehicle, ensuring that the contact area on the vehicle is correctly centred on the head of the jack. Otherwise there is a risk of damage to the vehicle and/or of the jack dropping or slipping - Risk of injury!

Fitting the wheel



Fitting snow tyres

If you fit your vehicle with snow tyres fitted on steel rims, it is **essential** to use special bolts available from CITROËN dealers or a qualified workshop.



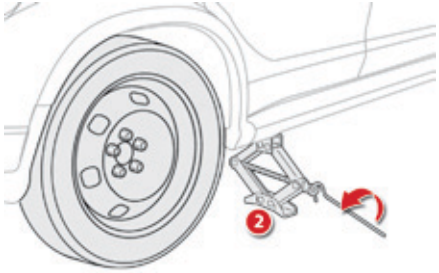
After changing a wheel

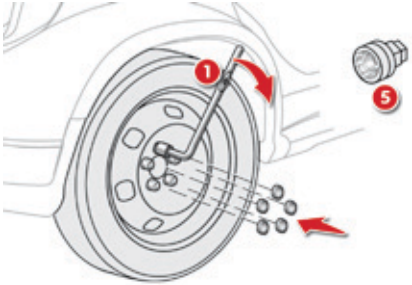
When using the "space-saving" spare wheel, do not exceed 50 mph (80 km/h).
Have the tightening of the bolts and the pressure of the spare wheel checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop without delay.
Have the punctured wheel repaired and refitted on the vehicle as soon as possible.

If the replacement of a tyre is necessary on 4-wheel drive versions, it is recommended that all four tyres be replaced at the same time, ensuring that the same make, model and size is used on all wheels.
This is because using tyres of different sizes, structure or rate of wear could damage transmission components.

List of operations

- Put the wheel in place on the hub.
- Tighten the bolts fully by hand.
- Pre-tighten the anti-theft bolt using the wheelbrace **1** fitted with the anti-theft socket **5** (if your vehicle has one).
- Pre-tighten the other bolts using only the wheelbrace **1**.





- Lower the vehicle fully.
- Fold the jack **2** and remove it.

- Lock the anti-theft bolt using the wheelbrace **1** fitted with the anti-theft socket **5** (if your vehicle has one).
- Lock the other bolts using only the wheelbrace **1**.
- Stow the tools (for more information, refer to the corresponding section).

Changing a bulb

The headlamps have polycarbonate lenses with a protective coating:

- ☞ **do not clean them using a dry or abrasive cloth, nor with a detergent or solvent product,**
- ☞ use a sponge and soapy water,
- ☞ when using a high pressure washer on persistent marks, do not keep the lance directed towards the lamps or their edges for too long, so as not to damage their protective coating and seals.

- ☞ Do not touch the bulb directly with your fingers, use lint-free cloths.

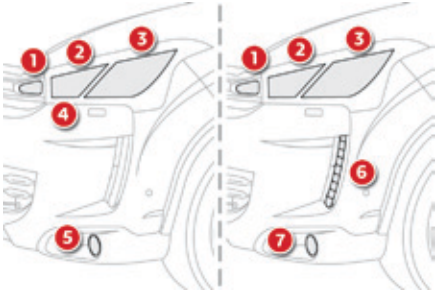
Changing a bulb should only be done after the headlamp has been switched off for several minutes (risk of serious burns).
It is imperative to use only anti-ultraviolet (UV) type bulbs in order not to damage the headlamp.
Always replace a failed bulb with a new bulb with the same type and specification.

Risk of electrocution

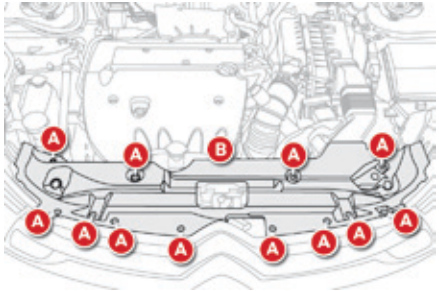
Replacement of the xenon bulbs (D1S-35W) must be carried out by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

For bulbs that have alignment lugs (H1, H7...) ensure that they are fitted correctly for the best lighting performance.

Front lamps



1. **Direction indicators (WY21W-21W).**
2. **Main beam headlamps (H1-55W).**
3. **Dipped beam headlamps (H11-55W)**
   or
   Xenon bulb (D1S-35W).
4. **Sidelamps (W5W-5W).**
5. **Daytime running lamps (P13W-13W).**
6. **Daytime running lamps / sidelamps (light emitting diodes-LEDs).**
7. **Front foglamps (H11-55W).**

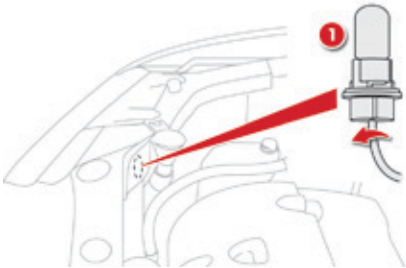


Access to bulbs

Carry out the following operations for access the bulb protective covers:

☞ Remove the retaining pins **A**.

☞ Remove the protective cover **B**.



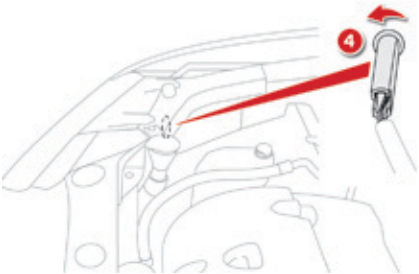
Changing direction indicator bulbs (1)

ℹ Rapid flashing of the direction indicator warning lamp (right or left) indicates the failure of a bulb on that side.

☞ Turn the bulb holder a quarter of a turn to the left and pull it out.

☞ Pull out the bulb and change it.

ℹ To reassemble, carry out these operations in reverse order.
Amber coloured bulbs, such as the direction indicators, must be replaced with bulbs of identical specifications and colour.



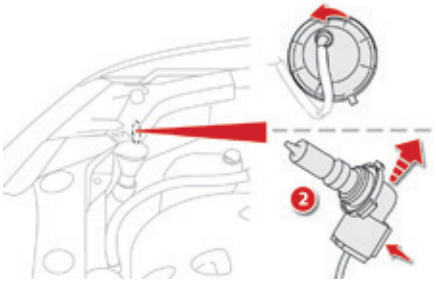
Changing sidelamp bulbs (4)

- ☞ Turn the bulb holder a quarter turn to the left and pull it out.
- ☞ Pull out the bulb and replace it.

To reassemble, carry out these operations in reverse order.

Changing the daytime running lamps / sidelamps (light-emitting diodes - LEDs) (6)

For the replacement of this type of LED lamp, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.



Changing main beam headlamp bulbs (2)

- ☞ Remove the protective plastic cover.
- ☞ Turn the bulb holder to the left and pull it out.
- ☞ Remove the bulb and its base by pressing on the lug at the bottom.
- ☞ Change the bulb.

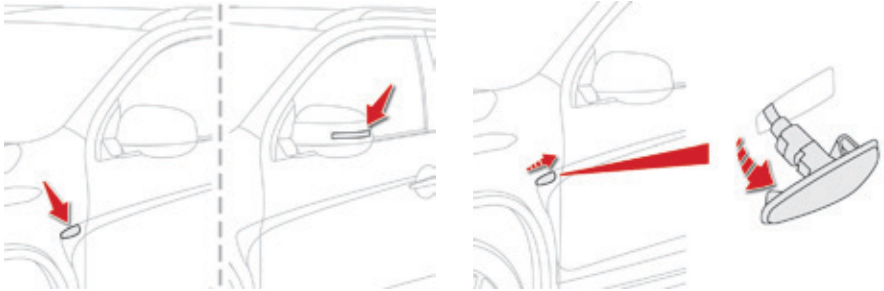
For reassembly, carry out these operations in reverse order.

Changing dipped headlamp bulbs (3)

For the replacement of these bulbs, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Changing front foglamp bulbs (7) / daytime running lamp bulbs (5)

To replace these bulbs contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.



Changing direction indicator side repeaters

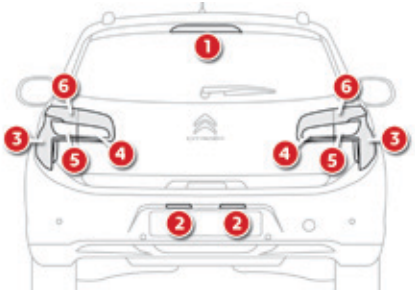
☞ Push the repeater towards the rear to disengage it.
☞ Disconnect the repeater connector.
☞ Change the repeater unit.

To reassemble, carry out these operations in reverse order.
Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to obtain replacement repeaters.

Door mirror spotlamps

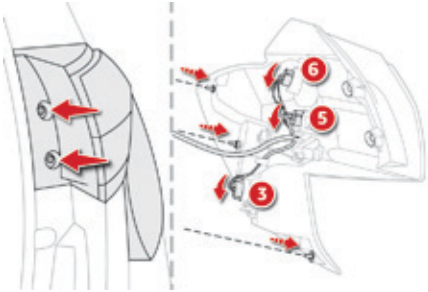
You should contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop for the replacement of the light-emitting diode - LED.

Rear lamps



1. **Third brake lamp (LEDs).**
2. **Number plate lamps (W5W-5W).**
3. **Rear foglamp (W21W-21W).**
4. **Reversing lamp (W16W-16W).**
5. **Direction indicators (WY21W-21W).**
6. **Sidelamps / brake lamps (W21-5W).**

> Amber coloured bulbs, such as the direction indicators, must be replaced with bulbs of identical specification and colour.

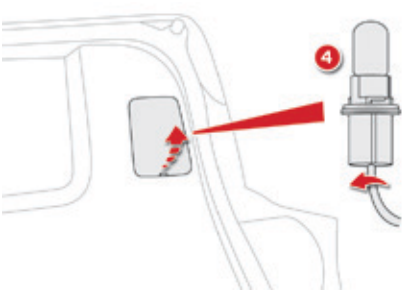


Changing sidelamp / brake lamp (6), direction indicator (5), and foglamp (3) bulbs

These bulbs are changed from outside the boot.

- ☞ Open the boot.
- ☞ Remove the two fixing screws.
- ☞ Unclip the lamp unit carefully extract it pulling it towards the rear.
- ☞ Turn the bulb holder a quarter of a turn to the left and pull it out.
- ☞ Pull the bulb out and change it.

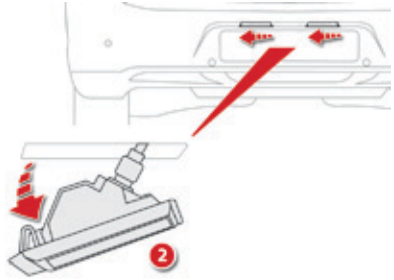
To reassemble, carry out these operations in reverse order.
Take care to align the pins on the lamp unit with the locations on the bodywork.



Changing reversing lamp bulbs (4)

- ☞ Open the boot.
- ☞ Insert a screwdriver into the aperture of the cover and lever it open.
- ☞ Turn the bulb holder a quarter of a turn to the left.
- ☞ Pull the bulb out and change it.

To reassemble, carry out these operations in reverse order.
You can also contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop for the replacement of these bulbs.



Changing number plate lamp bulbs (2)

- Push the lens to the left and then down.
- Turn the bulb holder a quarter turn to the left and pull it out.
- Remove the bulb and change it.

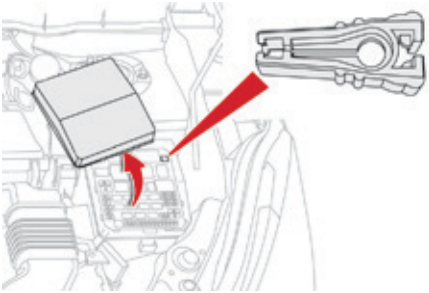
To refit, carry out these operations in reverse order and press on the lens to clip it in place.

Third brake lamp (light emitting diodes - LEDs) (1)

Contact a CITROËN dealer or qualified workshop for the replacement of this type of lamp.

Changing a fuse

Access to the tools



The extraction tweezer and spare fuses are located in the engine compartment fusebox.
To gain access to them:

- ☞ Open the bonnet.
  For more information on the **Bonnet**, refer to the corresponding section.
- ☞ Unclip and remove the cover.
- ☞ Remove the tweezer.
- ☞ Carefully close the cover to ensure correct sealing of the fusebox.

Changing a fuse

Good

Failed

Before changing a fuse, the cause of the failure must be identified and rectified.

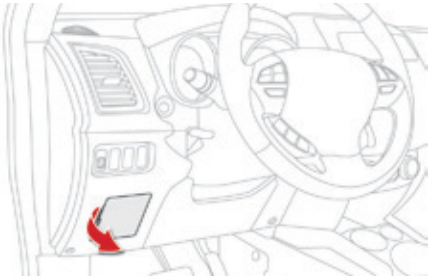
- ☞ Check that the switch is in the "**LOCK**" position or that the vehicle mode is "**OFF**".
- ☞ Identify the faulty fuse by checking the condition of its filament.
- ☞ Use the special tweezer to extract the fuse from its location.
- ☞ Always replace the faulty fuse with a fuse of the same rating.
- ☞ Check that the number etched on the box, the rating etched on the top and the tables below all agree.

! The replacement of a fuse not mentioned in the following tables may cause a serious fault on your vehicle. Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

i Your vehicle's electrical system is designed to operate with standard or optional equipment.
Before installing other electrical equipment or accessories in your vehicle, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

! CITROËN will not accept responsibility for the cost incurred in repairing your vehicle or for rectifying malfunctions resulting from the installation of accessories not supplied and not recommended by CITROËN and not installed in accordance with its instructions, in particular when the consumption of all of the additional equipment connected exceeds 10 milliamperes.

Dashboard fuses



The fusebox is located in the lower dashboard (left-hand side).

Access to the fuses

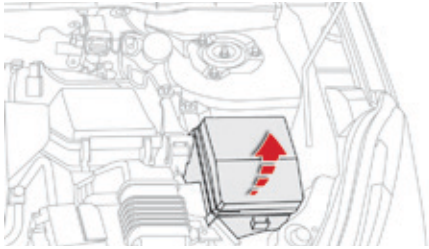
☞ Unclip the cover and remove it completely by pulling it towards you.

Fuse N°	Rating	Functions
1*	30 A	Cabin fan.
2	15 A	Brake lamps, third brake lamp.
3	10 A	Rear foglamps.
4	30 A	Windscreen wiper, screenwash.
6	20 A	Central locking, electric door mirrors.
7	15 A	Audio equipment, telematics, USB unit, hands-free system.
8	7.5 A	Remote control key, air conditioning control unit, instrument panel, electric windows, rain and sunshine sensors, alarm, switch panel, steering mounted controls.
9	15 A	Instrument panel and interior lighting.
10	15 A	Hazard warning lamps.
11	15 A	Rear wiper.
12	7.5 A	Instrument panel, multifunction screen, parking sensors, heated seats, heated rear screen, electric blind, automatic headlamp adjustment.
13	15 A	Cigarette lighter, accessory socket.
15	20 A	Electric blind.
16	10 A	Door mirrors, audio equipment.

Fuse N°	Rating	Functions
18	7.5 A	Reversing lamps.
19	15 A	Accessory socket.
20*	30 A	Electric window controls.
21*	30 A	Heated rear screen.
22	7.5 A	Heated door mirrors.
24	25 A	Driver's and passenger's electric seats.
25	30 A	Heated seats.

! * The maxi-fuses provide additional protection for the electrical systems. All work on the maxi-fuses must be carried out by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

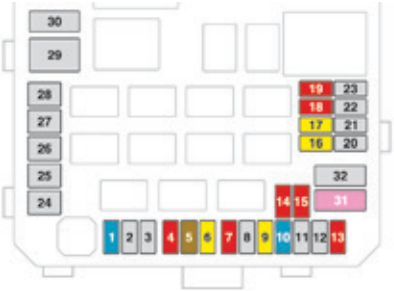
Engine compartment fuses



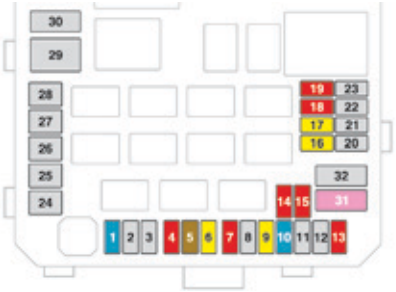
The fusebox is placed in the engine compartment (left-hand side).

Access to the fuses

☞ Unclip the cover and remove it completely.



Fuse N°	Rating	Functions
1	15 A	Front foglamps.
4	10 A	Horn.
5	7.5 A	Alternator.
6	20 A	Headlamp wash.
7	10 A	Air conditioning.
9	20 A	Alarm.
10	15 A	Demisting, wipers.
11	-	Not used.
12	-	Not used.



Fuse N°	Rating	Functions
13	10 A	Daytime running lamps.
14	10 A	Left-hand main beam headlamp.
15	10 A	Right-hand main beam headlamp.
16	20 A	Left-hand dipped beam headlamp (xenon).
17	20 A	Right-hand dipped beam headlamp (xenon).
18	10 A	Left-hand dipped beam headlamp (halogen), manual and automatic headlamp adjustment.
19	10 A	Right-hand dipped beam headlamp (halogen).
31	30 A	Audio amplifier.

! The maxi-fuses provide additional protection for the electrical systems. All work on the maxi-fuses must be carried out by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

i Carefully close the cover after replacing a fuse so as to ensure the correct sealing of the fusebox.

Spare fuses

The spare fuses are located under the engine compartment fusebox cover.

Fuse N°	Rating
33	10 A
34	15 A
35	20 A

The cover does not contain spare fuses with an amperage of 7.5 A, 25 A or 30 A. If one of the fuses with these amperages develops a fault, replace it with the following fuse:
A **7.5 A fuse** must be replaced with the **10 A spare fuse**, a **25 A fuse** with the **20 A spare fuse** and a **30 A fuse** with the **audio system fuse (N° 31)**.

12 V battery

Procedure for charging your battery when it is flat or for starting the engine using another battery and jump leads.

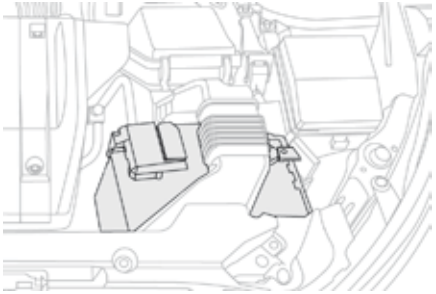
General

The batteries contain harmful substances such as sulphuric acid and lead.
They must be disposed of in accordance with regulations and must not, in any circumstances, be discarded with household waste.
Take used remote control batteries and vehicle batteries to a special collection point.

Before handling the battery, protect your eyes and face.
All work on the battery must be carried out in a ventilated area and away from naked flames or sources of sparks, to avoid any risk of explosion and fire.
Wash your hands when you have finished.

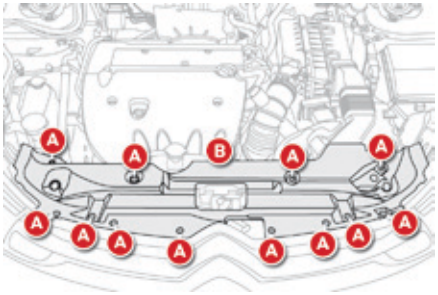
If your vehicle has an automatic gearbox, do not try to start the engine by pushing the vehicle.

Access to the battery

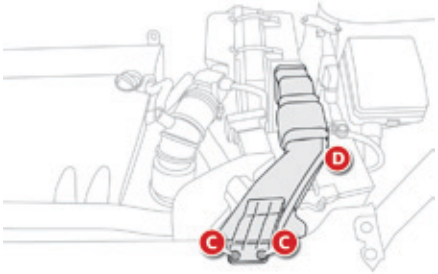


The battery is located under the bonnet.
To gain access to it:

- open the bonnet using the interior release lever, then the exterior catch,
- secure the bonnet stay,



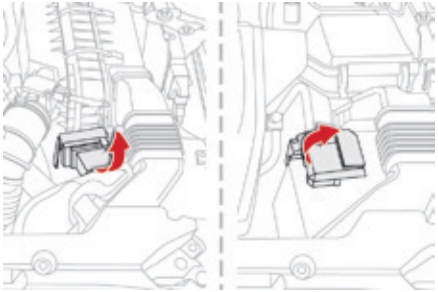
- remove the retaining pins **A**,
- remove the protective cover **B**,



- remove the retaining pins **C**,
- remove the air duct **D**.

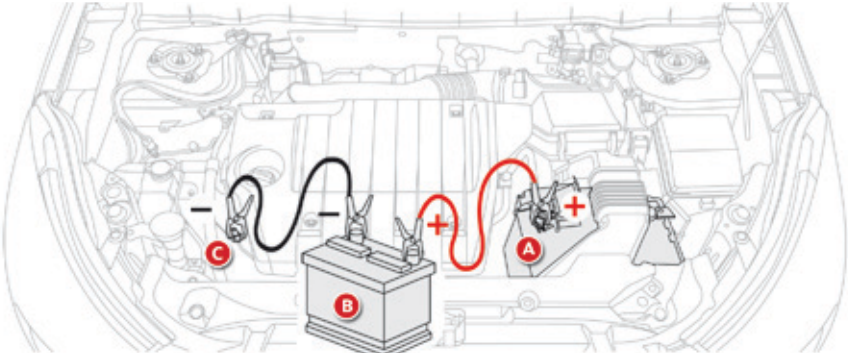
Starting using another battery

Check the electrolyte level and top up if necessary.
For more information on **Checking levels**, refer to the corresponding section.



☞ Raise the protective cover on the (+) terminal.

! Some functions, including Stop & Start, are not available if the battery is not sufficiently charged.



☞ Connect the red cable to the (+) terminal of the flat battery **A**, then to the (+) terminal of the slave battery **B**.

☞ Connect one end of the green or black cable to the (-) terminal of the slave battery **B**.

☞ Connect the other end of the green or black cable to the earth point **C** on your vehicle (engine mounting).

☞ Operate the starter, let the engine run.

☞ Wait until the engine returns to idle and disconnect the cables.

! Never start the engine by connecting a battery charger.
Never use a battery booster of 24 V or higher.
Check first that the slave battery has a nominal voltage of 12 V and a capacity at least equal to that of the discharged battery.
The two vehicles must not touch.
Switch off all power-consuming equipment on the two vehicles (audio system, wipers, lamps, etc.).
Ensure that the slave cables do not pass near the moving parts of the engine (fan, belt, etc.).
Do not disconnect the (+) terminal while the engine is running.

i If you intend to charge your vehicle's battery yourself, use only a charger compatible with lead batteries, with a nominal voltage of 12 V.

! Follow the instructions for use provided by the manufacturer of the charger.
Never invert the polarities.

Charging the battery using a battery charger

- ☞ Disconnect the battery from the vehicle, if necessary.
- ☞ Follow the instructions for use provided by the manufacturer of the charger.
- ☞ Reconnect, starting with the (-) terminal.
- ☞ Check that the terminals and connectors are clean. If they are covered with sulphate (whitish or greenish deposit), remove them and clean them.

Do not invert the polarities and use only a 12 V charger.
Do not disconnect the terminals while the engine is running.
Do not charge the batteries without disconnecting the terminals first.
Do not push the vehicle to start the engine if it is fitted with a CVT gearbox.

Disconnecting the battery

To maintain a sufficient level of charge to start the engine, it is advisable to disconnect the battery if the vehicle is not going to be used for a very long period.
Before disconnecting the battery:

- ☞ Close all the doors and windows, the tailgate and the roof.
- ☞ Switch off all power-consuming equipment (audio system, wipers, lamps, etc.).
- ☞ Switch off the ignition and wait 4 minutes.

Once you have gained access to the battery, start by disconnecting the (-) terminal.

Following reconnection of the battery

Following reconnection of the battery, switch on the ignition and wait 1 minute before starting to permit initialisation of the electronic systems.
However, if problems remain following this operation, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
Referring to the corresponding section, you must reinitialise certain equipment yourself, such as:

- The remote control key or the electronic key (depending on version).
- The electric blind(s).
- The electric windows.
- The date and time.
- The stored radio stations.

Some functions, including Stop & Start, are not available if the battery is not sufficiently charged.

Never try to charge a frozen battery.
If the battery has been frozen, have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop, who will check that the internal components have not been damaged and the casing is not cracked, which could cause a leak of toxic and corrosive acid.

The Stop & Start system may not be operational during the trip following the first engine start.
In this case, the system will only be available again after a continuous period of immobilisation of the vehicle, a period which depends on the exterior temperature and the state of charge of the battery (up to about 8 hours).

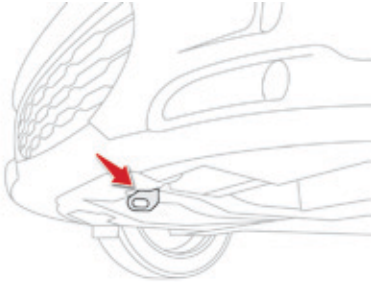
Towing the vehicle

! General recommendations

Observe the legislation in force in your country.
Ensure that the weight of the towing vehicle is higher than that of the towed vehicle.
The driver must remain at the wheel of the towed vehicle and must have a valid driving licence.
When towing a vehicle with all four wheels on the ground, always use an approved towing arm; rope and straps are prohibited.
The towing vehicle must move off gently.
When towing a vehicle with the engine off, there is no longer any power assistance for braking or steering.
In the following cases, you must always call on a professional recovery service:

- vehicle broken down on a motorway or fast road,
- four-wheel drive vehicle,
- when it is not possible to put the gearbox into neutral, unlock the steering, or release the parking brake,
- towing with only two wheels on the ground,
- where there is no approved towing arm available...

Towing your vehicle



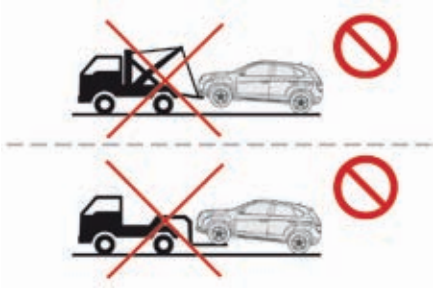
2 wheel drive (2WD) versions: towing with the wheels on the ground

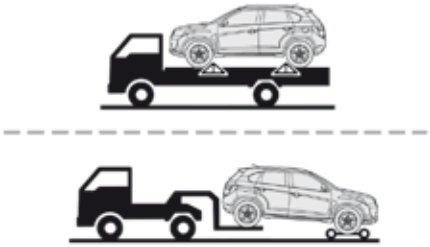
☞ Fit the towing bar to the towing eye on the chassis, located under the front bumper.

! Towing with the wheels on the ground is only possible on 2 wheel drive (2WD) versions.

☞ Put the gear lever into neutral (position **N** for the CVT gearbox).
☞ Unlock the steering by turning the ignition switch to the "**ON**" position (or to "**ON**" mode for vehicles fitted with the "Keyless Entry and Starting" system).
☞ Release the parking brake.
☞ Switch on the hazard warning lamps on both vehicles.
☞ Move off gently and travel slowly for a short distance only.

4 wheel drive (4WD) versions: towing on a flatbed

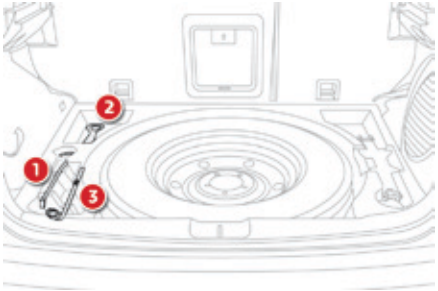




Vehicles fitted with the 4 wheel drive system must always be towed on a flatbed.

! Never have the vehicle towed with the four wheels on the ground, this could damage the transmission.
The vehicle must not be towed with the front or rear wheels on the ground even if it is in front "2WD" (2 wheel drive) mode.

Towing another vehicle



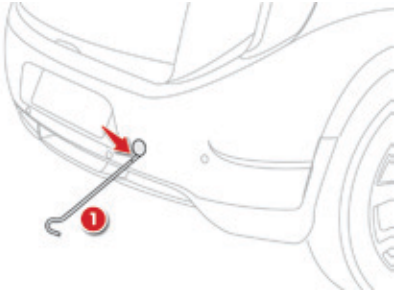
Access to the tools

The towing eye and the tools are stored under the boot floor.
To gain access to them:

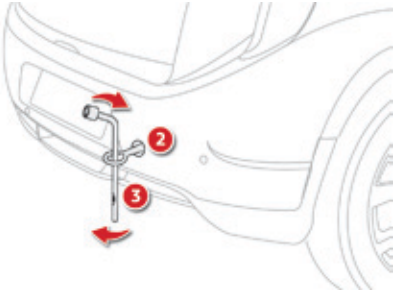
- ☞ open the boot,
- ☞ lift and remove the boot floor,
- ☞ take out the towing eye and the tools required.

List of tools

1. Jack handle.
2. Towing eye.
3. Wheelbrace.



- ☞ On the rear bumper, remove the cover by pulling at the bottom using the jack handle **1**.



- ☞ Screw in the towing eye **2** fully using the wheelbrace **3**.
- ☞ Install the towing bar.
- ☞ Switch on the hazard warning lamps on both vehicles.
- ☞ Move off gently and travel slowly for a short distance only.

Running out of fuel (Diesel)

On vehicles fitted with the 1.6 litre HDi 115 engine, the fuel system must be manually primed if you run out of fuel; refer to the corresponding Diesel engine compartment view.

1.6 litre HDi engine

- ☞ Fill the fuel tank with at least five litres of Diesel.
- ☞ Open the bonnet.
- ☞ If necessary, unclip the cover for access to the priming pump.
- ☞ Squeeze and release the priming pump repeatedly until resistance is felt (there may be resistance at the first press).
- ☞ Operate the starter until the engine starts (if the engine does not start at the first attempt, wait around 15 seconds before trying again).
- ☞ If the engine does not start after a few attempts, operate the priming pump again then start the engine.
- ☞ Clip the cover back in place.
- ☞ Close the bonnet.

Engines and gearboxes

PETROL ENGINES	1.6 litre 115		2.0 litre 150			
GEARBOXES	Manual (5-speed)	CVT (6-speed)	Manual (5-speed)		CVT (6-speed)	
Model codes: BU...	NKZ0 NKZ0/S	NKZ9 NKZ9/S	AFYR AFZ7	AFYV AFZM	AFYT AFZH AFZ9	AFYW AFZP AFZC
Transmission mode	2WD	2WD	2WD	4WD	2WD	4WD
Cubic capacity (cc)	1 590		1 998			
Bore x stroke (mm)	75 x 90		86 x 86			
Max power*: EU standard (kW)	86		113			
Max power engine speed (rpm)	6 000		6 000			
Max torque: EU standard (Nm)	154		199			
Max torque engine speed (rpm)	4 000		4 200			
Fuel	Unleaded		Unleaded			
Catalytic converter	Yes		Yes			
OIL CAPACITY (in litres)						
Engine (with filter replacement)	4.2		4.3			

.../S: model fitted with the Stop & Start (AS&G) function.

* The maximum power corresponds to the value type-approved on a test bed, under conditions defined in European legislation (Directive 1999/99/EC).

Petrol weights and towed loads (kg)

The values for approved towed weights vary according to the sales zone (see the tables on the following pages).
The exact values are given in your vehicle's registration document as well as on the manufacturer's plate.
They are also mentioned in sales brochures.
For more details, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

The kerb weight is equal to the unladen weight + driver (75 kg).

The weight of the braked trailer can be increased, within the GTW limit, if the GVW of the towing vehicle is reduced by an equal amount. **Please note that towing using a lightly loaded towing vehicle may have an adverse effect on its road holding**.

The GTW and towed load values indicated are valid up to a maximum altitude of 1 000 metres; the towed load mentioned must be reduced by 10 % for each additional 1 000 metres of altitude.
The speed of a towing vehicle must not exceed 62 mph (100 km/h) (comply with the legislation in force in your country).
High exterior temperatures may result in a reduction in the performance of the vehicle to protect the engine; if the exterior temperature is above 37 °C, limit the towed load.

For: Russia, Ukraine, Morocco, Argentina, Chile, French overseas territories.

PETROL ENGINES	1.6 litre 115	2.0 litre 150			
Gearboxes	Manual (5-speed)	Manual (5-speed)		CVT (6-speed)	
Model codes: BU...	NKZ7 NKZ0	AFZ7	AFZM	AFZH AFZ9	AFZP AFZC
Transmission mode	2WD	2WD	4WD	2WD	4WD
- Unladen weight	1 310	1 355	1 420	1 385	1 450
- Kerb weight	1 385	1 430	1 495	1 460	1 525
- Gross vehicle weight (GVW)	1 870	1 970	1 970	1 970	1 970
- Gross vehicle weight (GVW) when towing	1 925	2 035	2 035	2 035	2 035
- Gross train weight (GTW) on a 12% gradient	3 025	3 335	3 335	3 335	3 335
- Braked trailer (within GTW limit) on a 10% or 12% gradient	1 100	1 300	1 300	1 300	1 300
- Unbraked trailer	685	715	745	725	750
- Recommended nose weight	55	65	65	65	65

For: Australia, New Zealand.

PETROL ENGINES	2.0 litre 150	
Gearboxes	CVT (6-speed)	
Model codes: BU...	AFZH AFZ9	AFZP AFZC
Transmission mode	2WD	4WD
- Unladen weight	1 380	1 445
- Kerb weight	1 455	1 520
- Gross vehicle weight (GVW)	1 970	1 970
- Gross vehicle weight (GVW) when towing	2 035	2 035
- Gross train weight (GTW) on a 12% gradient	3 020	3 020
- Braked trailer (within GTW limit) on a 10% or 12% gradient	1 050	1 050
- Unbraked trailer	750	750
- Recommended nose weight	65	65

For: South Africa.

PETROL ENGINES	2.0 litre 150			
Gearboxes	Manual (5-speed)		CVT (6-speed)	
Model codes: BU...	AFYR	AFYV	AFYT	AFYW
Transmission mode	2WD	4WD	2WD	4WD
- Unladen weight	1 350	1 415	1 390	1 455
- Kerb weight	1 425	1 490	1 465	1 530
- Gross vehicle weight (GVW)	1 970	1 970	1 970	1 970
- Gross vehicle weight (GVW) when towing	2 035	2 035	2 035	2 035
- Gross train weight (GTW) on a 12% gradient	3 075	3 075	2 760	2 760
- Braked trailer (within GTW limit) on a 10% or 12% gradient	1 050	1 050	750	750
- Unbraked trailer	1 050	1 050	750	750
- Recommended nose weight	65	65	65	65

For other countries of sale.

PETROL ENGINES	2.0 litre 150			
Gearboxes	**Manual (5-speed)**		**CVT (6-speed)**	
Model codes: BU...	**AFYR AFZ7**	**AFYV AFZM**	**AFYT AFZH AFZ9**	**AFYW AFZP AFZC**
Transmission mode	**2WD**	**4WD**	**2WD**	**4WD**
- Unladen weight	1 340	1 405	1 370	1 435
- Kerb weight	1 415	1 480	1 445	1 510
- Gross vehicle weight (GVW)	1 970	1 970	1 970	1 970
- Gross vehicle weight (GVW) when towing	2 035	2 035	2 035	2 035
- Gross train weight (GTW) on a 12% gradient	2 655	2 655	-*	-*
- Braked trailer (within GTW limit) on a 10% or 12% gradient	650	650	-*	-*
- Unbraked trailer	650	650	-*	-*
- Recommended nose weight	65	65	-*	-*

* Vehicle not for towing.

Engines and gearboxes

DIESEL ENGINES	1.6 HDi 115 S&S		1.8 HDi 140
GEARBOXES	Manual (6-speed)		Manual (6-speed)
Model codes: BU...	**9HD5/S 9HD5/1S**	**9HDK/S 9HDK/1S**	**6HYG**
Transmission mode	**2WD**	**4WD**	**4WD**
Cubic capacity (cc)	1 560		1 798
Bore x stroke (mm)	77 x 88.3		83 x 83.1
Max power*: EU standard (kW)	84		103
Max power engine speed (rpm)	3 600		4 000
Max torque: EU standard (Nm)	270		290
Max torque engine speed (rpm)	1 750		2 000 to 3 000
Fuel	Diesel		Diesel
Catalytic converter	Yes		Yes
Particle filter (FAP)	Yes		Yes
OIL CAPACITY (in litres)			
Engine (with filter replacement)	3.75		5.3

.../S and **.../1S**: model fitted with the Stop & Start (AS&G) function.

* The maximum power corresponds to the value type-approved on a test bed, under conditions defined in European legislation (Directive 1999/99/EC).

Diesel weights and towed loads (kg)

The values for approved towed weights vary according to the sales zone (see the tables on the following pages).
The exact values are given in your vehicle's registration document as well as on the manufacturer's plate.
They are also mentioned in sales brochures.
For more details, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

The kerb weight is equal to the unladen weight + driver (75 kg).

The weight of the braked trailer can be increased, within the GTW limit, if the GVW of the towing vehicle is reduced by an equal amount. **Please note that towing using a lightly loaded towing vehicle may have an adverse effect on its road holding.**

The GTW and towed load values indicated are valid up to a maximum altitude of 1 000 metres; the towed load mentioned must be reduced by 10 % for each additional 1 000 metres of altitude.
The speed of a towing vehicle must not exceed 62 mph (100 km/h) (comply with the legislation in force in your country).
High exterior temperatures may result in a reduction in the performance of the vehicle to protect the engine; if the exterior temperature is above 37 °C, limit the towed load.

For zones: Europe, French overseas departments and territories.

DIESEL ENGINES	1.6 HDi 115 S&S	
Gearboxes	Manual (6-speed)	
Model codes: BU...	9HD5/S 9HD5/1S	9HDK/S 9HDK/1S
Transmission mode	2WD	4WD
- Unladen weight	1 315	1 425
- Kerb weight	1 390	1 500
- Gross vehicle weight (GVW)	2 060	2 060
- Gross vehicle weight (GVW) when towing	2 130	2 130
- Gross train weight (GTW) on a 12% gradient	3 260	3 260
- Braked trailer (within GTW limit) on a 10% or 12% gradient	1 130	1 130
- Braked trailer (with transfer of load within GTW limit)	1 300	1 300
- Unbraked trailer	695	750
- Recommended nose weight	70	70

For: Russia, Ukraine, Morocco, Argentina, Chile.

DIESEL ENGINES	1.6 HDi 115 S&S	
Gearboxes	Manual (6-speed)	
Model codes: BU...	9HD5/S 9HD5/1S	9HDK/S 9HDK/1S
Transmission mode	2WD	4WD
- Unladen weight	1 410	1 475
- Kerb weight	1 485	1 550
- Gross vehicle weight (GVW)	2 060	2 060
- Gross vehicle weight (GVW) when towing	2 130	2 130
- Gross train weight (GTW) on a 12% gradient	3 260	3 260
- Braked trailer (within GTW limit) on a 10% or 12% gradient	1 130	1 130
- Braked trailer (with transfer of load within GTW limit)	1 300	1 300
- Unbraked trailer	695	750
- Recommended nose weight	70	70

For: South Africa.

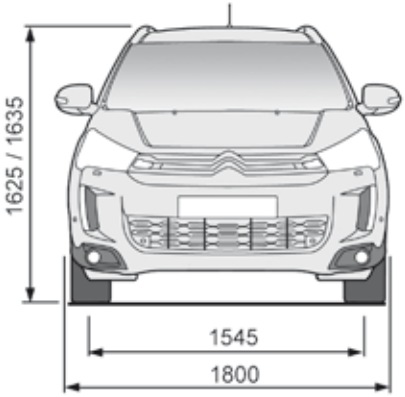
DIESEL ENGINES	1.6 HDi 115 S&S	
Gearboxes	**Manual (6-speed)**	
Model codes: BU...	**9HD5/S 9HD5/1S**	**9HDK/S 9HDK/1S**
Transmission mode	**2WD**	**4WD**
- Unladen weight	1 420	1 485
- Kerb weight	1 495	1 560
- Gross vehicle weight (GVW)	2 060	2 060
- Gross vehicle weight (GVW) when towing	2 130	2 130
- Gross train weight (GTW) on a 12% gradient	3 321	3 321
- Braked trailer (within GTW limit) on a 10% or 12% gradient	1 200	1 200
- Unbraked trailer	750	750
- Recommended nose weight	70	70

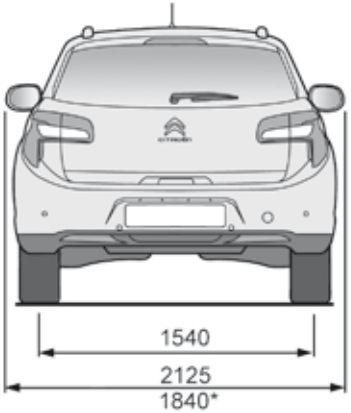
For other countries of sale.

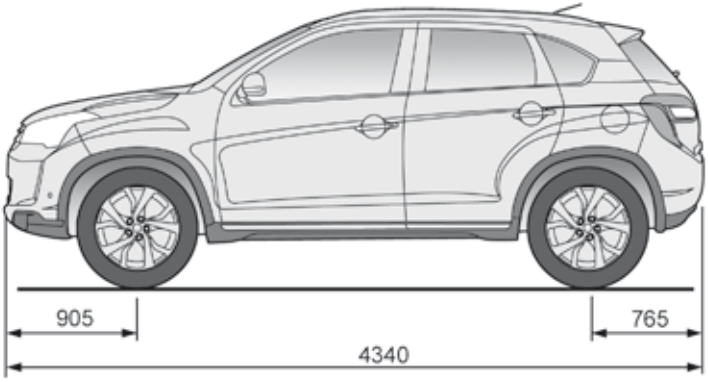
DIESEL ENGINES	1.6 HDi 115 S&S		1.8 HDi 140
Gearboxes	Manual (6-speed)		Manual (6-speed)
Model codes: BU...	9HD5/S 9HD5/1S	9HDK/S 9HDK/1S	6HYG
Transmission mode	2WD	4WD	4WD
- Unladen weight	1 420	1 485	1 520
- Kerb weight	1 495	1 560	1 595
- Gross vehicle weight (GVW)	2 060	2 060	2 060
- Gross vehicle weight (GVW) when towing	2 130	2 130	2 130
- Gross train weight (GTW) on a 12% gradient	2 745	2 745	2 745
- Braked trailer (within GTW limit) on a 10% or 12% gradient	650	650	650
- Unbraked trailer	650	650	650
- Recommended nose weight	70	70	70

Dimensions (in mm)

These dimensions have been measured on an unladen vehicle.

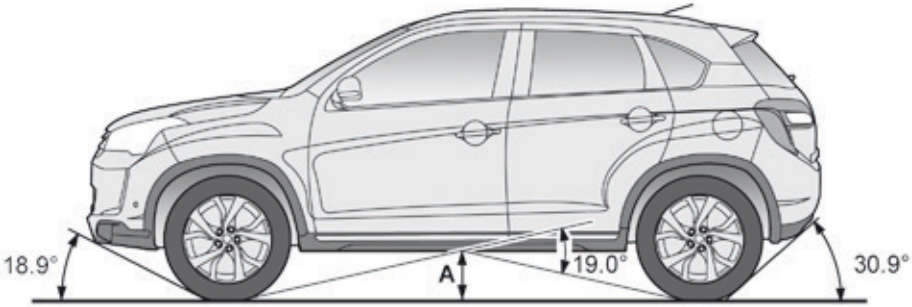






* Mirrors folded.

Off-road performance

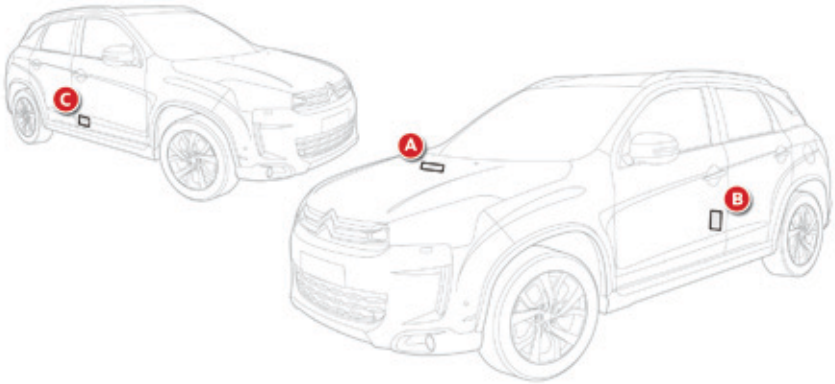


Engine	Ground clearance* A	Approach angle	Departure angle	Break-over angle
1.6 litre 115	190 mm	18.9 °	30.9 °	19.0 °
2.0 litre 150	201 mm			
1.6 litre HDi 115 S&S	178 mm			
1.8 litre HDi 140	182 mm			

* Vehicle unladen.

Identification markings

Various visible markings for the identification and tracing of your vehicle.



A. Manufacturer's plate.
It is riveted to the right-hand centre pillar and carries the following information:
- manufacturer,
- EU type approval number,
- vehicle identification number (VIN),
- gross vehicle weight,
- gross train weight,
- maximum front axle weight,
- maximum rear axle weight.

B. Tyre label.
This label is affixed to the driver's side centre pillar and carries the following information:
- tyre sizes,
- tyre pressures.

C. Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) under the bonnet.
This number is engraved on the bodywork near the damper support.

The tyre pressures must be checked when the tyres are "cold", at least once a month (vehicle having been stationary for 1 hour or after a journey of less than 6 miles (10 km) at moderate speed).

If the tyre pressures are too low, this increases fuel consumption.

The original tyres fitted to the vehicle may have a load index or speed rating higher than those given on the label; this has no effect on the inflation pressures.

BLUETOOTH® TELEPHONE WITH VOICE RECOGNITION

ANSWER A CALL

Press this button to accept an incoming call.

In the event of a 2nd incoming call, press to put the 1st call on hold and speak to the second caller.

In this case, press briefly to switch from one call to the other.

To establish a three-way conversation, press on SPEAK to change from voice recognition and say "**Incorporate the call**".

END CALL

Press this button to reject an incoming call.

During a conversation, press this button to end the call.

SPEAK

Press this button to activate voice recognition ("**Listening**" is displayed).

During a voice recognition, press this button briefly to put this voice recognition on hold.

Make a long press on this button to deactivate voice recognition.

Press this button briefly to activate voice recognition, even during a call.

Change the voice command language

What is the Bluetooth® hands-free telephone with voice recognition?

The system uses wireless communication technology known as Bluetooth® which allows you to make hands-free telephone calls in your vehicle via your Bluetooth® compatible mobile telephone.

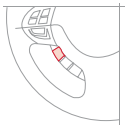
You can make telephone calls using a microphone located in the courtesy lamp, making use of the simple steering mounted controls or by the voice recognition function with voice commands. Five languages are available: English (the default), Spanish, French, German and Italian.

By default, the voice recognition system is in English.

If you do not start the training procedure within around 3 minutes of pressing SPEAK, the process is cancelled.

If you press SPEAK within 5 seconds following the play of a voice command, this command is saved again.

1 Press this button.



2 Say "**Setup**".

3 Say "**Language**".

4 The system says "**Select a language: English, Spanish, French, German or Italian**".

5 Say the language of your choice in English, example: say "**French**" for French.

6 The system then says "**French selected. Is this correct?**"

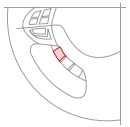
7 Say "**Yes**" to start the change of language process
Say "**No**" to return to steps 4 to 7.

8 The system repeats the language chosen and completes the change of language process.

Training the user's voice

You can use the user voice training function to create a voice model for one person per language.
The characteristics of your voice and your pronunciation are saved in this model to provide the best voice recognition.
The vehicle must be stationary with the parking brake applied.
Switch off your telephone during the operation to avoid any interruption.

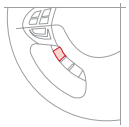
1 Press this button.



2 Say "**Word training**".

3 An explanation message is given.

4 When you are ready to start, press and hold this button.



5 The system says the first of 45 standard phrases.

6 Repeat each of the phrases in the table on the following page.
The system saves your voice and moves on to the next command.
Continue the process until all of the phrases have been saved.

7 After playing all the voice commands, the system says "**The word training is complete**" and ends the process.

! If you do not start the programming process within approximately 3 minutes after pressing the SPEAK button, the process is cancelled.
If you press the SPEAK button within 5 seconds of the play of a voice command, this command is saved again.

Voice training commands

1	# 790 (for # = "Hash")	16	55 66 77 88 99	31	Home, Work, Mobile, Pager
2	* 671 (for * = "Star")	17	44 33 22 11 00	32	List of names
3	212 - 4 903	18	Call 293 - 5804	33	No
4	235 - 3 494	19	Call * 350	34	Phone book: Delete
5	315- 5 657	20	Call 1 (234) 567 - 8 901	35	Phone book: New entry
6	456 - 7 930	21	Dial 639 - 1542	36	Previous
7	793 - 5 462	22	Dial # 780	37	Phone book: Clear all
8	794 - 1 826	23	Dial (987) 654 - 3210	38	Redial
9	826 - 3 145	24	1058# 3794# Send	39	Repeat the training
10	962 - 7 305	25	27643# 4321# Send	40	Configure the confirmation requests
11	(531) 742 - 9 860	26	Cancel	41	Configure the language
12	(632) 807 - 4 591	27	Continue	42	Configure the matching options
13	(800) 222 - 5 015	28	Emergency number	43	Match a telephone
14	(888) 555 - 1 212	29	Clear all	44	Transfer the call
15	0 123 456 789	30	Help	45	Yes

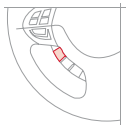
BLUETOOTH® TELEPHONE WITH VOICE RECOGNITION

Pairing a Bluetooth®telephone
First connection

For reasons of safety and because the sustained attention of the driver is needed, operations of matching a Bluetooth® mobile phone with the audio system's hands-free function must be done with the **vehicle stationary**.

The system can register up to 7 Bluetooth® compatible mobile telephones.
The telephone which has the highest level of priority is connected automatically.

1 Press this button.



2 Say "**Configure**".

3 Say "**Pairing options**".

4 The system says "**Do you wish to pair a telephone, delete a telephone or obtain the list of paired telephones?**".

5 Say "**Pair a telephone**".

6 The systems says "**Please say the 4 digits of a pairing code**".

7 Say a 4-digit number which will be recorded as the pairing code.

8 The system confirms the validity of the number spoken, answer "**Yes**".
Say "**No**" to return to step 7.

! Remember this pairing code as you must enter it in the telephone in one of the following steps of the matching procedure.

BLUETOOTH® TELEPHONE WITH VOICE RECOGNITION

The services available depend on the network, the SIM card and the compatibility of the Bluetooth® telephone used. Check in your telephone user manual and with your service provider for the services you have access to.

9 The system says "**Start the pairing procedure on the telephone. Consult the instructions in the telephone manual**".

10

Consult your mobile telephone's user manual and enter the pairing code recorded in step 7 in the telephone.

If the code is incorrect, the system locks. To clear the code:

- check that the telephone's voice recognition is not activated,
- with the ignition on and the audio system active, press the END CALL button for 2 seconds, 3 times in succession.

11 When it detects a Bluetooth® compatible mobile telephone, the system says "**Please say the name of the telephone after the beep**".

12 After the audible signal, allocate a name to the telephone by saying the name of your choice.

13 The system says "**Allocate an order of priority between 1 and 7. One is the highest level of priority**".

14 Give a number between 1 and 7 to establish the level of priority of the mobile telephone.

15 The system says and confirms the "**name of the telephone**" and the "**number**" of its priority.

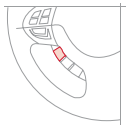
16 Answer "**Yes**".
Say "**No**" to return to step 13.

17 The systems says "**Pairing complete**" then emits an audible signal and deactivates the voice recognition.

If the system does not detect the Bluetooth® compatible mobile telephone, the matching process stops ands is accompanied by an audible signal.

If you select a level of priority which has already been allocated to another telephone, the system asks you if you wish to replace this level of priority.

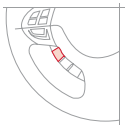
Using a telephone number

!	You must have first paired a Bluetooth® compatible mobile telephone with the system.	
1	Press this button.	
2	Say "**Dial**".	
3	The system says "**Number please**".	
4	Call out the telephone number.	
5	The system asks you to confirm this number, answer "**Yes**". Say "**No**" to return to the previous step.	

Saving a name in the system phone book

The system has its own phone book, independent of that of the mobile telephone.
It can contain up to 32 names for each language.
Each name in the phone book is associated with 4 locations: HOME, WORK, MOBILE and PAGER.

1. Press this button.

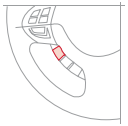


2. Say "**Phone book**".
3. The system says "**Select one of the following items: New Entry, Change, List of names, Delete or Clear all, or say Cancel to return to the main menu**".
4. Say "**New entry**".
5. The system says "**Name please**".
6. Give the name of your choice.
7. The system says "**HOME, WORK, MOBILE OR PAGER**".
8. Give the location which corresponds to the number that you wish to record.
9. The system asks you to confirm the location.
10. Answer "**Yes**".
    Say "**No**" to return to step 7.
11. If a telephone number has already been recorded for this location, the system says "**The current number is -number-, number please**".
12. If you do not wish to change the telephone number, repeat the original number to retain it, otherwise say the new number.
13. The system asks you to confirm the number.
14. Answer "**Yes**".
    Say "**No**" to return to step 11.

Using a name in the system phone book

! You must have first paired a compatible Bluetooth® mobile telephone with the system.

1 Press this button.



2 Say "**Call**".

3 The system says "**Name please**".

4 Give the name of the person that you wish to call.

5 If several telephone numbers have been recorded for this person, the system says "**Do you wish to call -name- {home}, {work}, {mobile} or {pager}?**"

6 Give the location corresponding to the number that you wish to call.

7 The system request confirmation of the name.

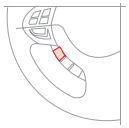
8 Answer "**Yes**".
Say "**No**" to return to step 4.

9 The system says "**Call to -name- at -location-**" and makes the call.

BLUETOOTH® TELEPHONE WITH VOICE RECOGNITION

Redial the last number called

1 Press this button.



2 Say "**Redial**".

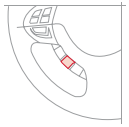
Receiving a call

The telephone ring is sent to the speaker by the front passenger's seat.

If an audio source (CD, radio, ...) is in operation when the call is received, it is placed on MUTE and only the incoming call is heard.

When the ignition switch is in the ACC or ON position, the audio system is activated automatically if an incoming call is received, even if it was originally off.

1 Press this button.



At the end of the call, the audio system returns to its previous state.

BLUETOOTH® TELEPHONE WITH VOICE RECOGNITION

Voice commands (1/2)

Press this button to start the voice recognition.

Configure	Divert the call	Home, at home
Phone book	Add a location	Work, at work
Dial	Configure the confirmation requests	Mobile, on mobile
Call	Language	Pager, on pager
Redial	New entry	Help
Emergency number	Delete	Continue
Pairing options	Change	All
Pair a telephone	Call this number	Cancel
Delete a telephone	Change another entry	Mute
List of paired telephones	Try again	Deactivate mute
Select a telephone	Clear all	Yes
Previous	List of names	No

When the system is waiting for a voice command, say "**Help**" to obtain a list of commands which can be used in the current situation.

Voice commands (2/2)

Press this button to start the voice recognition.

Zero	English	Word training
One	Phone book New entry	PIN
Two	Phone book Change	Repeat training
Three	Phone book Delete	Activate
Four	Phone book Clear All	Deactivate
Five	Phone book List of names	Incorporate the call
Six	Configure the confirmation requests	<digits> Send
Seven	Configure Select a telephone	
Eight	Configure the pairing options	
Nine	Delete a name	
Star (*)	Configure the language	
Hash (#)	Configure the PIN	

When the system is waiting for a voice command, say "**Help**" to obtain a list of commands which can be used in the current situation.

AUDIO-TELEMATIC TOUCH SCREEN SYSTEM

The system is protected in such a way that it will only operate in your vehicle.

For safety reasons, the driver must carry out operations which require prolonged attention while the vehicle is stationary.

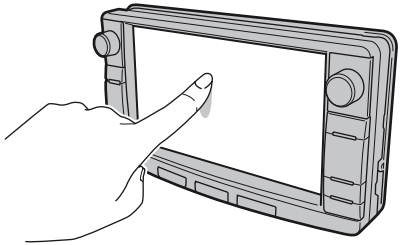
When the engine is switched off and to prevent discharging of the battery, the system switches off following the activation of the energy economy mode.

CONTENTS

01 First steps - Control panel p. 248
02 Steering mounted controls p. 249
03 General operation p. 251
04 Navigation p. 252
05 Media p. 268
06 Settings p. 282
07 Information p. 284
08 BLUETOOTH® streaming - telephone p. 288

PWR/VOL:
- audio system on/off.
- volume adjustment for the audio and telephone functions.

Short press: change the audio source.
Long press: CD / MP3 / USB, SD, for fast forward or rewind.
Long press: RADIO, automatic frequency search down/up.



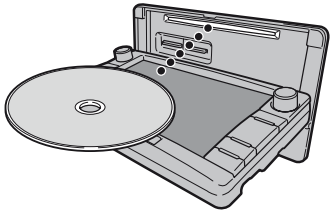
Move a finger over the screen to operate the system.
Use the buttons offered on the screen.

! For safety reasons, the driver must only carry out operations which require prolonged attention with the vehicle stationary.

FOLDER: allows selection of a folder or a manual search for a radio station.

ZOOM: zoom the map in or out.

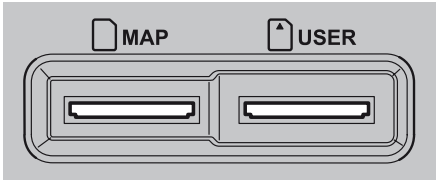
Allows the colour map screen the be switched between day and night mode according to the state of the vehicle's lighting.



OPEN: Allows the screen panel to be opened or closed to insert or remove a CD or SD cards.

Insert the SD card containing the navigation mapping data into the left-hand slot.

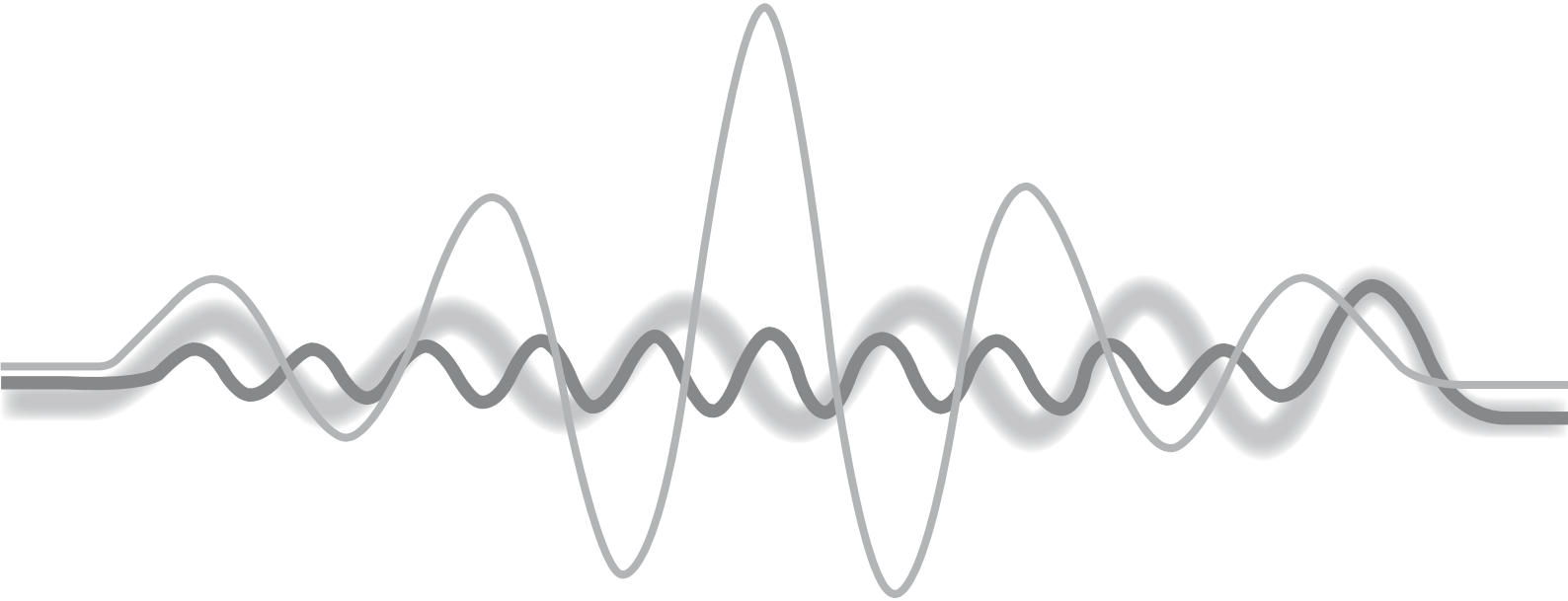
Insert the SD card containing the audio data into the right-hand slot.



Increase / reduce audio volume.

Search for a higher / lower radio frequency.
Previous/next CD track.
CD fast forward/back.

Long press: audio system on / off.
Short press: selection of the source in the following order (in a loop):
CD, SD, USB/iPod, Bluetooth, AUX, FM, MW, LW.



Description of the controls - Menus

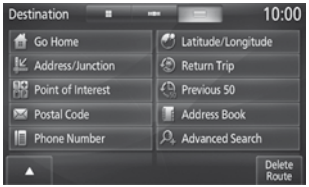
AUDIO: display the screen for the last audio source used.

MODE: used to select the audio source.

SETTINGS: used to manage the different adjustments.

INFO: used to check information.

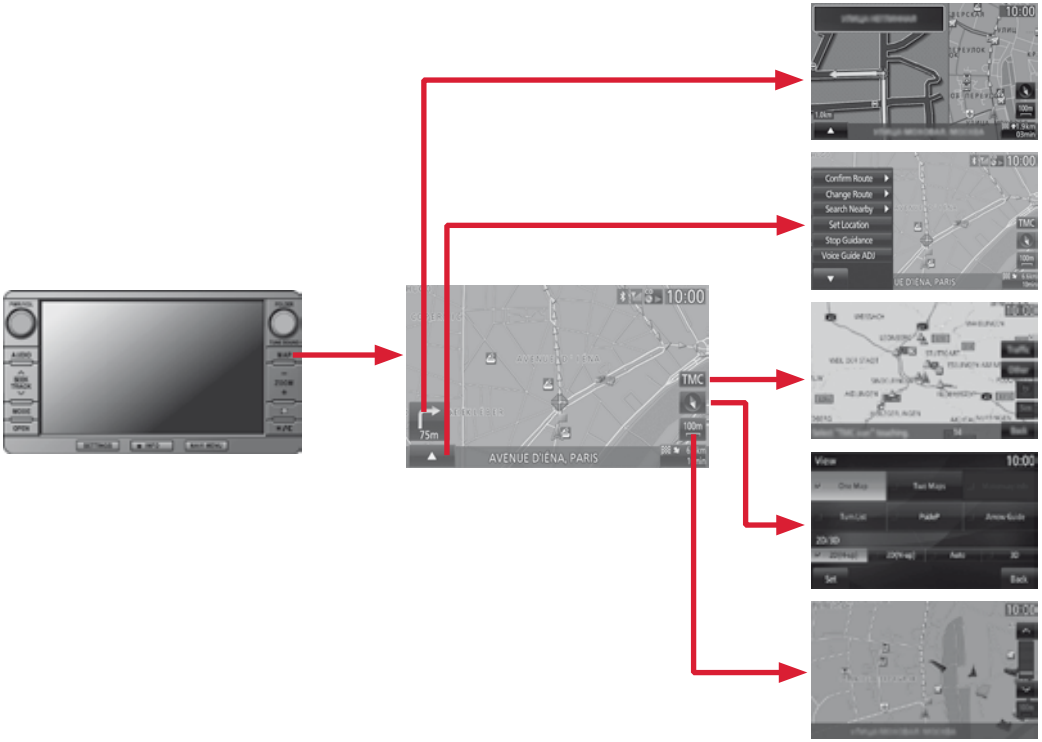
MAP: used to display the current position of your vehicle on the map.



DESTINATION: used to set navigation options and select the destination.

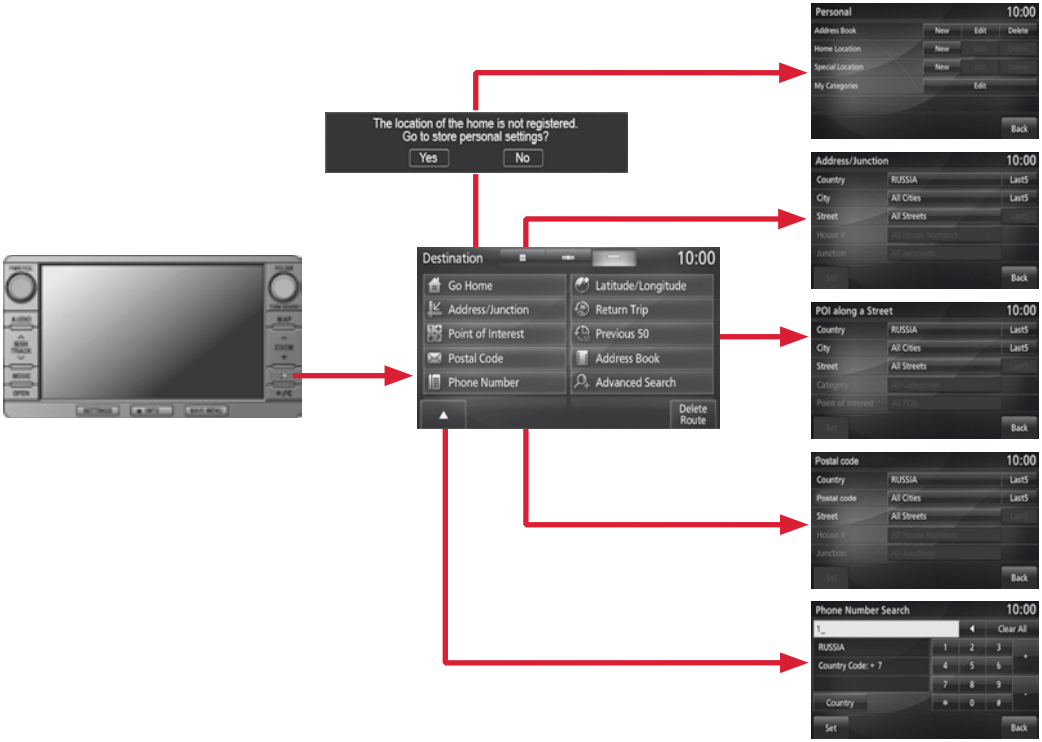
NAVI MENU: used for adjustments to the navigation system.

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3



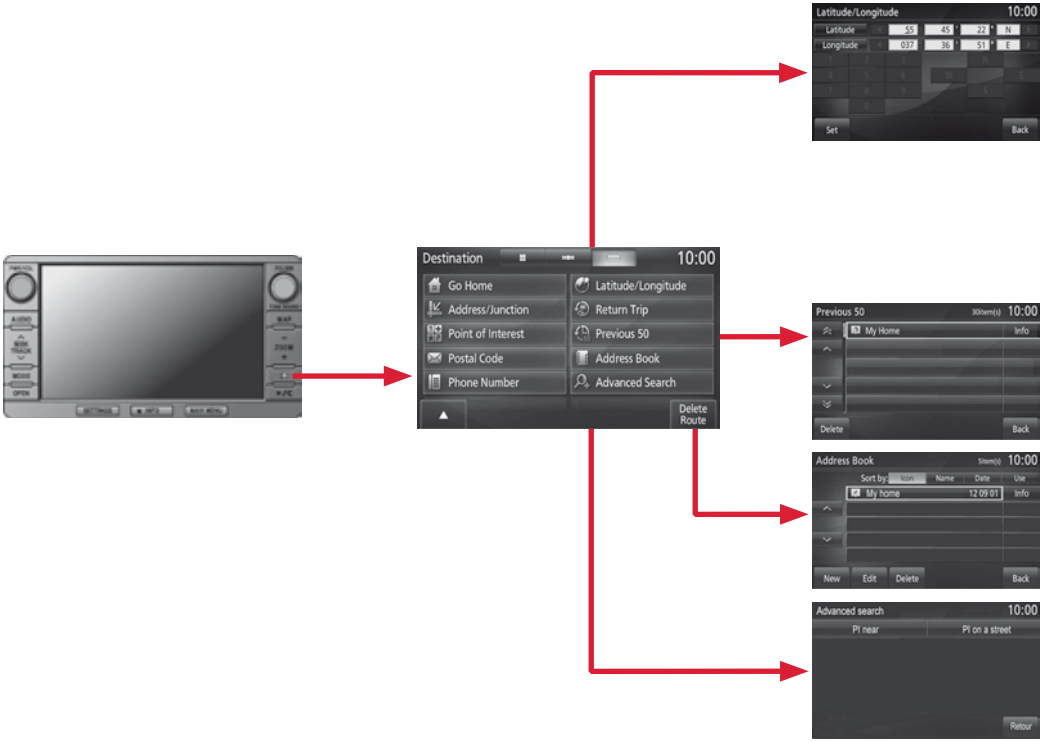
Level 1	Level 2		Level 3	Comments
MAP	75m	Guidance		Indicates that a turn should be made to the left or right at the next junction and the distance to this junction. Press on it to to display a navigation zoom to the left of the map.
		Navigation sub-menu	Confirm Route	Press on it to modify the current navigation criteria.
			Change Route	
			Search Nearby	
			Set Location	
			Stop Guidance	
			Voice Guide ADJ	
	TMC	TMC (Traffic Message Channel)		Press on it to display traffic information transmitted in real time.
		Type of display and map orientation	"View" "2D/3D"	Indicates North. Press on it to select the type of screen display and the map orientation (2D with vehicle direction, 2D with North at the top, auto 2D according to scale or 3D perspective).
	100m	Map scale		Indicates the scale of the map displayed. Press on it to zoom in or out
	6.6km 10min	Information on the destination / intermediate destination		Indicates the distance and time to the destination or the intermediate destination.

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3



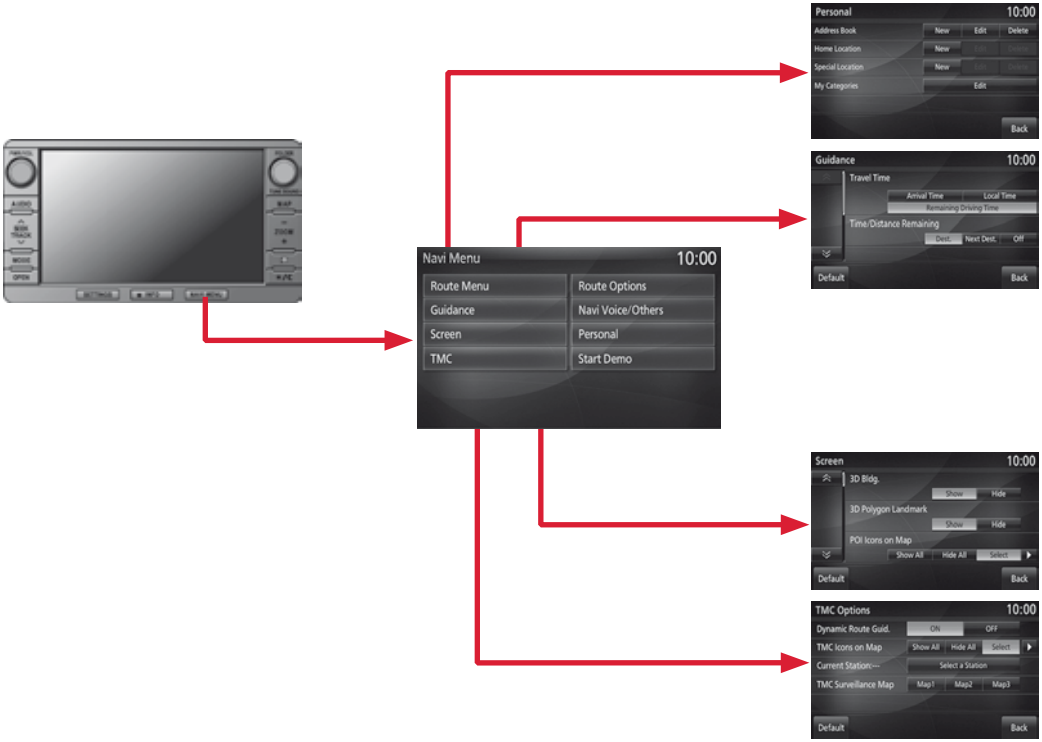
Level 1	Level 2		Level 3	Comments
		Go Home	Address Book	Select a direct return home. Press Yes to save your home location (the first time).
			Go Home	
			Special Location	
			My Categories	
		Address/Junction	Country	Select a location using the address or name of the street of the destination.
			City	
			Street	
			House #	
			Junction	
			Set	Save the settings.
		Point of Interest	Country	Select a location using the name of a point of interest (POI).
			City	
			Point of Interest	
			Category	
			Set	Save the settings.
		Postal Code	Country	Select a location using the post code, address or name of the street of the destination.
			Postal Code	
			Street	
			House #	
			Junction	
			Set	Save the settings.
		Phone Number	Country Code:	Enter the information, the telephone number and confirm.
			Country	
			Set	Save the settings.

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3



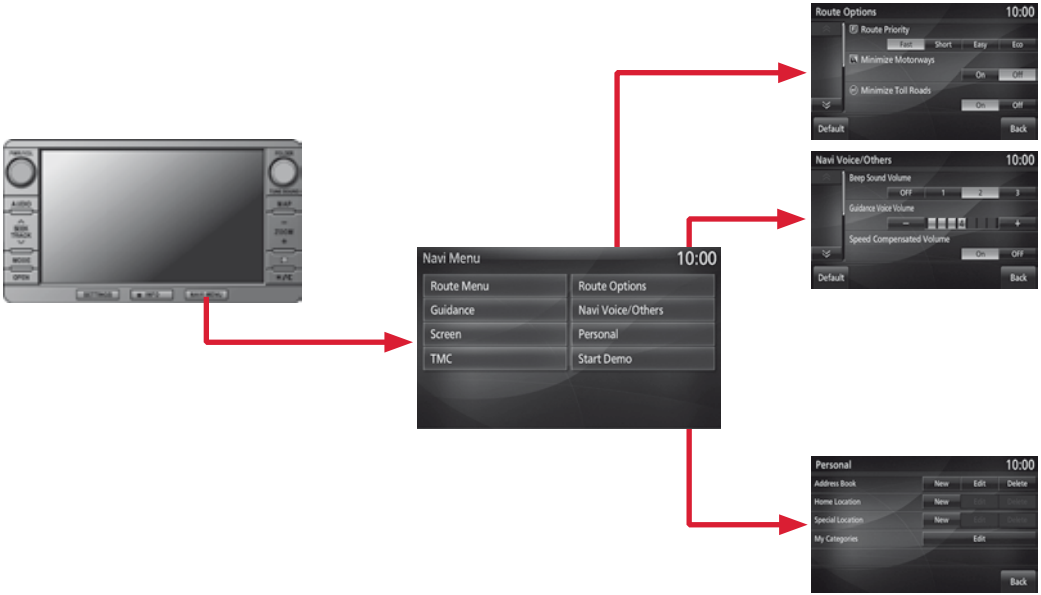
Level 1	Level 2		Level 3	Comments
		Latitude/Longitude	Latitude	Select a location using the latitude and longitude.
			Longitude	
			Set	Save the settings.
		Return Trip		Select the point of departure as a new destination.
		Previous 50	Country	Select a location using one of the 50 recent destinations.
			City	
			Point of Interest	
			Category	
			Delete	Delete a destination from the list.
		Address Book	Icon	Select a location using an address saved in the address book.
			Name	
			Date	
			Use	
			New	Create an address.
			Edit	Display an address from the list.
			Delete	Delete an address from list.
		Advanced Search	POI nearby	Select a location using an advanced search based on a POI.
			POI along a Street	

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3



Level 1	Level 2		Level 3	Comments
NAVI MENU		Route Menu		Check and view the maps of the surroundings on a journey.
		Guidance	Travel Time	Adjust the route guidance mode and display the results of the route search.
			Time/Distance Remaining	
		Screen	3D Bldg.	Adjust the screen display settings.
			3D Polygon Landmark	
			POI Icons on Map	
		TMC	Dynamic Route Guidance	Display and select traffic information transmitted in real time, such as traffic jams and roadworks by selecting dynamic route guidance.
			TMC Icons on Map	
			Current Station	
			TMC Surveillance Map	

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3



Level 1	Level 2		Level 3	Comments
NAVI MENU		Route Options	Route Priority	Adjust the roads used conditions.
			Minimize Motorways	
			Minimize Toll Roads	
		Navi Voice/Others	Beep Sound Volume	Set the voice used for navigation instructions and adjust the volume.
			Guidance Voice Volume	
			Speed Compensated Volume	
		Personal	Address Book	Save, modify or delete an entry in the address book.
			Go Home	
			Special Location	
			My Categories	
		Start Demo		Play the video to check the prepared route.

GPS system

What is the navigation system and GPS?

The satellite navigation system guides the driver to the destination set in accordance with a chosen route.

Initially, it searches for the destination required by the user, then it calculates the route and finally it provides the visual and vocal guidance instructions.

GPS (Global Positioning System) consists of several satellites arranged around the earth. They continuously transmit digital signals which travel at the speed of light, on 2 different frequencies.

At any given time, the system receives its position in relation to the satellites detected and the time of transmission of the signal.

This enables the telematic unit to calculate its position and therefore that of the vehicle.

A repositioning process using the map database stored on the hard disk allows the vehicle to be positioned on the road network, so improving the accuracy of the vehicle location function.

What precautions should be observed in order to make best use of the system?

Do not place anything on or near the GPS aerial.

Do not use any digital communication equipment (personal computers, etc.) near the GPS aerial.

Do not affix any reflective films or films containing carbon to the windows.

The system's measurements may be inaccurate if the vehicle is:

- in a tunnel or underground car park,
- underneath a two-level motorway,
- in an area with several very high buildings,
- surrounded by closely planted trees.

Depending on the vehicle's situation and the reception of the GPS information, the displayed information may disappear from the screen temporarily.

What is a point of interest (POI)?

A point of interest (POI) is represented by an icon on the map, it represents an airport, a station, a town hall, ...

Up to 40 different icons may be displayed (refer to the section "Points of interest icon").

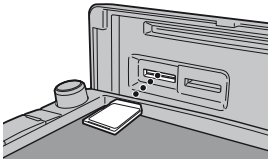
They are classified in 5 groups and identified by one colour for each group:

- Shops, finance and businesses (Green),
- Vehicles and travel (Dark blue),
- Restaurants (Orange),
- Public places and emergency services (Brown),
- Entertainment and attractions (Blue).

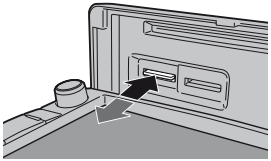
Navigation SD card

Installing the navigation SD card

1 Press the **OPEN** button to open the screen panel.
Insert the SD card containing the navigation mapping data in the left-hand SD card reader.



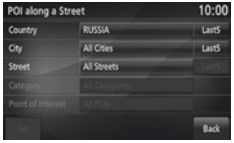
2 Push the SD card until it clicks into place.
Press the **OPEN** button to close the screen panel.



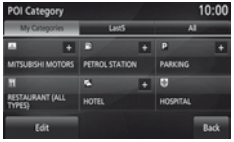
! To restore the navigation data and/or if the power from the battery is cut, contact a CITROËN dealer.

Selecting points of interest (POI) icons displayed on the map

You can select point of interest icons which are displayed on your map screen.
Press **DESTINATION** then "**Point of Interest**".



Press "**All Categories**" then choose between "**My Categories**", "**Last 5**" and "**Show All**".



Press each POI required.

General

- Town centre
- Locality

Shops, finance and businesses (Green)

- Major companies
- Shopping centre

Vehicles and travel (Dark blue)

- CITROËN
- Airport
- Bus stop
- Vehicle hire
- Suburban / main line station
- Ferry terminal
- Hotel
- Park and ride
- Car park (press +)
- Service station
- Rest area
- Toll booth
- Tourist information
- Railway station

Restaurant (Orange)

- Night life / night club
- Restaurant

Public places and emergency services (Brown)

- Town Hall
- Community centre
- Convention / exhibition centre
- Hospital
- University / college

Entertainment and attractions (Blue)

- Theme park
- Bowling alley
- Casino
- Cinema
- Golf course
- Historical monument
- Skating rink
- Marina
- Museum
- Flying club
- Leisure area
- Ski station
- Sports centre
- Theatre / opera
- Tourist attraction
- Vineyard / wine and spirit store

Selecting a destination

Towards a new destination

1 Press the **DESTINATION** button.

2 Press "**Address/Junction**".

3 Press "**Country**" and enter the name of the country using the touch keypad.

4 Press "**All Cities**" and enter the name of the city using the touch keypad.

Postal code

You can select a city using the post code.
Press "**Postal Code**" and enter the number.

5 Press "**All Streets**" and enter the name of the street using the touch keypad.

Last5

You can select one of the 5 most recently selected countries, cities or streets cities by pressing **Last 5** in the line.

i When a character of the name of the country, city and road is entered, and if 5 cities or streets or fewer are recognised, you can select a country, city or street from a list which is displayed or press "**List**".

6 Press "**All House Numbers**" and enter the street number using the touch keypad.

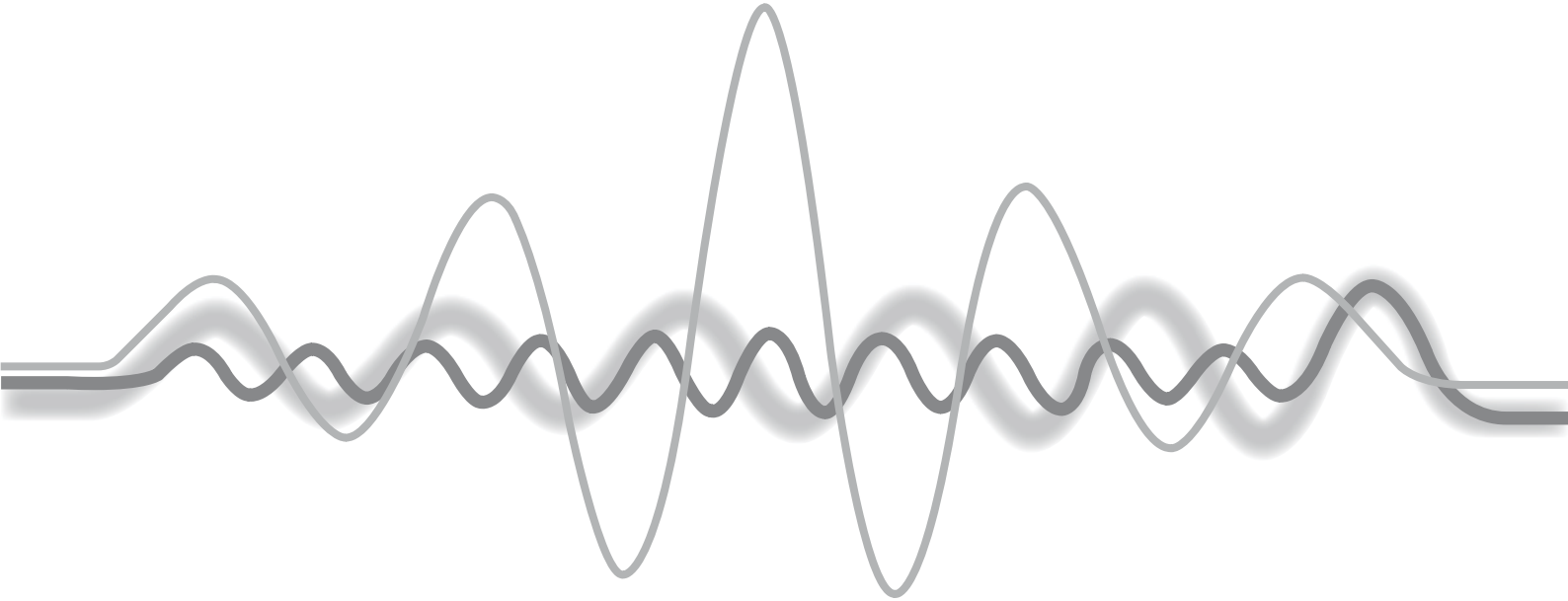
7 You can enter the name of a junction instead of the street number. Press "**All Junctions**" and select the name from the list displayed.

8 Set

If you agree with the information, press "**Set**", otherwise press one of the buttons to correct.

9 Start

Press "**Start**" to start the navigation.



Set the filtering and display of TMC messages

TMC messages (Traffic Message Channel) on the Navigation-GPS system give traffic information transmitted in real time.

The navigation system suggests a detour route, if dynamic guidance has been activated by pressing the **NAVI MENU** button, then "**TMC**".

1 Press on the pull-down secondary menu.

2 Confirm Route — Select "**Confirm Route**" then "**Entire Route**" or "**Remaining Route**" to validate or add to the route.

3 Change Route — Select "**Change Route**", then "**Alternative Route**" or "**Delete Route**" to modify or delete the route.

4 Search Nearby — Select "**Search Nearby**", then "**POI nearby**" to add a point of interest to the route.

5 Stop Guidance — Select "**Stop Guidance**" to suspend navigation guidance.

6 Voice Guide ADJ — Select "**Voice Guide ADJ**" to modify the volume for the voice or adapt the volume to the speed of the vehicle.

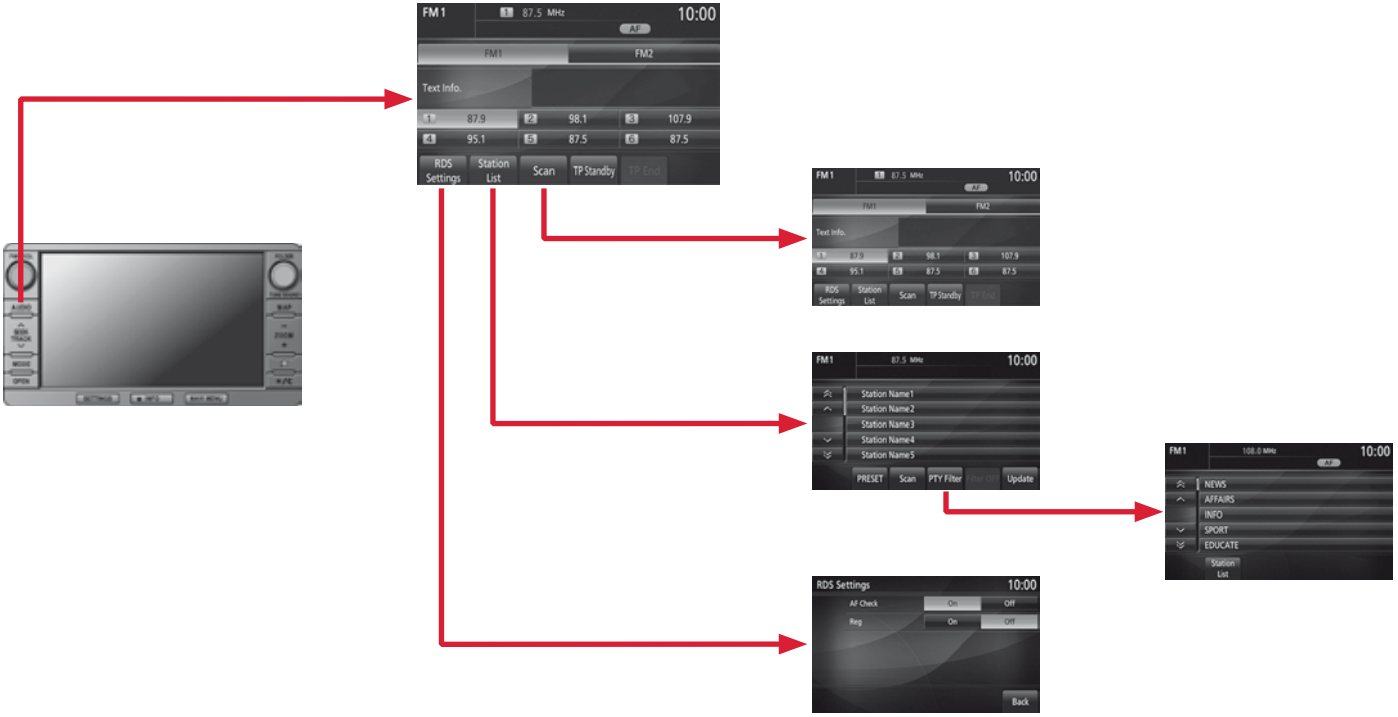
1 Black and blue triangle: general information, for example:

- Weather reports
- Traffic reports
- Wind
- Fog
- Parking
- Snow / ice

2 Red and yellow triangle: traffic information, for example:

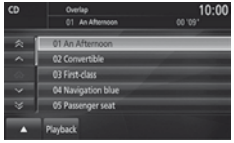
- Modified signage
- Narrow carriageway
- Slippery surface
- Accident
- Delay
- Roadworks
- Risk of explosion
- Road closed
- Demonstration
- Danger
- No entry
- Traffic jam

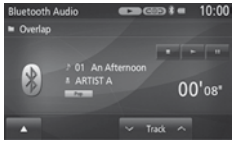
Level 1	Level 2	Level 3

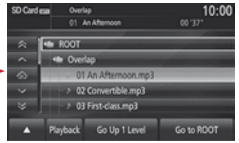


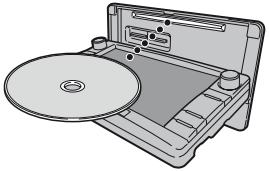
Level 1	Level 2		Level 3	Comments
AUDIO	RDS Settings	RDS Settings	AF Check	The name of the station is displayed while RDS data is received. if the name is not transmitted, the frequency is displayed.
			Reg	
	Station List	List of stations		To display in the screen the list of stations received. PTY (programme type) is displayed if the RDS data received is displayed, to display in the screen programmes by type, e.g.: sport, rock, classical, information, ... Press PTY again to quit.
	Scan	Scan		To search for stations that can be received in the current location, until a station is found.
	TP Standby	TP Standby		Choose to activate or deactivate traffic announcements (TP).

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3









OPEN: Opens or closes the screen panel to insert or remove a CD or SD card.

Level 1	Level 2			Level 3	Comments
MODE	CD	CD	▲	Repeat	Press to play the track repeatedly.
				Scan	Press to play the start of each track for around 9 seconds.
				Random	Press to play the tracks in random order.
			Playback		Press to start play of the selected track.
			Go Up 1 Level		Press to go up one level.
			Go to ROOT		Press to open the folder structure.
	SD	SD	▲	Repeat	Press to play the track repeatedly.
				Scan	Press to play the start of each track for around 9 seconds.
				Random	Press to play the tracks in random order.
			Playback		Press to start play of the selected track.
			Go Up 1 Level		Press to go up one level.
			Go to ROOT		Press to open the folder structure.
	USB/iPod	USB/iPod	▲	Repeat	Press to play the track repeatedly.
				Scan	Press to play the start of each track for around 9 seconds.
				Random	Press to play the tracks in random order.
			Playback		Press to start play of the selected track.
	Bluetooth Audio	Bluetooth Audio	▲	Repeat	Press to play the track repeatedly.
				Scan	Press to play the start of each track for around 9 seconds.
				Random	Press to play the tracks in random order.
			Track		Press to start play of the selected track.
	AUX	AUX			Manage play from the portable device.

RDS, AF, TP, PTY

What is RDS?

RDS

The Radio Data System (RDS) function on the FM waveband permits:

- automatic retuning to alternative frequencies carrying the same station while travelling through different regions (if the transmitters of this station cover the area through which you are travelling),
- temporary tuning to traffic information announcements,
- display of the name of the station, etc...

Most FM stations use RDS.

These stations transmit non-audible data in addition to their programmes.

The data transmitted in this way allows you access to various functions, mainly displaying of the name of the station, temporary tuning to traffic information announcements or automatic retuning to alternative frequencies.

RDS allows you to continue listening to the same station automatically by means of alternative frequencies. However, alternative frequencies may not be provided throughout the country. Radio stations do not cover the whole country, which explains the loss of reception of the station during a journey.

RDS alternative frequencies

AF

Your radio automatically checks and selects the best frequency for the radio station to which it is tuned (if the station broadcasts on several transmitters or frequencies).

The frequency of a radio station covers approximately 30 miles (50 km). The change from one frequency to another explains the loss of reception during a journey.

If the station to which you are listening does not have several frequencies in the region in which you are currently located, you can deactivate automatic alternative frequencies.

Traffic information function

TP

The Traffic Programme (TP) function permits automatic and temporary switching to an FM station broadcasting traffic information.

The radio station or the source that you are listening to at this point is placed on hold.

Once the traffic information has ended, the system switches back to the radio station or the source that you were listening to initially.

Programme types

PTY

Some stations offer the option of listening to a themed type of programme as a priority, selected from the list available below:

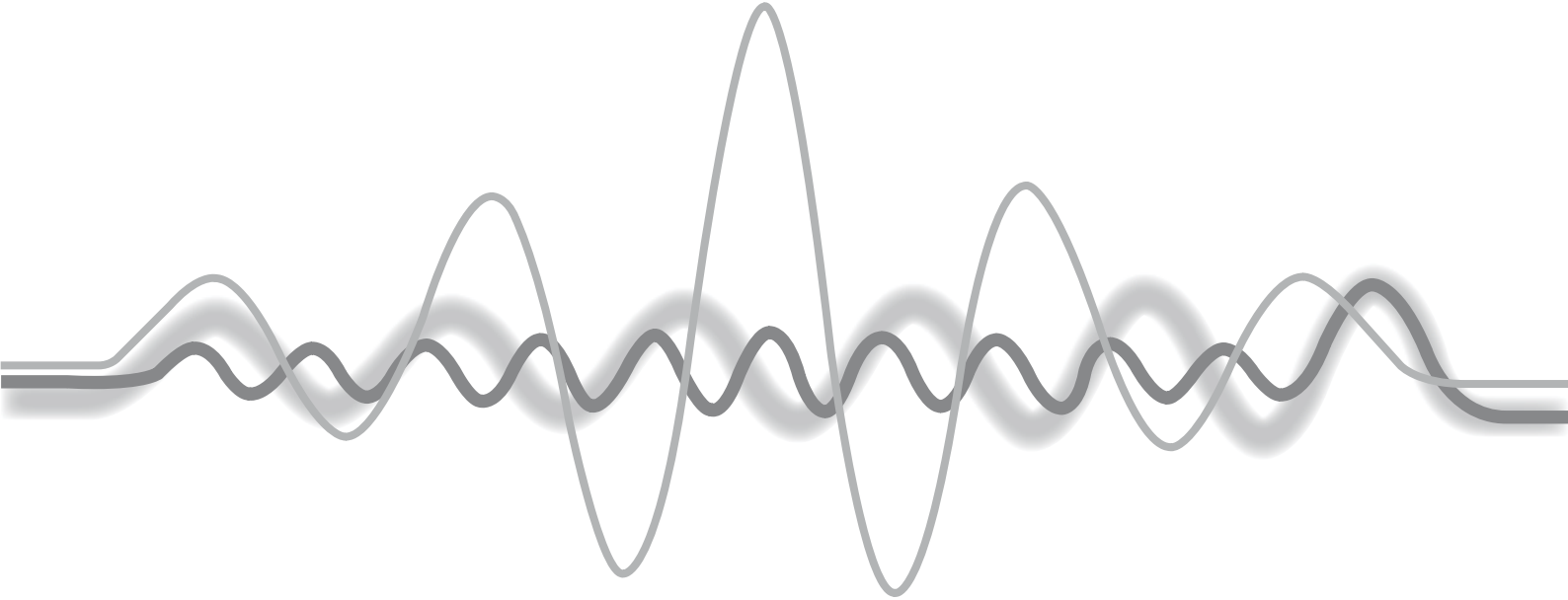
NEWS, AFFAIRS, INFOS, SPORT, EDUCATE, DRAMA, CULTURE, SCIENCE, VARIED, POP M, ROCK M, EASY M, LIGHT M, CLASSICS, OTHER M, WEATHER, FINANCE, CHILDREN, SOCIAL, RELIGION, PHONE IN, TRAVEL, LEISURE, JAZZ, COUNTRY, NATION M, OLDIES, FOLK M, DOCUMENT.

Selecting an FM station and presetting

1	AUDIO	Press the **AUDIO** button. By default the screen displays the stations on FM1.
2	FOLDER / TUNE SOUND	Turn the **FOLDER / TUNE SOUND** knob to select a station.
3	Scan	Press "**Scan**" to search for stations that can be received in the current location, until a station is found.
	PTY Filter	You can also start a search by type of programme by pressing "**PTY Filter**".
4	SEEK TRACK	Press **SEEK TRACK** for a manual search up or down. The frequency is modified in step of 0.1 MHz. Press and hold to find a station automatically.
5	1 87.9	Once the frequency has been selected, a long press on the station until a "Beep" is heard will preset it. The name of the station is displayed if it is available.

RDS settings

1	AUDIO	Press the **AUDIO** button. By default the screen displays the stations on FM1.
2	RDS Settings	Press "**RDS Settings**".
3	AF Check Reg	Press "**On**" or "**Off**" to activate or deactivate the functions: - "**AF Check**": automatic search for the best frequency, - "**Reg**": switch to the regional frequencies.



DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting)
Digital radio

Digital radio provides a superior audio quality and also a display of graphic current information concerning the radio station selected.

The different channels offer a choice of radio stations in alphabetical order.

1

Press the **MODE** button.

2

Select "**DAB**".

3

Turn the **FOLDER / TUNE SOUND** thumbwheel to select a station.

4

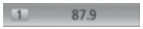
Press "**Scan**" to search for transmitting stations, until they are obtained.

You can also start a search by type of programme by pressing "**PTY Filter**".

4

Press **SEEK TRACK** for an ascending or descending manual search. The frequency is changed in steps of 0.1 MHz.

Maintain the pressure to tune to a station automatically.

5 

Once the frequency has been chosen, maintain the pressure on the station until a "Beep" is heard in order to store it.

If the name of the station is available, this is displayed.

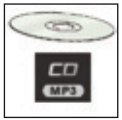
"DAB" does not have 100% coverage of the country.

If the current DAB station is not available on FM the "**DAB-DAB Link**" indicator disappears.

When the digital signal is weak, "DAB" allows you to continue listening to the same station, by automatically switching to the corresponding analogue "FM" station (if it exists).

General notes on files

Playing an MP3/WMA CD



When the MP3/WMA CD is inserted in the player, playing of the tracks is automatic.

The tracks cannot be recorded onto the music server.

You can play CDs with up to 8 levels, 100 folders and 255 files maximum.

MP3 and WMA audio file formats

REC 08/

MP3 is the abbreviation of MPEG-1 Audio Layer 3 and MPEG is the abbreviation of Motion Pictures Experts Group. This is a digital audio compression standard that reduces the size of audio files by eliminating frequencies that are inaudible to the human ear.

This compression divides the size of the content of a conventional audio CD by approximately 10, which means that the content of 10 audio CDs can be recorded onto a single CD-R or CD-RW.

WMA is the abbreviation of Windows Media Audio, another audio data compression standard offered by Microsoft.

It can be used to create and save audio files at a compression rate lower than that of the MP3 format, with an equivalent file size.

Windows Media and Microsoft Corporation are trademarks registered in the United States and/or other countries.

File handling

Some blank CDs may not be played by your equipment (quality, recording speed...).

When you burn a CD-R or CD-RW, select the ISO 9660 level 1.2 or Joliet burning standard.

To obtain the best acoustic quality possible, select the lowest burning speed.

The MPEG1 and MPEG2 standards are accepted.

Transmission speeds between 32 and 320 kbits/s and scans between 16 kHz and 48 kHz are accepted.

To display the title information (the name of the artist, the title of the album, etc...), the information contained in the ID3 Tags or the WMA Tags must be included in the MP3/WMA files burned onto the disc.

Copyright

Your audio system may allow you to listen to music which is usually protected by copyright in accordance with current national and international standards. Please consult these standards and comply with them.

Playing a file

1

Press the **MODE** button then "**CD**", if the player already contains a CD.
Otherwise, insert a CD in the player, play begins automatically.

2

You can move by one level at a time.
Press on the name of a folder and at each press the list of folders of the level below is displayed.

3

Press on "**Go Up 1 Level**" to move up a level and/or select a level.

4

Press on "**Go to ROOT**" to go up to the root level.

5

Press these buttons to select the next or previous track or return to the beginning of the track currently being played.

6

Press these buttons for fast forward or back in the current track.

7

Press this button for access to the secondary menu.

8

Press "**Repeat**" to play the selected track repeatedly in a loop.
Press "**Repeat**" again to play all of the tracks in the selected folder repeatedly in a loop.
Press again to stop.

9

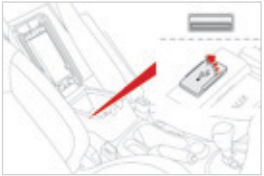
Press "**Scan**" to play the beginning of each track in each folder for approximately 10 seconds (scanning).
Press "**Scan**" again the play the beginning of each track in the selected folder in a loop.
Press again to stop or press on the current track (during the 10 seconds) and play begins.

10

Press "**Random**" to play all of the tracks in the selected folder in random order.
Press "**Random**" again to play all of the tracks on the CD in random order.
Press again to stop.

Using the USB port

The USB port is used to connect a portable device (MP3 player, Apple® player, etc.). The files are sent from the player to your audio system and heard through the vehicle's speakers.



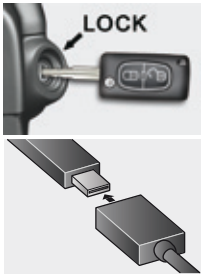
To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

Use only USB memory sticks in the format FAT32 (File Allocation Table).

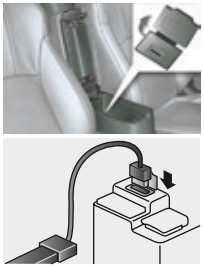
File formats: MP3, WMA, AAC, WAV.

- Maximum number of levels (including root): 8.
- Number of folders: 100.
- Number of files: 255.

1 With the vehicle stationary, ignition switch in the **LOCK** position, connect a suitable cable to the portable player.



2 Then connect the cable to the vehicle's USB port.



To disconnect the cable, the ignition switch must be in the **LOCK** position.

Take care not to trap the cable when closing the armrest.

Connecting APPLE® players

1 Connect the Apple® player to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied).
Play starts automatically.

2 Control is via the audio system.

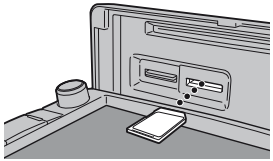
The classifications available are those of the portable device connected (artists / albums / genres / playlists / audiobooks / podcasts).
The default classification used is by artist. To modify the classification used, return to the first level of the menu then select the desired classification (playlists for example) and confirm to go down through the menu to the desired track.
The "Shuffle tracks" mode on an iPod® corresponds to the "Random" mode on the audio system.
The "Shuffle albums" mode on an iPod® corresponds to the "Random all" on the audio system.
"Shuffle tracks" is restored by default on each connection.

The version of software in the audio system may not be compatible with the generation of your Apple® player.

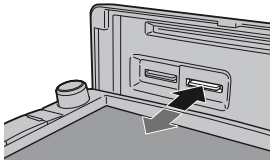
Using the SD card reader

The SD card reader can play MP3, WMA, AAC and WAV audio files.

1 Press the **OPEN** button to open the screen panel.
Insert the SD card containing audio files into the right-hand SD card reader.



2 Push the SD card until it clicks into place.
Press the **OPEN** button to close the screen panel.



3

Press the **MODE** button, then on "**SD**".

USB, iPod and SD player - Playing a track

1

Press the **MODE** button then on "**USB/iPod**" or "**SD**"; you can display the sort by category at any time by pressing "**Playlist**".

2

In USB or SD mode you can move up a level at the same time.

Press on the name of a folder and at each press the list of folders in the level below is displayed.

3

Press "**Go Up 1 Level**" to go up one level and/or select a level.

4

Press "**Go to ROOT**" to go up to the root level.

5

Press these buttons to select the next or previous track or return to the beginning of the track currently being played.

6

Press these buttons for fast forward or back in the current track.

7

Press this button for access to the secondary menu.

8

Press "**Repeat**" to play the selected track repeatedly in a loop.

Press "**Repeat**" again to play all of the tracks in the selected folder repeatedly in a loop.

Press again to stop.

9

Press "**Scan**" to play the beginning of each track in each folder for approximately 10 seconds (scanning).

Press "**Scan**" again to play the beginning of each track in the selected folder in a loop.

Press again to stop or press on the current track (during the 10 seconds) and play begins.

10

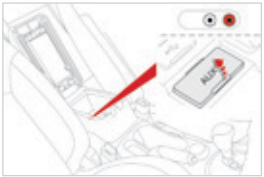
Press "**Random**" to play all of the tracks in the selected folder in random order.

Press "**Random**" again to play all of the tracks in random order.

Press again to stop.

Using the auxiliary input (AUX)

The auxiliary input allows the connection of a portable device (MP3 player...).



1

Connect the portable device (MP3 player…) to the RCA sockets (red and white) using a suitable cable, not supplied.

2

First adjust the volume of your portable device (to a high level). Then adjust the volume of your audio system.

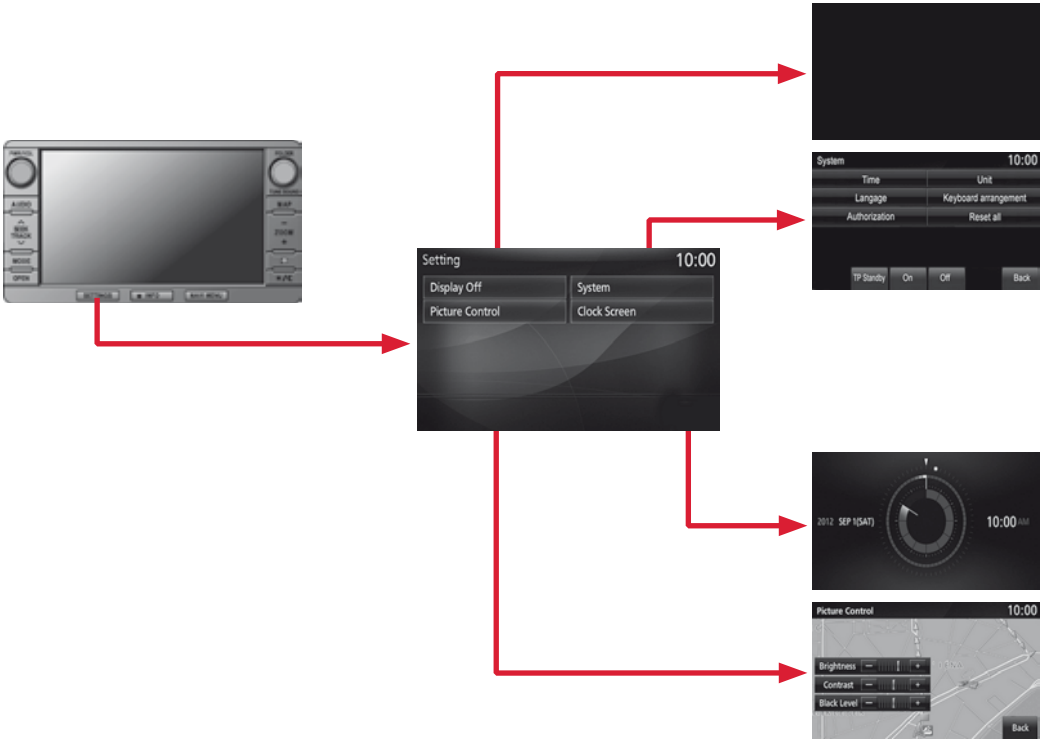
The operation and play is controlled on the portable device.

3

Press the **MODE** button, then on "**AUX**".

06 SETTINGS

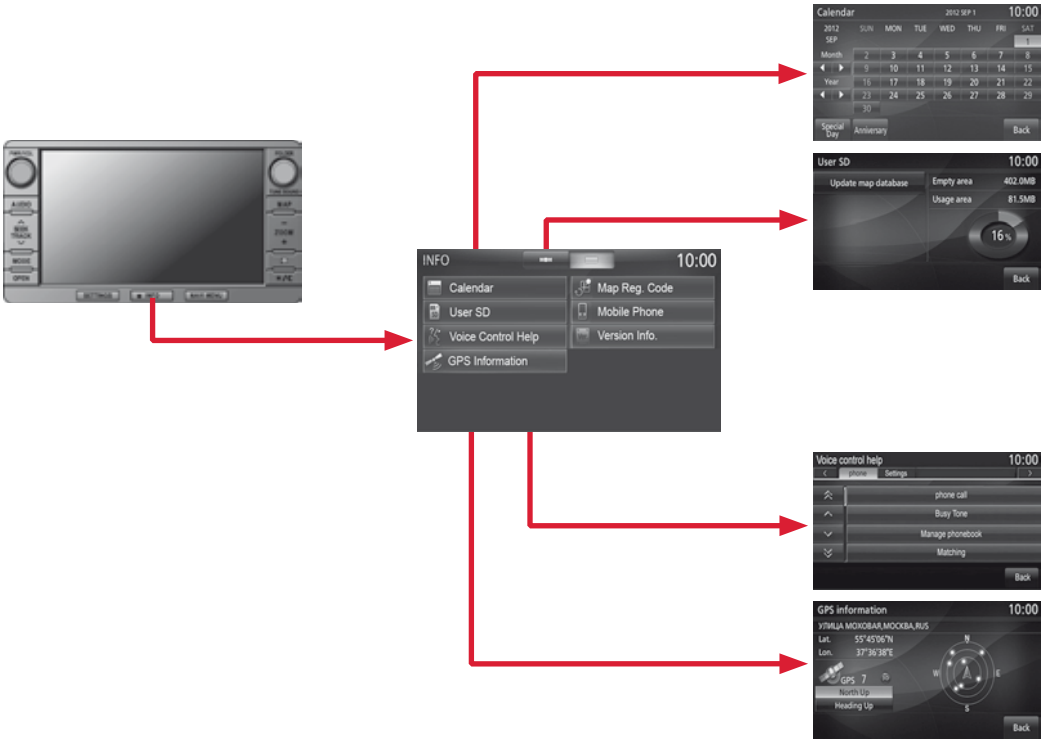
Level 1	Level 2	Level 3



Level 1	Level 2		Level 3	Comments
SETTINGS		Display Off		Choose to switch off the screen. To switch it back on, touch the screen or press any button.
		System	Time	Choose adjustment of the time by the RDS signal, time zone, summer time.
			Language	Select the language (English, Français, Deutsch, Nederlands, Português, Español, Svenska, Italiano, Dansk, Vlaams, Polski, Norsk).
			Pairing	Select an authorisation "Select Device to Connect", "Register Device", "Set Passkey: Fixed", "Set Passcode".
			Units	Select the units for the calculation of distances (km or miles and °C or °F).
			Keyboard Layout	Select the type of input keyboard (alphabet or PC).
			Reset all	Restore factory settings. After reinitialisation, restart the system.
			TP Standby	Select the traffic information (TP) setting: on or off.
		Picture Control	Brightness	Adjust the image settings for: brightness, contrast, black level.
			Contrast	
			Black Level	
		Clock Screen		

07 INFORMATION

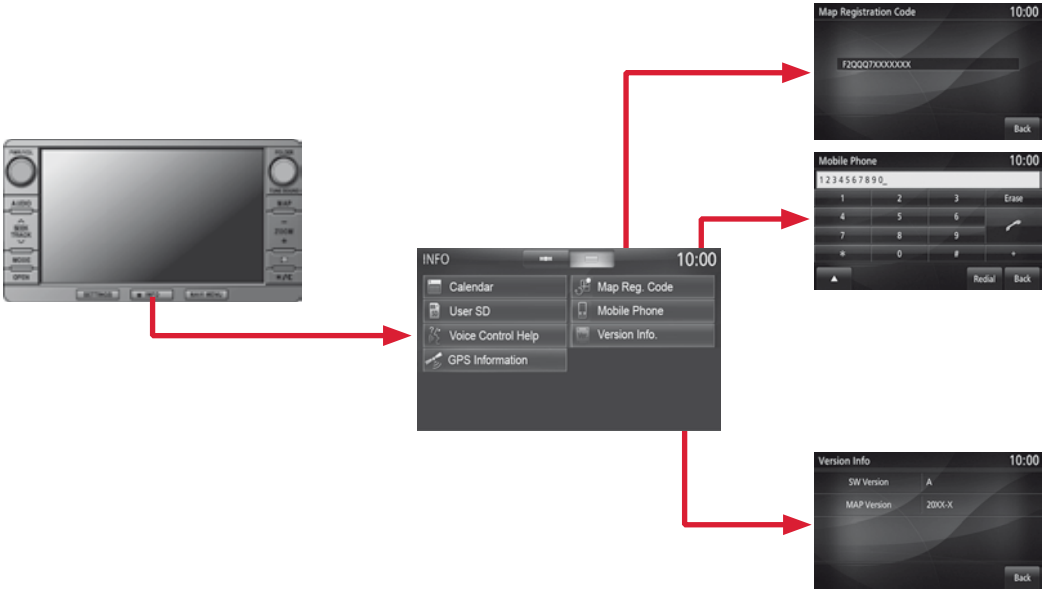
Level 1	Level 2	Level 3



Level 1	Level 2		Level 3	Comments
INFO		Calendar		Make a note on the calendar of special days, birthdays, ... Use the arrows to find a date and press directly on the day required to enter the event.
		User SD		Check the capacity of the SD card and the free space.
		Voice Control Help	Make a telephone call	Verify the use of voice commands.
			Busy tone	
			Manage the directory	
			Pairing	
		GPS Information	Country	View GPS information: - the satellite position chart with the direction and movement of the vehicle, - the name of the current location, - the longitude and latitude of the current location, - the status of location measurement (2D = 3 satellites or less, 3D = 4 satellites or more), - the number of satellites visible.

07 INFORMATION

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3



Level 1	Level 2		Level 3	Comments
INFO		Map Reg. Code		Display the registration code for the navigation system.
		Mobile Phone		Make and receive telephone calls.
		Version Info.		View the software version and mapping data version.

Pairing a telephone

1

Press the **MODE** button then "**Bluetooth Audio**" to start Bluetooth mode.

2

In the Bluetooth menu on your telephone, select the system name in the list of devices detected.
Enter the code "**1212**" in the telephone and confirm.

3 SETTINGS

Press **SETTINGS**.

4 System

Press "**System**" then "**Pairing**".

5 Select the device to connect

Press "**Select Device to Connect**".
Wait until the telephone detected is displayed.

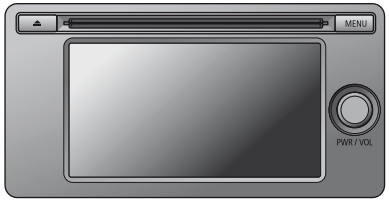
6 ▲

Select the telephone to connect then press this button.

7 Edit

Press "**Edit**" to connect the telephone.

! You can register or delete a device in the list.



AUDIO-CD TOUCH SCREEN SYSTEM

The system is protected in such a way that it will only operate in your vehicle.

For safety reasons, the driver must carry out operations which require prolonged attention while the vehicle is stationary.

When the engine is switched off and to prevent discharging of the battery, the system switches off following the activation of the energy economy mode.

Contents

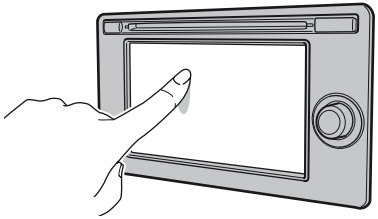
01 First steps - Control panel p. 290
02 Steering mounted controls p. 291
03 General operation p. 293
04 Radio p. 300
05 Music p. 305
06 Bluetooth® telephone p. 310

EJECT: eject the CD.

Use the buttons offered on the screen.

MENU: chose the audio source from the main menu.

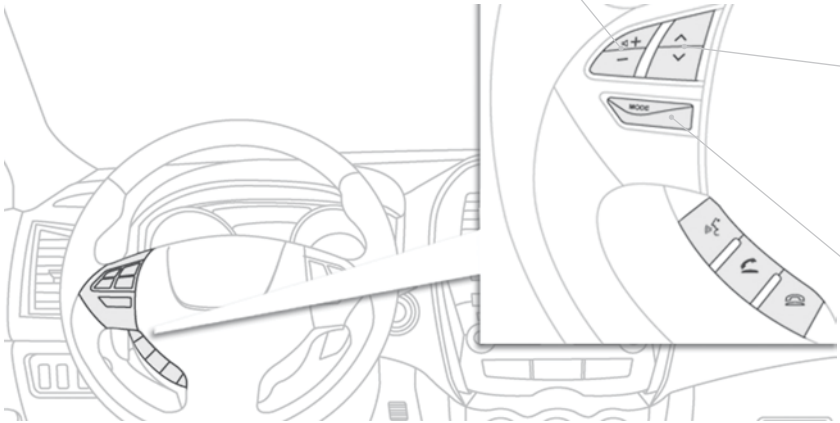
PWR: audio system on/off.
Off: mute (with black screen).
VOL: adjust volume.



Move a finger over the screen to operate the system.

For safety reasons, the driver must only carry out operations which require prolonged attention with the vehicle stationary.

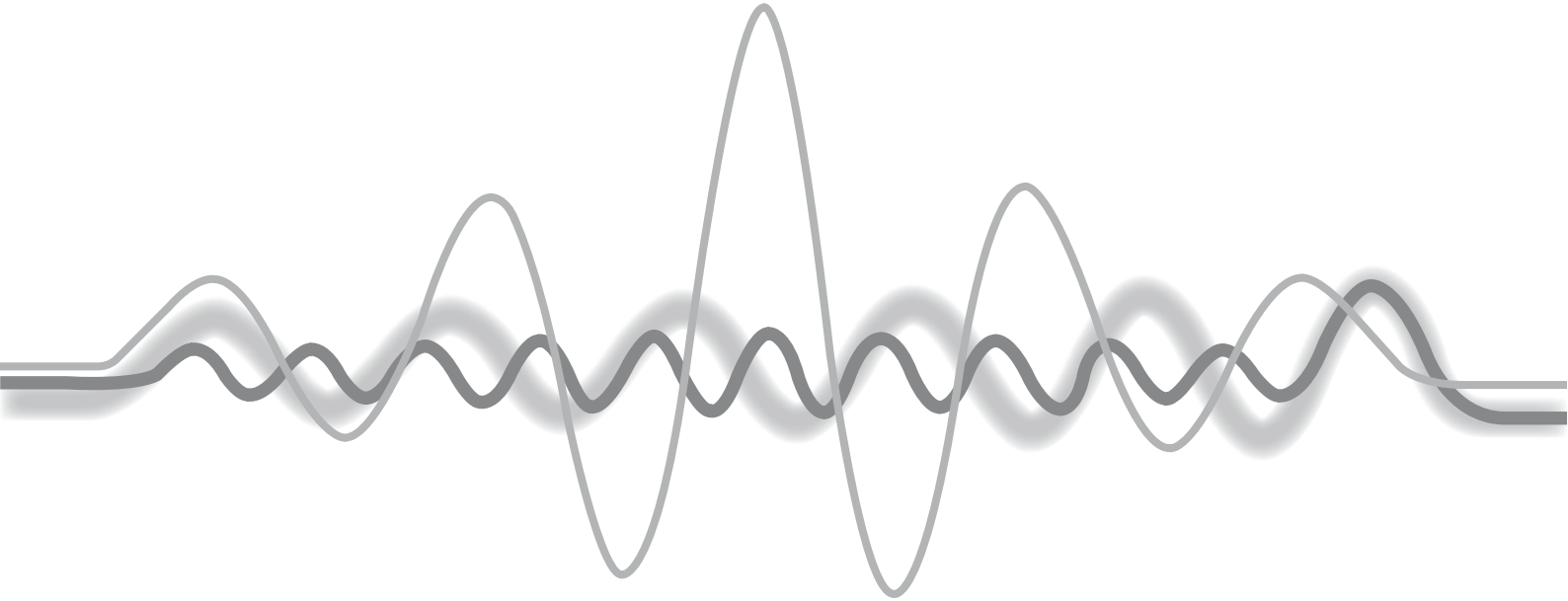
02 STEERING MOUNTED CONTROLS



Increase / reduce audio volume.

Search for a higher / lower radio frequency.
Next / previous CD track.
CD fast forward / back.

Long press: audio system on / off.
Short press: selection of the source in the following order (in a loop):
CD, USB, iPod, Bluetooth, AUX, FM, MW, LW.



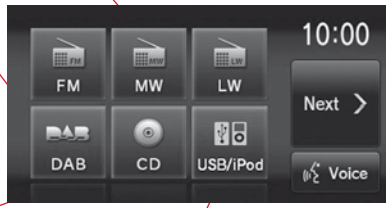
Description of controls - Menus

FM / **MW** / **LW**: select a radio station from:
- frequency modulation (FM),
- medium wave (MW),
- long wave (LW).

BT Audio: connect a Bluetooth (2.0) telephone then play the music files by streaming.

AUX: connect a portable player to the Jack auxiliary socket then play the music files.

DAB: select the digital radio (Digital Audio Broadcasting).



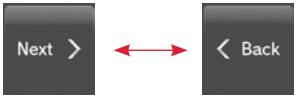
Phone: make or receive telephone calls.

Voice: use the voice commands.

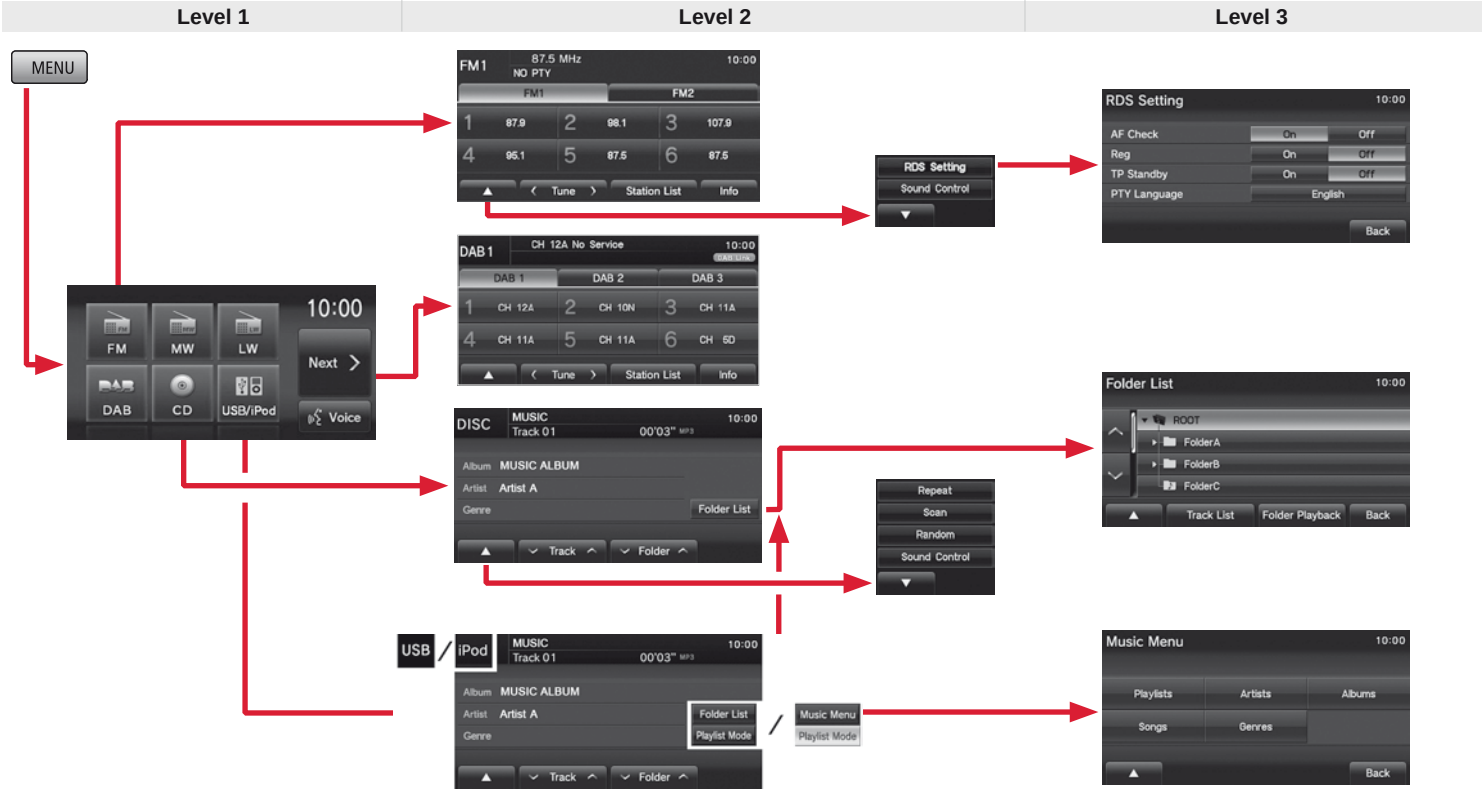
CD: play the music files through the CD player (WAV, MP3, WMA, AAC).

USB / **iPod®**: connect a portable player by USB or an iPod®, then play the music files.

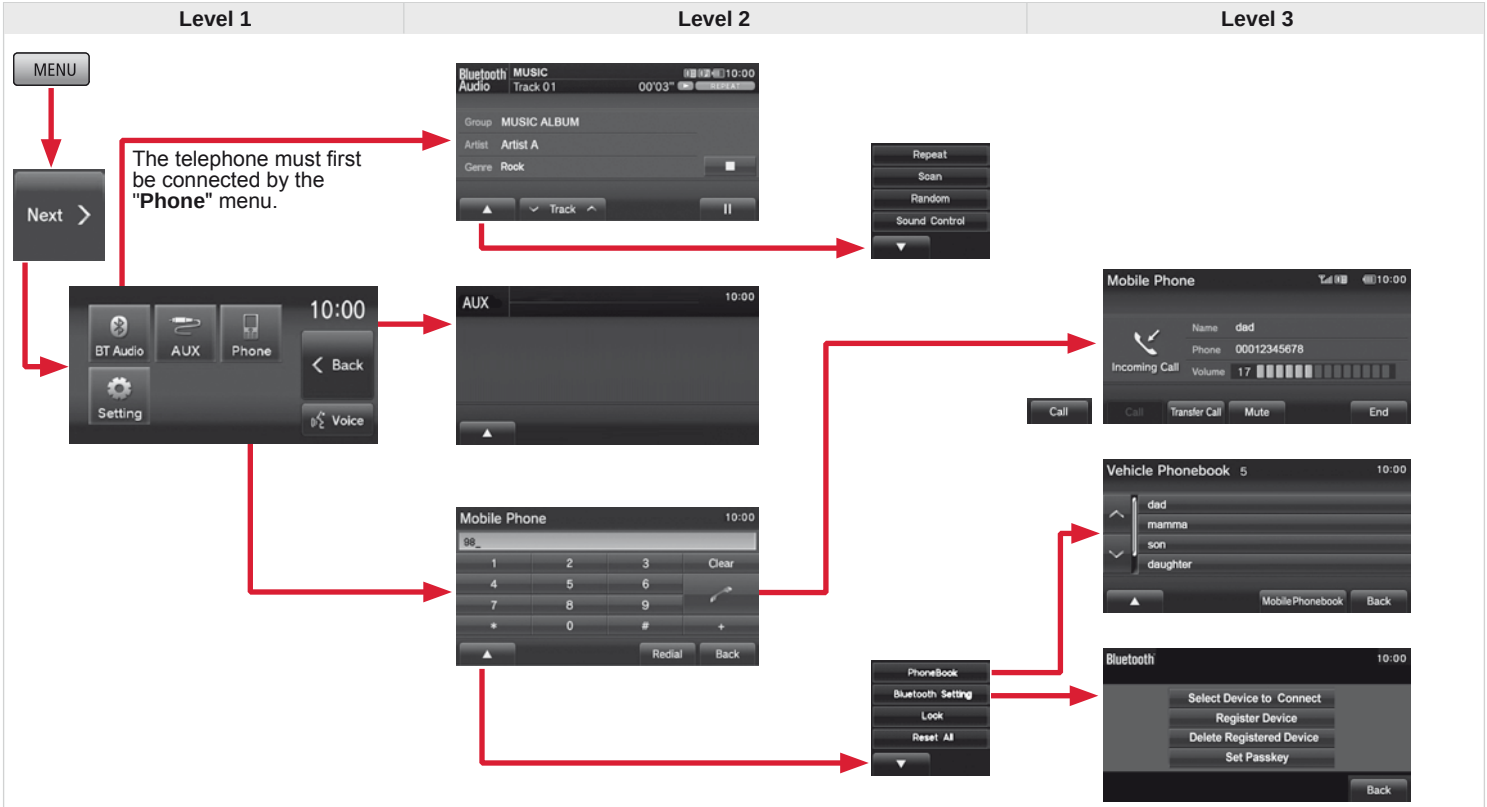
Change from one screen to the other.



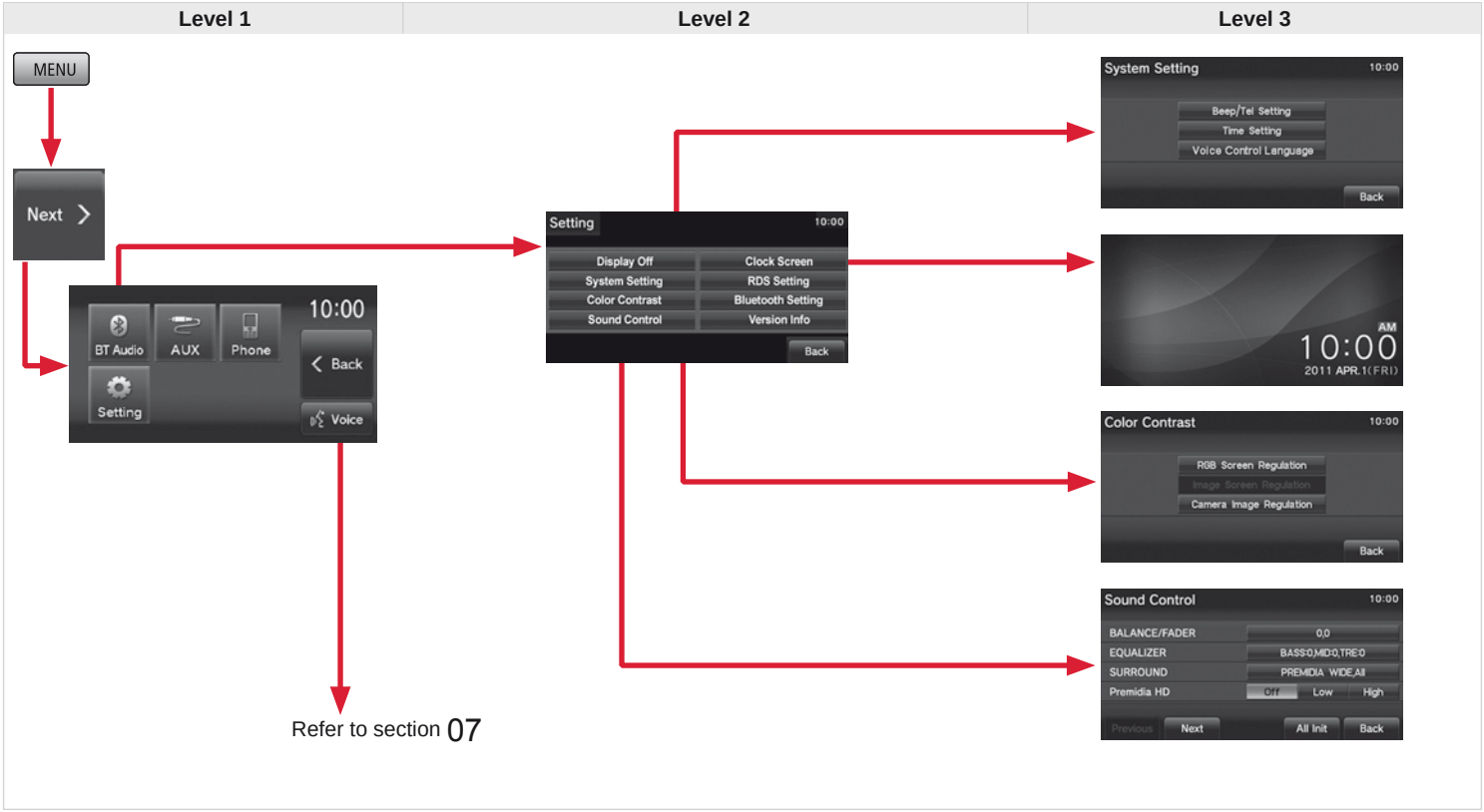
Setting:
- switch off the screen,
- adjust the touch beep,
- adjust the time or display it continuously,
- select the guidance voice,
- select the picture quality for the screen and reversing camera,
- select RDS.


Level 1
Level 2
Level 3
MENU
FM
MW
LW
DAB
CD
USB/iPod
10:00
Next
Voice
FM1
87.5 MHz
NO PTY
10:00
FM1
FM2
1 87.9
2 98.1
3 107.9
4 95.1
5 87.5
6 87.5
Tune
Station List
Info
DAB 1
CH 12A No Service
10:00
DAB 1
DAB 2
DAB 3
1 CH 12A
2 CH 10N
3 CH 11A
4 CH 11A
5 CH 11A
6 CH 5D
Tune
Station List
Info
DISC
MUSIC
Track 01
00'03"
10:00
Album MUSIC ALBUM
Artist Artist A
Genre
Folder List
Track
Folder
USB / iPod
MUSIC
Track 01
00'03"
10:00
Album MUSIC ALBUM
Artist Artist A
Genre
Folder List
Playlist Mode
Track
Folder
RDS Setting
Sound Control
Repeat
Scan
Random
Sound Control
Music Menu
Playlist Mode
RDS Setting
10:00
AF Check On Off
Reg On Off
TP Standby On Off
PTY Language English
Back
Folder List
10:00
ROOT
FolderA
FolderB
FolderC
Track List
Folder Playback
Back
Music Menu
10:00
Playlists
Artists
Albums
Songs
Genres
Back

Level 1	Level 2		Level 3	Comments
FM / DAB	FM1 FM2 DAB 1 DAB 2 DAB 3			Select the tabs for access to the 6 preset stations. FM = 12 stations. DAB = 18 stations.
	1 87.9 2 98.1 3 107.9 4 95.1 5 87.5 6 87.5			Preset stations. After selecting a frequency, press and hold the number to preset the current station.
	▲	RDS Setting	AF Check	Activate station tracking (automatic selection of the strongest frequency).
			Reg	Activate regional station tracking mode to track the frequency of a regional station in the network.
			TP Standby	Activate the temporary transfer to a station with traffic information.
			PTY Language	Activate station tracking according to programme/theme.
		Sound Control		Adjust the audio quality (balance, equaliser, etc.).
	‹ Tune ›			Change frequency. Maintain pressure until a beep is heard for an automatic search for the next station.
	Station List			Display the list of stations received.
	Info			Display radio text (if there is no information, "no text" is displayed).
CD / USB/iPod	Album MUSIC ALBUM Artist Artist A Genre			Information on the track being played.
	▲	Repeat		Repeat in a loop the track being played.
		Scan		Play the first 10 seconds of each track.
		Random		Play all tracks in random order.
		Sound Control		Adjust the audio quality (balance, equaliser, etc.).
	⌄ Track ⌃			Select a track or maintain pressure for fast forward or rewind.
	⌄ Folder ⌃			Go down or up in the folders.
	Folder List		ROOT FolderA	Click on a folder or sub-folder to play the first track.
	Music Menu Playlist Mode		Playlists Artists Albums Songs Genres	Sort the tracks by category.


Level 1
Level 2
Level 3
MENU
Next
The telephone must first be connected by the "Phone" menu.
BT Audio
AUX
Phone
10:00
Back
Setting
Voice
Bluetooth Audio
MUSIC
Track 01
00'03"
Group MUSIC ALBUM
Artist Artist A
Genre Rock
Track
Repeat
Scan
Random
Sound Control
AUX
Mobile Phone
Clear
Redial
Back
PhoneBook
Bluetooth Setting
Lock
Reset All
Mobile Phone
Name dad
Phone 00012345678
Incoming Call
Volume 17
Call
Transfer Call
Mute
End
Vehicle Phonebook 5
dad
mamma
son
daughter
Mobile Phonebook
Back
Bluetooth
Select Device to Connect
Register Device
Delete Registered Device
Set Passkey
Back

Level 1	Level 2		Level 3	Comments
BT Audio / AUX	Album MUSIC ALBUM Artist Artist A Genre			Information on the track being played.
	▲	Repeat		Repeat in a loop the track being played.
		Scan		Play the first 10 seconds of each track.
		Random		Play all tracks in random order.
		Sound Control		Adjust the audio quality (balance, equaliser, ...).
	Track			Select a track or maintain pressure for fast forward or back.
	■			Stop play of the track.
	II			Play or pause the track.
Phone	98_			Use the keypad to enter a number then click on the telephone.
			Call	Start the call.
			Transfer Call	Transfer the call from the vehicle to the mobile phone.
			Mute	Cut the vehicle microphone (the contact no longer hears your voice but stays on hold).
			End	End the call.
	Redial			Call back the last number.
	▲	PhoneBook		Select a contact in the vehicle phone book.
			Mobile PhoneBook	Select a contact in the mobile phone book.
			mamma	Select a contact and press "Edit" to view the numbers.
		Bluetooth Setting	Select Device to Connect	Select a telephone from the list of connected telephones.
			Register Device	Pair/connect a new telephone.
			Delete Registered Device	Delete a telephone from the list of connected telephones.
			Set Passkey	Register a code used for pairing telephones.
		Look		Lock the telephone keypad.
		Reset All		Erase all registered telephones.


Level 1
Level 2
Level 3
MENU
Next
BT Audio
AUX
Phone
Setting
10:00
Back
Voice
Setting
10:00
Display Off
Clock Screen
System Setting
RDS Setting
Color Contrast
Bluetooth Setting
Sound Control
Version Info
Back
System Setting
10:00
Beep/Tel Setting
Time Setting
Voice Control Language
Back
AM
10:00
2011 APR.1(FRI)
Color Contrast
10:00
RGB Screen Regulation
Image Screen Regulation
Camera Image Regulation
Back
Sound Control
10:00
BALANCE/FADER
0,0
EQUALIZER
BASS:0,MID:0,TRE:0
SURROUND
PREMIDIA WIDE,All
Premidia HD
Off
Low
High
Previous
Next
All Init
Back
Refer to section 07

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3	Comments
Setting	Display Off		Display a black screen. Press the screen to return to the last display.
	System Setting	Beep/Tel Setting	Adjust the touch tone.
		Time Setting	Adjust the date and time.
		Voice Control Language	Select the language for voice commands.
	Color Contrast	RGB Screen Regulation	Adjust the brightness, contrast and black level for the menu screen, ...
		Image Screen Regulation	
		Camera Image Regulation	Adjust the brightness, contrast and black level for the image from the rear camera.
	Sound Control	BALANCE/FADER 0,0	Adjust the sound level of each speaker.
		EQUALIZER BASS0,MID0,TRE0	Select the type of sound (rock, pop, hiphop, jazz, normal).
		SURROUND PREMIDIA WIDE,All	Select the type of surround (DTS, premidia wide) and the audio field.
		Premidia HD Off Low High	Adjust the depth of sound by optimising the compression of bass and treble audio data.
		SCV speed compensated volume	Adjust the volume according to the speed of the vehicle.
		Dolby Volume	Adjust the volume automatically according to audio source for clear and natural sound.
	Clock Screen		Display the time continuously.
	RDS Setting	AF Check	Activate station tracking (automatic selection of the strongest frequency).
		Reg	Activate regional station tracking mode to track the frequency of a regional station in the network.
		TP Standby	Activate the temporary transfer to stations with traffic information.
		PTY Language	Activate station tracking according to programme/theme.
	Bluetooth Setting	Select Device to Connect	Select a telephone from the list of connected telephones.
		Register Device	Connect/pair a new telephone.
		Delete Registered Device	Delete a telephone from the list of connected telephones.
		Set Passkey	Register a code used for pairing telephones.
	Version Info		Display the version of the system.

Selecting an FM / MW / LW station

1

Press **MENU** to display the choice of source.

2

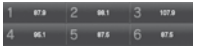
Select "**FM**" or "**MW**" or "**LW**".

3

Select a radio station in the list (1 to 6) or press "**Tune**" to change the frequency.

Maintain pressure on "**Tune**" until a beep is heard, for an automatic search for the next station.

Press "**Station list**" to display the list of radio stations received locally.



A long press on one of the numbered buttons presets the current station.

Press the **arrow** to adjust the RDS or the audio settings (balance, equaliser, ...).

Preset up to 12 stations between FM1 and FM2.

The exterior environment (hills, buildings, tunnel, car park, below ground...) may prevent reception, even in RDS station tracking mode.
This phenomenon is normal in the propagation of radio waves and is in no way indicative of a fault with the audio system.

RDS, AF, REG, TP, PTY

RDS

RDS

The Radio Data System (RDS) function on the FM waveband permits:

- automatic retuning to alternative frequencies carrying the same station while travelling through different regions (if the transmitters of this station cover the area through which you are travelling),
- temporary tuning to traffic information announcements,
- display of the name of the station, etc...

Most FM stations use RDS.

These stations transmit non-audible data in addition to their programmes.

The data transmitted in this way allows you access to various functions, mainly displaying of the name of the station, temporary tuning to traffic information announcements or automatic retuning to alternative frequencies.

RDS allows you to continue listening to the same station automatically by means of alternative frequencies. However, alternative frequencies may not be provided throughout the country. Radio stations do not cover the whole country, which explains the loss of reception of the station during a journey.

RDS alternative frequencies

AF

Your radio automatically checks and selects the best frequency for the radio station to which it is tuned (if the station broadcasts on several transmitters or frequencies).

The frequency of a radio station covers approximately 30 miles (50 km). The change from one frequency to another explains the loss of reception during a journey.

If the station to which you are listening does not have several frequencies in the region in which you are currently located, you can deactivate automatic alternative frequencies.

Regional mode

REG

Some stations are organised in a network.

In different regions, they broadcast different or shared programmes depending on the time of day.

You can follow:

- a regional station only,
- the entire network, with the possibility that you will be listening to a different programme.

Traffic information function

TP

The Traffic Programme (TP) function permits automatic and temporary switching to an FM station broadcasting traffic information.

The radio station or the source that you are listening to at this point is paused.

Once the traffic information has ended, the system switches back to the radio station or the source that you were listening to initially.

Programme types

PTY

Some stations offer the option of listening to a themed type of programme as a priority, selected from the list available below:

NEWS, AFFAIRS, INFOS, SPORT, EDUCATE, DRAMA, CULTURE, SCIENCE, VARIED, POP M, ROCK M, EASY M, LIGHT M, CLASSICS, OTHER M, WEATHER, FINANCE, CHILDREN, SOCIAL, RELIGION, PHONE IN, TRAVEL, LEISURE, JAZZ, COUNTRY, NATION M, OLDIES, FOLK M, DOCUMENT.

RDS settings: AF, Reg, TP, PTY

or

1

Press the **MENU** button then select the radio source (**FM** / **MW** / **LW**).

2

Select the **arrow**.

1

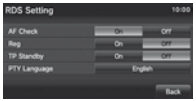
Press the **MENU** button, then "**Next**".

2

Select "**Setting**" then "**RDS Setting**".

then

3



Activate or not the settings.

Selecting a DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) station - digital radio

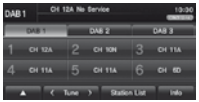
Digital radio provides a superior audio quality and also a display of graphic current information concerning the radio station selected.
The different channels offer a choice of radio stations in alphabetical order.

1

Press **MENU** to display the source selection.

2

Select "**DAB**".

3 

Select a station from the list (1 to 6) or use "**Tune**" to change the frequency.

Maintain the pressure on "**Tune**" until a beep is heard to search for the next station automatically.

Press "**Station list**" to display the list of radio stations received in your area.

Pressing and holding one of the numbers stores the current station.

Press the **arrow** to adjust the DAB or the sound quality (balance, equaliser, etc.).

Store up to 18 stations between DAB1, DAB2 and DAB3.

The exterior environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, car parks, being underground, etc.) may prevent reception, even in RDS station tracking mode.
This phenomenon is normal in the propagation of radio waves and is in no way indicative of a fault with the audio system.

Setting the DAB

1

Press the **MENU** button then select the "**DAB**" radio source.

2

Select the **arrow**.

or

1

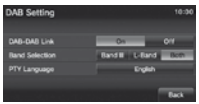
Press the **MENU** button then "**Next**".

2

Select "**Setting**" then "**DAB Setting**".

then

3



Activate the settings as required.

Playing a CD (CD-DA/CD-TEXT or MP3/WMA/AAC)

1

Press the **MENU** button to display the choice of source.

2

Inset a CD then select "**CD**".

3

Use the "**Track**" button to select the previous / next track.

Press and hold "**Track**" for rewind or fast forward.

Press the **arrow** to modify the track play mode:

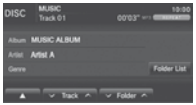
"**Repeat**": plays the current track repeatedly in a loop.

"**Scan**": plays the start of each track for around 10 seconds.

"**Random/Shuffle**": plays all of the tracks in the current folder in random order.

"**Sound control**": settings for balance, equaliser, etc.

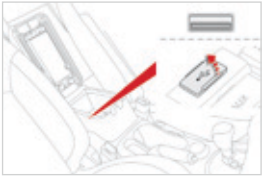
Press "**Track List**" to display the complete list of tracks.



With an MP3/WMA/AAC CD, press "**Folder**" to move up and down in the folders.

Using the USB port

The USB port is used to connect a portable device (MP3 player, Apple® player, etc.). The files are sent from the player to your audio system and heard through the vehicle's speakers.



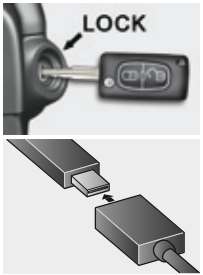
To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

Use only USB memory sticks in the format FAT32 (File Allocation Table).

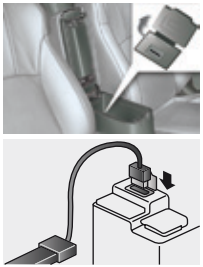
File formats: MP3, WMA, AAC, WAV.

- Maximum number of levels (including root): 8.
- Number of folders: 100.
- Number of files: 255.

1 With the vehicle stationary, ignition switch in the **LOCK** position, connect a suitable cable to the portable player.



2 Then connect the cable to the vehicle's USB port.

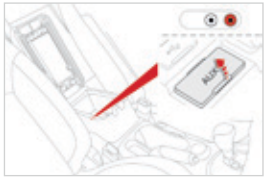


To disconnect the cable, the ignition switch must be in the **LOCK** position.

Take care not to trap the cable when closing the armrest.

Using the auxiliary input (AUX)

The auxiliary input allows the connection of a portable device (MP3 player...).



1

Connect the portable device (MP3 player…) to the RCA sockets (red and white) using a suitable cable, not supplied.

2

First adjust the volume of your portable device (to a high level). Then adjust the volume of your audio system.

The operation and play is controlled on the portable device.

3

Press the **MENU** button, then the "**Next**" button for access to the secondary screen, then on "**AUX**".

Playing tracks on an iPod®

1

Press the **MENU** button to display the choice of source.

2

Connect the iPod® then select "**iPod**".

3

Use the "**Track**" button to select the previous / next track.

Press and hold "**Track**" for rewind or fast forward.

Press the **arrow** to modify the track play mode:

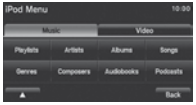
"**Repeat**": plays the current track repeatedly in a loop.

"**Random/Shuffle**": plays all of the tracks in the current folder in random order.

"**Playback Speed**": adjustment of the play speed (slow, normal, fast).

"**Sound control**": settings for balance, equaliser, etc.

Press "**Chapter List**" to display the complete list of audio book chapters.



Press "**iPod Menu**" to display the list of categories, then sort.

The choice of tracks will then be from the category chosen.

Playing tracks on a portable player (USB)

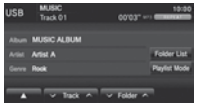
1

Press the **MENU** button to display the choice of source.

2

Connect the portable player, then select "**USB**".

3

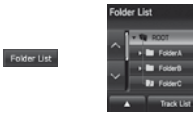


Use the "**Track**" button to select the previous / next track.

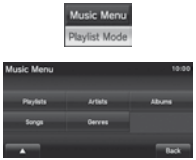
Press and hold "**Track**" for rewind or fast forward.

Press "**Folder**" to move up and down in the folders.

Press the **arrow** to modify the track play mode:
"**Repeat**": plays the current track repeatedly in a loop.
"**Scan**": plays the start of each track for around 10 seconds.
"**Random / Shuffle**": plays all of the tracks in the current folder in random order.
"**Sound control**": settings for balance, equaliser, etc.
"**Database**": checks the version of "**Gracenote***".



Press "**Folder List**" to display the list of folders.
Press on a folder to run through the tracks.



Press "**Playlist Mode**", "**Music Menu**" is displayed.
This allows tracks to be sorted by category.

* The Gracenote music database is a service that supplies the names of albums, the track titles, etc.

Pairing a Bluetooth® telephone from the audio system

For reasons of safety and because the sustained attention of the driver is needed, operations of matching a Bluetooth® mobile phone with the audio system's hands-free function must be done with the **vehicle stationary**.

1

Activate the Bluetooth function on the telephone and ensure that it is "visible to all" (refer to the configuration instructions for your telephone).

2

Press the **MENU** button, then "**Next**" to display the choice of source.

3

Press "**Phone**".

4

Press the **arrow**.

5

Press "**Bluetooth Setting**".

6

Press "**Register Device**".

7

"**Hands Free system**" should be displayed on your telephone.

Select it and then enter the code displayed in the audio system.

Your telephone is added to the list in the audio system.

If necessary, refer to the instructions for your mobile telephone.

The services available depend on the network, the SIM card and the compatibility of the Bluetooth® telephone used.

Refer to the instructions for your telephone and to your service provider for the services you have access to.

Making a call

1

Press the "**MENU**" button, then "**Next**" to display the choice of source

2

Press "**Phone**".

3

Enter the number then press the telephone.

! Use of the telephone is not recommended while driving. We recommended that you park safely or make use of the steering mounted controls.

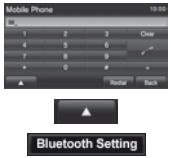
Managing paired telephones

1

Press the **MENU** button, then "**Next**" to display the choice of source.

2

Press "**Phone**".

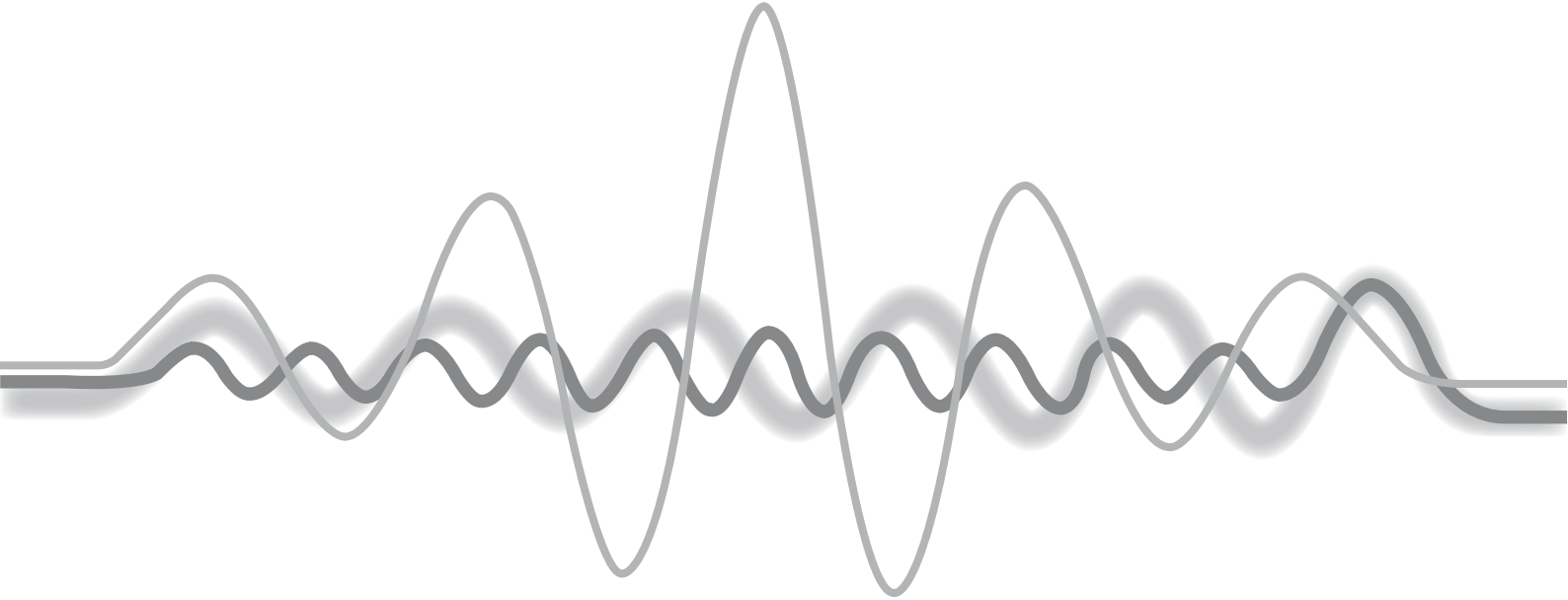
3 

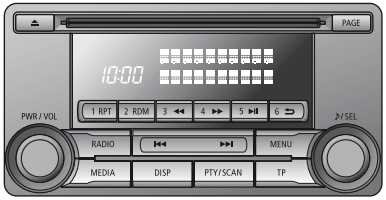
Press the **arrow** then press "**Bluetooth Setting**".

Select or change a telephone already paired.

Pair/register a new telephone

Delete a paired telephone





AUDIO-CD system

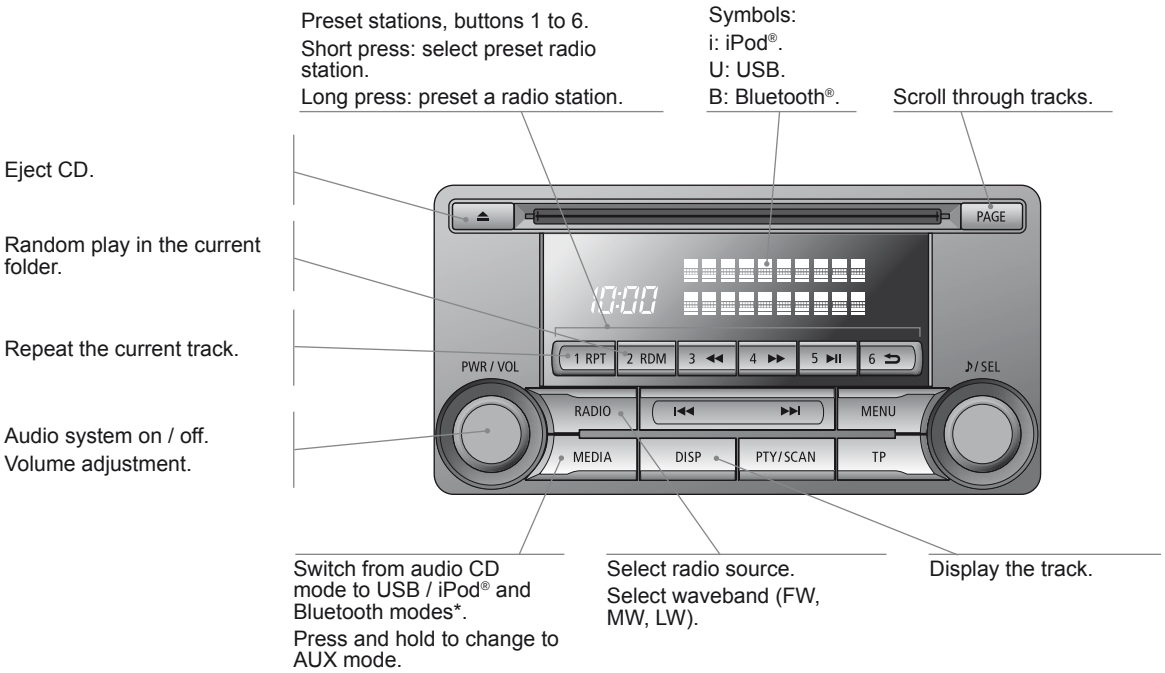
The system is protected in such a way that it will only operate in your vehicle.

For safety reasons, the driver must carry out operations which require prolonged attention while the vehicle is stationary.

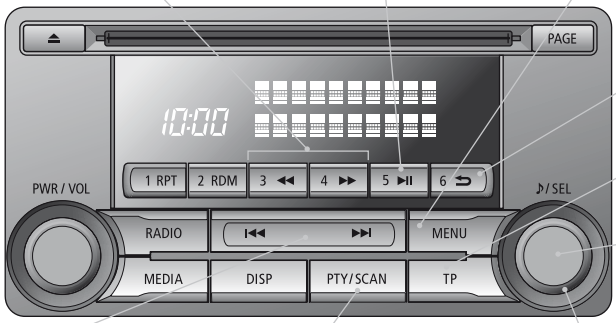
When the engine is switched off and to prevent discharging of the battery, the system switches off following the activation of the energy economy mode.

CONTENTS

01 First steps - Control panel p. 314
02 Steering mounted controls p. 316
03 General operation p. 317
04 Radio p. 319
05 Music media players p. 326
06 USB player p. 331
07 BLUETOOTH® streaming p. 333
Error messages p. 335



* Available according to version.



Fast back / forwards.

Play / pause the current track.

Change to **MENU** mode.

Abandon the current operation, up one level.

Search for TP traffic information.

Press: select folder (or track).

Selection:

- automatically of the next radio frequency down / up.
- of the previous / next track.

PTY On / Off.

Play the first 10 seconds of each track in the current folder.

Select previous / next folder (or track).

Adjust audio settings.

Manual search up and down for a radio station / PTY.

Function setting mode (AF, REG, TP, SCV, ...).

Increase / reduce audio volume.

Search for a higher / lower radio frequency.
Next / previous CD track.
CD fast forwards / backwards.

Long press: audio system on / off.
Short press: selection of the source in the following order: FM1 / FM2 / FM3 / MW / LW / CD.

03 GENERAL OPERATION

Switching on / off

1

Press the **PWR/VOL** button.

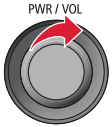
The last source selected before switching off resumes operation.

The audio system functions can be used when the ignition switch is in the "ON" or "ACC" position.

To switch off, press the **PWR/VOL** button again.

Adjusting the volume

1



Turn the **PWR/VOL** knob to the left to decrease the volume or to the right to increase it.

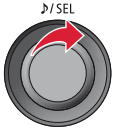
Setting the audio modes

1

Press the **SEL** knob repeatedly; the audio mode changes in the following order: BASS / TREBLE / FADER / BALANCE / SCV and cancel.

Adjusting the audio modes

1



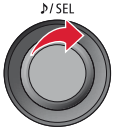
Turn the **SEL** knob to the left or right to adjust the audio setting.

!

The audio adjustment mode is deactivated, during operation of the radio or a CD or after around 10 seconds with no action.

"BASS" setting

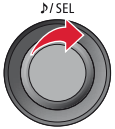
1



Turn the **SEL** knob to set the required bass value.

"TREBLE" setting

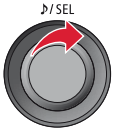
1



Turn the **SEL** knob to set the required treble value.

"FADER" front/rear sound distribution setting

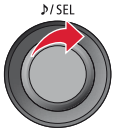
1



Turn the **SEL** knob to set the balance of the volume of the front and rear speakers.

"BALANCE" left/right sound distribution setting

1



Turn the **SEL** knob to set the balance of the volume of the right and left speakers.

"SCV" automatic volume adjustment

!

This allows automatic adjustment of the settings in relation to the vehicle speed.

1

Press the **SEL** knob repeatedly to select "SCV" mode.

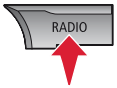
2

Turn the **SEL** knob for access to the settings (OFF, LOW, MID, HIGH).

Selection / Presetting

Selecting radio source

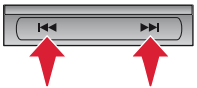
1



Press the **RADIO** button to switch on the radio.

Automatic station search

1

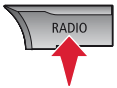


Press the "⏮" or "⏭" button to search the lower frequencies or the higher frequencies respectively.

The search begins automatically and stops at the first station found.

Selecting the waveband

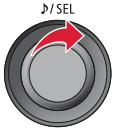
1



Press the **RADIO** button repeatedly to select the waveband; it changes in the following order: FM1 / FM2 / FM3 / MW / LW / FM1...

Manual station search

1



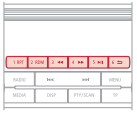
Turn the **SEL** knob to the left to search the lower frequencies or to the right to search the higher frequencies.

Manual station presetting

You can preset up to six stations on each waveband.
Presetting a new station replaces the previous station.

1

Press one of the six buttons "1" to "6" until an audible signal is heard.
The sound cuts out then becomes audible again when the station has been preset.
The number of the button and the associated radio frequency appear in the screen.



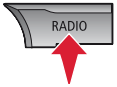
!

To recall the pre-set stored setting, press the button and release it within two seconds.

Automatic station presetting

Stations can only be preset automatically on wavebands FM1, FM2 and FM3.
Presetting new stations replaces the previous stations.
This presetting can be activated automatically irrespective of the waveband selected.

1

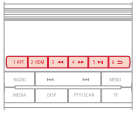


Press the **RADIO** button for more than two seconds.
The six stations offering the best reception are preset and classified from the weakest to the strongest on the six corresponding buttons.

Recalling preset stations

1

Press one of the six buttons "1" to "6". The station corresponding to the waveband selected appears on the screen.



!

Disconnecting the battery terminals clears the preset radio stations.

RDS

The "**Radio Data System**" (RDS) function on the FM waveband permits:

- access to the display of information, such as the name of the station, ...
- listening to the same station while travelling through different regions,
- temporary tuning to traffic information announcements.

Most FM stations use RDS. These stations transmit non-audible data in addition to their programmes.

The data transmitted in this way allows you access to various functions, mainly displaying of the name of the station, automatic retuning to alternative frequencies or temporary retuning to traffic information announcements.

RDS allows you to continue listening to the same station by means of alternative frequencies that carry the same station. However, in certain conditions, RDS alternative frequencies may not be provided throughout the country. Radio stations do not cover the whole country, which explains the loss of reception of the station during a journey.

1

Press the **MENU** button.

2

Press the **SEL** knob repeatedly to select the **RDS** mode: "AF", "REG" and "TP" then turn the knob to select the desired value.

"AF" alternative frequencies

Your radio automatically checks and selects the best frequency for the radio station to which it is tuned (if the station broadcasts on several transmitters or frequencies).

The frequency of a radio station covers approximately 30 miles (50 km). The change from one frequency to another explains the temporary loss of reception during a journey.

If the station to which you are listening does not have several frequencies in the region in which you are currently located, you can deactivate alternative frequencies.

REG regional mode

Some stations are organised in a network.

In different regions, they broadcast different or shared programmes depending on the time of day.

You can follow:

- a regional station only,
- the entire network, with the possibility that you will be listening to a different programme.

! On long distance journeys, when the stored station becomes weak, the radio searches first for another frequency for the same station (AF). Then, if this fails, it searches for a frequency broadcasting the regional programme (REG). If this also fails, the radio returns to the stored station.

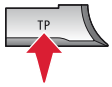
"TP" traffic information

The "**Traffic Programme**" (TP) function permits automatic and temporary switching to an FM station broadcasting traffic information.

The radio station or the source that you are listening to at this point is put on hold.

Once the traffic information has ended, the system switches back to the radio station or the source that you were listening to initially.

1



Press the **TP** button.

"TP" appears in the screen. If the station is compatible, "RDS" also appears.

If the radio detects traffic information, "TRAF INF" appears on the display, followed by the frequency of the broadcasting station, then its name.

The volume is different from that of the previous source.

Following the broadcasting of the traffic information, the volume returns to that of the source prior to the interruption.

!

When "TP" appears in the screen, the radio stops only at RDS stations broadcasting traffic information.

"ALERT" emergency broadcasts

An emergency broadcast automatically and temporarily interrupts the FM station or the source that you are listening to.

The message "ALERT" appears in the screen and the volume is different from that of the previous source.

Following the emergency broadcast, the message disappears and the volume returns to that of the source prior to the interruption.

"PTY" themed type of programme

Some stations offer the option of listening to a themed type of programme as a priority, selected from the list available below:

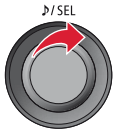
NEWS, AFFAIRS, INFO, SPORT, EDUCATE, DRAMA, CULTURE, SCIENCE, VARIED, POP M, ROCK M, EASY M, LIGHT M, CLASSICS, OTHER M, WEATHER, FINANCE, CHILDREN, SOCIAL, RELIGION, PHONE IN, TRAVEL, LEISURE, JAZZ, COUNTRY, NATION M, OLDIES, FOLK M, DOCUMENT.

Search for a "PTY" broadcast

1

Press the **PTY/SCAN** button.

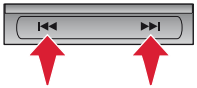
2



Turn the **SEL** knob to select **PTY** mode; the symbol flashes and an automatic search is made.

Once the station has been found, its name appears in the screen.

3



Press the "⏮" or "⏭" buttons to find another station.

!

Ten seconds after reception, the **PTY** mode is cancelled.

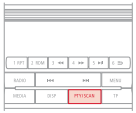
Presetting a "PTY" programme

You can preset up to six PTY programmes.

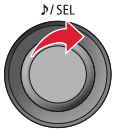
Each new programme stored replaces the previous one.

1

Press the **PTY/SCAN** button.



2



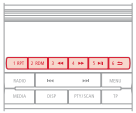
Turn the **SEL** knob to select **PTY** mode, then press one of the six buttons "1" to "6" to define the preset location.

3

Press one of the six buttons "1" to "6" for more than two seconds.

The sound cuts out then becomes audible again when the programme has been stored.

The number of the button and the associated PTY programme appear in the screen.



Changing the display language of the "PTY" programme

1

Press the **MENU** button.

2

Press the **SEL** knob repeatedly to select the **PTY lang** mode.

3

Turn the **SEL** knob to select the language (ENGLISH, FRANCAIS, DEUTSCH, SVENSK, ESPAGNOL, ITALIANO).

Functions setting mode

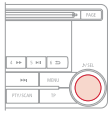
1

Press then **MENU** button.

2

This permits activation or deactivation of the functions below.

Press the **SEL** knob repeatedly; the setting mode for the functions changes in the following order: GRACENOTE DB / AF / REG / TP-S / PI-S / PTY (languages) / PH setting / CT / OFF.



3

Turn the **SEL** knob to the left to deactivate the function ("OFF") or to the right to activate it ("ON").

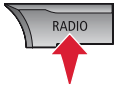
! The functions setting mode is deactivated after approximately 10 seconds without any action.

DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting)
Digital radio

Digital radio provides a superior audio quality and also additional categories of traffic announcements.
The different channels offer a choice of radio stations in alphabetical order.

Selecting the waveband

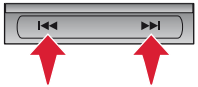
1



Press the **RADIO** button repeatedly to select the waveband; this changes in the following order: FM1 / FM2 / FM3 / DAB1 / DAB2 / DAB3 / MW / LW.

Automatic station search

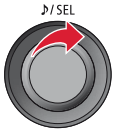
1



Press button "⏮" or "⏭" respectively to search for lower or higher frequencies.
The search begins automatically and stops on the first station found.

Manual station search

1



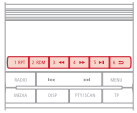
Turn the **SEL** thumbwheel respectively to the left to search for lower frequencies or to the right to search for higher frequencies.

Storing stations

You can store up to six stations for each waveband.
Each new stored station replaces the previous station.

1

Press one of the six buttons "1" to "6" until an audible signal is heard.
The sound cuts out, then becomes audible again after storing.
The number of the button and the frequency of the associated radio station appear on the display.



!

To retrieve the pre-set memory setting, press the button and release it within two seconds.

!

"DAB" does not have 100% coverage of the country.
When the digital signal is weak, "DAB" allows you to continue listening to the same station, by automatically switching to the corresponding analogue "FM" station (if it exists).

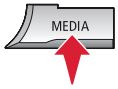
CD player

This can play audio CDs (CD-DA, CD-Text, CD-R/RW) or MP3 CDs.

Selecting CD mode

After inserting a disc, printed face upwards, the player starts automatically.

1



If the player already contains a disc, press the **MEDIA** button.
"MEDIA", the track number and the playing time appear in the screen.

!

Insert circular compact discs only.
8 cm compact discs must be inserted in the centre of the player slot.

Ejecting a disc

1

Press this button to remove the disc from the player. The system automatically switches to radio mode.

!

Once ejected, if the compact disc is not removed within fifteen seconds, it is reloaded into the player.

Audio CD

Fast search

1

Press and hold the "◀◀" or "▶▶" button to carry out a rewind or fast forward search respectively.
Play begins when the button is released.

Selecting a track

1

Press the "⏮" or "⏭" button to select the previous or next track respectively.

Repeating a track

1

Press the **RPT** button to repeat the play of the current track. "RPT" appears in the screen.
To exit this mode, press this button again.

Random playing of a disc

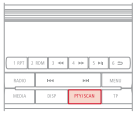
1

Press the **RDM** button to start random play of the tracks on the disc. "RDM" appears in the screen.
To exit this mode, press this button again.

Playing the beginning of each track

1

Press the **PTY/SCAN** button to start playback of the first ten seconds of each track on the disc. "SCAN" appears in the screen and the corresponding track number flashes.
To exit this mode, press this button again.



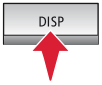
!

On CD-R/RWs, the quality of the playback sound depends on the encoding software, the burning device and the burning speed used.

CD-TEXT display

The CD player is compatible with the display of CD-Text information.

1



Press the **DISP** button repeatedly; the CD-Text information appears in the following order:

DISC NAME / TRACK NAME / NORMAL DISPLAY MODE.

2

If the information exceeds 12 characters, press the **PAGE** button to see the rest.

In the absence of CD-Text information to be displayed, "NOTITLE" appears on the screen.

MP3 / ID3 Tag CD

The CD player and the CD changer are compatible with the playing of MP3 files.

These must be recorded in ISO-8859 Level 1 / Level 2, Joliet or Romeo format on CD ROMs, CD-Rs or CD-RWs. The CDs can contain a maximum of 255 files and 100 folders on 16 levels.

The ID3 version 1.0, 1.1, 2.2, 2.3 and 2.4 Tag can be displayed while playing MP3 files.

!

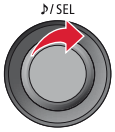
In the case of compact discs containing both CD-DA and MP3 files, play automatically begins with the CD-DA files.

To switch play between the two types of file, press the **CD** button for more than two seconds until an audible signal is heard.

While using these compact discs, the "Repeat", "Random play" and "Playing of the beginning of the tracks" functions are only applied to files of the same format.

Selecting an MP3 folder

1



Turn the **SEL** knob to the right to select a folder in ascending order or to the left to select a folder in descending order.

05 MUSIC MEDIA PLAYERS

Repeating the tracks in a folder

1

Press the **RPT** button for more than two seconds to repeat the playing of the tracks contained in the current folder. "D-RPT" appears in the screen.

To exit this mode, press this button again.

Random playing of a folder

1

Press the **RDM** button to start random playing of the tracks in the current folder. "RDM" appears in the screen.

To exit this mode, press this button again.

Random playing of a disc

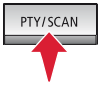
1

Press the **RDM** button for more than two seconds to start random playing of the tracks in all of the folders. "D-RDM" appears in the screen.

To exit this mode, press this button again.

Playing the beginning of each track

1



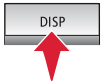
Press the **PTY/SCAN** button to start playing the first ten seconds of each track in all of the folders. "SCAN" appears in the screen and the corresponding track number flashes.

To exit this mode, press this button again.

MP3 / ID3 Tag display

When play begins, "READING" appears in the screen then disappears to make way for the folder number, the track number, the playing time and "MP3".

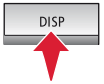
1



Press the **DISP** button repeatedly; the MP3 information appears in the following order:

FOLDER NAME / TRACK NAME / NORMAL DISPLAY MODE.

2



Press the **DISP** button for more than two seconds to activate the ID3 Tag information. "TAG" appears in the screen.

Press the **DISP** button repeatedly; the Tag ID3 information appears in the following order:

ALBUM NAME / TRACK NAME / ARTIST NAME / NORMAL DISPLAY MODE.

To deactivate this information, press the **DISP** button again for more than two seconds.

3

If the information exceeds 12 characters, press the **PAGE** button to see the rest.

In the absence of MP3 or ID3 Tag information to be displayed, "NOTITLE" appears in the screen.

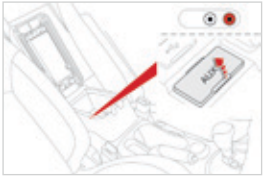
!

On CD-R/RWs, the quality of the playing sound depends on the encoding software, the burning device and the burning speed used.

Depending on the flow chart of the MP3 folders and files on the disc, play may not begin immediately.

Using the auxiliary input (AUX)

The auxiliary socket allows the connection of a portable device (MP3 player...).



!

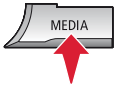
Connect the portable device (MP3 player…) to the RCA audio sockets (red and white) using a suitable cable, not supplied.

1

First adjust the volume on your portable device (to a high level). Then adjust the volume on the audio system.

Operation and play is done using the controls on your portable device.

2



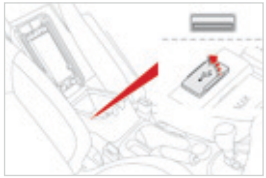
Press the **MEDIA** button for more than two seconds.

"AUX" appears in the screen and the external mode is activated.

Press **MEDIA** again to deactivate the **AUX** mode and change to another mode.

Using the USB port

The USB port is used to connect a portable device (MP3 player, Apple® player, etc.). The files are sent from the player to your audio system and heard through the vehicle's speakers.



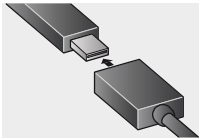
To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

Use only USB memory sticks in the format FAT32 (File Allocation Table).

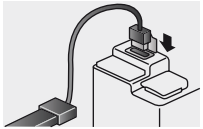
File formats: MP3, WMA, AAC, WAV.

- Maximum number of levels (including root): 8.
- Number of folders: 100.
- Number of files: 255.

1 With the vehicle stationary, ignition switch in the **LOCK** position, connect a suitable cable to the portable player.



2 Then connect the cable to the vehicle's USB port.



To disconnect the cable, the ignition switch must be in the **LOCK** position.

Take care not to trap the cable when closing the armrest.

Managing a track (or folder)

Play

1

Once the portable player / iPod® is connected, make several successive presses on the **MEDIA** button and select USB, the source selected is displayed.

Once the player is selected, play starts.

Stop

1

Press **MEDIA** to change mode or on **RADIO**.

Select a track

1

Press the "⏮" or "⏭" button to select the previous or next track respectively.

Press and hold to go faster.

Select a folder (or track)

1

Turn the knob to select a previous or next track.

2

Press the knob to select the folder and go down or up one level.

The knob can also be used for tracks.

Playing the start of each track

1

Press the **PTY/SCAN** button to start the play of the first ten seconds of each track in all folders. "SCAN" appears in the screen and the corresponding track number flashes.

Press this button again to quit this mode.

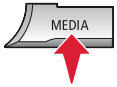
Managing a track

Streaming allows music files on a telephone to be heard via the vehicle's speakers.

The telephone must support the appropriate Bluetooth® profiles (profiles A2DP / AVRCP).

Connect the telephone: see the "BLUETOOTH® TELEPHONE WITH VOICE RECOGNITION" section.

1



Press the **MEDIA** button repeatedly and select Bluetooth® (the source selected is displayed).

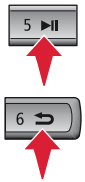
Play

1

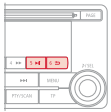
Press this button to start play.

Pause / Stop / Resume*

1



Press and hold the " II " button to pause the play.
Press the "Back" button to stop play.



Select a track*

1

Press the "⏮" or "⏭" button to select the previous or next track respectively.

Repeat play*

1

Press this button during play.
Press again to exit this mode.

Random play*

1

Press this button during play.
Press again to exit this mode.

* If the function is supported by the device.

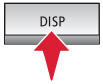
Play the start of each track*

1

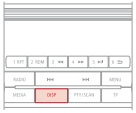
Press this button.
"PTY/SCAN" appears in the screen and the start of each track on the telephone connected via Bluetooth® is played for around 10 seconds.
Press again to exit this mode.

Changing the display*

1



Press and hold this button until an audible signal is heard and "TAG" is displayed.
Press this button to change the display.
Make a new long press to exit this mode.



!

The screen displays a maximum of 11 characters at a times. If the end of the title is cut off, press the **PAGE** button. The next characters are displayed each time the button is pressed.
If no title is stored: "NO TITLE" appears in the screen.
Characters that cannot be displayed are replaced by "**.**".

* If the function is supported by the device.

ERROR MESSAGES

If an error message appears on the screen, refer to the table below to find out what it means and the solution to be applied in order to rectify it.

MESSAGE	DESCRIPTION	SOLUTION
	CD	
CHECK DISC	Disc not inserted correctly. Disc has condensation on its surface.	Insert the disc with the printed face upwards. Clear the dampness off the disc.
DISC ERROR	Disc dirty, scratched or distorted.	Clean or replace the disc.
INTERNAL	The player has malfunctioned for some reason.	Check that there is no problem with the disc and insert another disc. If the problem persists, contact a CITROËN dealer.
HEAT ERROR	The temperature inside the unit is too high.	Remove the disc and wait until the temperature of the unit returns to normal.
	USB	
FILE ERROR	The files selected cannot be read.	Select files that can be read: MP3/WMA/AAC.
USB BUS PWR	External power supply fault.	Switch the system off and on again. If the problem persists, contact a CITROËN dealer.
LSI ERROR	Communication error between the audio system and the external device.	
UNSUPPORTED FORMAT	The files selected cannot be read.	Select files that can be read: MP3/WMA/AAC.
UNSUPPORTED DEVICE	An unsupported USB device has been connected.	Use a suitable USB cable.

ERROR MESSAGES

MESSAGE	DESCRIPTION	SOLUTION
	APPLE PLAYERS	
NO SONG	An iPod / iPhone has been connected but contains no titles.	Connect an iPod / iPhone containing tracks.
VER ERROR	The iPod / iPhone software version is not supported.	Connect a version of iPod / iPhone with a software version compatible with the system.
	OTHER	
ERROR DC	An abnormal direct current has been sent to the speakers.	Switch the system off and on again. If the problem persists, contact a CITROËN dealer.

A

ABS and EBFD systems 143
Accessories 141
Access to bulbs 200
Active stability control (ASC) 145
Adjusting headlamps 133
Adjusting head restraints 73
Adjusting the date 46
Adjusting the height and reach of the steering wheel 78
Adjusting the seat 71, 72
Adjusting the seat belt height 147
Adjusting the temperature 83
Adjusting the time 44, 46, 48
Advice on driving 97
Airbag, knee 153, 155
Airbags 151
Airbags, curtain 154, 155
Airbags, front 151, 155
Airbags, lateral 153, 155
Air conditioning 10
Air conditioning, automatic 80, 83
Air conditioning, manual 80, 81
Air intake 83
Air vents 79
Alarm 65
Anti-lock braking system (ABS) 143
Anti-theft 102
Armrest, front 73, 89, 92
Armrest, rear 75
Ashtray, portable 89, 91
Audio-CD system 313-336
Audio streaming (Bluetooth) 333, 334
Audio-CD system, touch screen 289-311
Audio-telematic system, touch screen 247-288

B

Battery 186, 211, 214
Battery, charging 211, 214
Battery, remote control 60, 61
Blind, panoramic roof 70
Bluetooth (telephone) 235-241
Bonnet 180
Boot 63
Bottle holder 89
Brake discs 188
Brake lamps 203
Brakes 188
Braking assistance system 143
Bulbs (changing) 199, 203, 204

C

Capacity, fuel tank 173
Cap, fuel filler 173
Card, SD 263, 279, 280
CD changer 328
Central locking 54, 57
Changing a bulb 199, 203, 204
Changing a fuse 205
Changing a wheel 193, 194
Changing a wiper blade 176
Changing the remote control battery 60
Checking the engine oil level 183
Checking the levels 183-185
Checking tyre pressures (using the kit) 189
Checks 181, 182, 186, 188
Child lock 171
Children 165
Child seats 150, 156, 157, 161-163, 170
Child seats, ISOFIX 165, 167, 169
Cigar lighter 91
Closing the boot 54, 63
Closing the doors 54, 57
Control, emergency boot release 63
Controls for air conditioning 83
Control stalk, lighting 127
Control stalk, wipers 134, 136
Courtesy lamp, front 138
Courtesy lamp, rear 138
Cruise control 120
Cup holder 89

D

DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) - Digital radio 275, 303, 304, 325
Date (setting) 46
Daytime running lamps 130, 201
Daytime running lamps, LED 201
Deactivating ASC 145
Deactivating the passenger airbag 151, 158

Deactivating the passenger and rear window control switches 68
Deadlocking 55, 57
Defrosting 87, 88
Defrosting, front 87
Demisting 87
Demisting, front 87
Dial 12
Dimensions 231
Dipstick 183
Direction indicators 142, 199, 200, 203
Display screen, instrument panel 12, 19, 30-32, 104
Doors 62
Driving abroad 127
Driving economically 10

E

Eco-driving (advice) 10
Electronic brake force distribution (EBFD) 143
Emergency warning lamps 142
Engine compartment 181, 182
Engine, Diesel 174, 182, 218, 225-230
Engine, petrol 174, 181, 219-224
Engines 219, 225
Environment 10, 60
Error messages (audio system) 335

F

Filling the fuel tank 173, 174
Filter, air 186
Filter, oil 186
Filter, particle 180, 185, 187
Filter, passenger compartment 186
Fittings, boot 95
Fittings, interior 89, 90
Fittings, rear 94
Fitting the mat 90
Flap, fuel filler 173
Flashing indicators 142, 199, 200, 202, 203
Fluid, engine coolant 35
Foglamp, rear 203
Foglamps, front 129, 199, 201
Folding/unfolding the door mirrors 77
Format, audio file 276
Four-wheel drive system 118
Frequency (radio) 302
Fuel 10, 173, 174
Fuel consumption 10
Fusebox, dashboard 205
Fusebox, engine compartment 205
Fuses 205

G

Gauge, fuel 173
Gearbox, automatic 10, 211
Gearbox, CVT 105, 187
Gearbox, manual 10, 103, 104, 111, 187
Gear shift indicator 104
Gear lever 10
Gear lever, manual gearbox 103
Glove box 89, 90
G.P.S. 252, 262, 264
Grab handles 94
Guidance (Navigation) 252, 262, 264

H

Hazard warning lamps 142
Headlamp adjustment 133
Headlamps, automatic illumination 128, 130
Headlamps, dipped beam 199, 201
Headlamps, main beam 199, 201
Headlamp wash 135
Head restraints, front 73
Head restraints, rear 74
Heating 10, 81, 83
Hill start assist 110
Horn 142

I

Identification, vehicle 233
Immobiliser, electronic 61, 102
Indicator, engine oil level 183
Indicator lamps, operation 16
Indicators, direction 142, 200
Inflating tyres 10
Input, auxiliary 281, 307, 330
Instrument panel 12
iPhone 280, 308
iPod 280, 308
Isofix mountings 165, 167, 169

J

Jack 193, 194

K

Key 56, 57, 61
Key, electronic 56, 57, 59
Keyless Entry and Starting 56, 61, 99
Key with remote control 52, 54, 102
Kit, temporary puncture repair 189

L

Labels, identification 233
Lamp, boot 140
Lamps, front 199
Lamps, rear 203
Lamps, warning and indicator 18
Level, brake fluid 184
Level, Diesel additive 185
Level, engine coolant 184
Level, engine oil 183
Level, headlamp wash 185
Levels and checks 181-185
Level, screenwash fluid 185
Lighting, automatic off 130
Lighting dimmer 51
Lighting, guide-me home 131
Lighting, interior 140
Lighting, welcome 132
Loading 10
Long objects, transporting 75
Low fuel level 173
Luggage retaining strap 95

M

Maintenance, routine 10
Map (colour screen) 264
Map reading lamps 138
Markings, identification 233
Mat 90
Menu 294, 296, 298
Menus (audio) 251, 293, 294, 296
Mirror, rear view 78
Mirrors, door 76
Mountings, Isofix 165, 167, 169

N

Navigation 252, 262, 264
Number plate lamps 203, 204

O

Oil, engine 183
Opening the bonnet 180
Opening the boot 52, 56, 63
Opening the doors 52, 56
Opening the fuel filler flap 173
Operation indicator lamps 18

P

Pads, brake 188
Pairing a telephone 288, 310
Panoramic glass sunroof 70
Parcel shelf, rear 96
Parking brake 102, 188
Parking sensors, front 125
Parking sensors, rear 123, 124
Particle filter 184
Plates, identification 233
Player, Apple® 280, 308
Player, MP3 CD 305
Player, USB 278, 280, 306, 308, 309, 331
Pockets, seat back 94
Port, USB 93, 278, 306, 331
Pressures, tyres 114, 233
Pre-tensioning seat belts 150
Priming the fuel system 218
Protecting children 156, 157, 161, 163, 165, 167, 169-171
Puncture 189, 193

R

Radio 268, 272, 300, 301, 303, 319, 321
Range 32, 35
RDS 302, 304
Reader, SD card 263, 279, 280
Rear screen, demisting 88
Recharging the battery 211, 214
Recirculation / exterior air intake 83
Regeneration of the particle filter 187
Reminder, key in ignition 98
Reminder, lighting on 129
Remote control 52, 54, 56, 57, 61
Removing the mat 90
Replacing bulbs 199, 203, 204
Replacing fuses 205
Replacing the air filter 186
Replacing the oil filter 186
Replacing the passenger compartment filter 186
Reservoir, headlamp wash 185
Reservoir, screenwash 185
Rev counter 12
Reversing camera 126
Reversing lamp 203
Reversing lamps 203
Roof bars 179
Running out of fuel (Diesel) 218

S

Safety, children 156-158, 161, 163, 165, 167, 169, 170
Screen (audio system) 44, 46, 48
Screen, colour 248, 251, 290, 293
Screen, instrument panel 19, 32
Screen menu 294, 296, 298
Screen menu map 294, 296, 298
Screenwash, front 135
Seat belts 149, 150
Seat, rear bench 74
Seats, electric 72
Seats, front 71-73
Seats, heated 73
Seats, rear 74
Serial number, vehicle 233
Service indicator 33
Servicing 10, 33, 183-185
Sidelamps 199, 201, 203
Side repeater 202
Ski flap 75
Snow chains 175
Socket, 12 V accessory 89, 91, 92
Sockets, audio 93, 278, 281, 306, 307, 330, 331
Sockets, auxiliary 93, 281, 307, 330
Speedometer 12
Spotlamps, side 202
Starting the engine 98, 99
Station, radio 300, 302-304
Stay, bonnet 180
Steering mounted controls, audio 249, 291, 316
Steering wheel, adjustment 78
Stop & Start system (Auto Stop Go) 111
Storage 75, 90, 95
Stowing rings 95, 96
Sun visor 90
Switching off the engine 98, 99

T

Tables of weights 220-224, 226-230
Tables of engines.....219, 225
Tables of fuses.....205
Tank, fuel.....173
Technical data..... 219-230
Telephone 239, 288, 310, 311
Telephone, Bluetooth with voice recognition.....235-246
Telephone, hands-free..... 235-237, 241-245
Temperature, coolant.....35
Third brake lamp 203, 204
Three flashes (direction indicators).....142
Time (setting) 44, 46, 48
TMC (Traffic info).....267
Tools.....193, 194
Total distance recorder.....32
Touch screen audio-CD system 289
Touch screen audio-telematic system.....247
Towbar.....177
Towed loads 220-224, 226-230
Towing another vehicle 215
TP (Traffic information).....282, 321
Traction control (TCL).....145
Traffic information (TMC).....267
Trajectory control systems.....145
Tyres..... 10, 114
Tyre under-inflation detection 15, 114

U

Unlocking 52, 56
USB 280, 308, 309

V

Ventilation 10, 79-81
Voice commands 236, 237, 241-245

W

Warning and indicator lamps.....13, 16
Warning lamp, low fuel level.....173
Warning lamp, seat belts 147
Weights 220-224, 226-230
Welcome lighting.....58
Wheelbrace.....193
Wheel, spare..... 114, 193, 194
Window controls 68
Wiper blades (changing).....176
Wipers.....134, 136
Wipers, automatic rain sensitive.....136

EC-Declaration of Conformity

Manufacturer / responsible person: Johnson Controls Interior Experience

Address:

915 E. 32nd Street

Holland Michigan USA 49423

Declares that the product:

type: BlueTooth Hands Free for Automotive

model: 1351524

Intended use/: Hands free cellphone interface to vehicle audio system

complies with the essential requirements of Article 3 of the R&TTE 1999/5/EC Directive, if used as intended and that the following standards has been applied:

1 Safety (Article 3.1.a of the R&TTE Directive)

applied standard(s)	EN 60 950-1	issue	2001
	+ A 11	issue	2004

2 Electromagnetic compatibility (Article 3.1.b of the R&TTE Directive)

applied standard(s)	ETSI EN 301 489-1 V1.6.1	issue	2005-09
	ETSI EN 301 489-17 V1.2.1	issue	2002-08

3 efficient use of the radio frequency spectrum (Article 3.2 of the R&TTE Directive)

applied standard(s)	ETSI EN 300 328 V1.7.1	issue	2006-10

Holland, MI 7/30/2007
(Place and date of the declaration of conformity)

John D. Spencer
(Name and signature)

English	Hereby, *Johnson Controls Automotive*, declares that this **Hands-free Bluetooth cellular phone interface system with voice recognition** is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.
Finnish	*Johnson Controls Automotive* vakuuttaa täten että **Hands-free Bluetooth cellular phone interface system with voice recognition** tyyppinen laite on direktiivin 1999/5/EY oleellisten vaatimusten ja sitä koskevien direktiivin muiden ehtojen mukainen.
Dutch	Hierbij verklaart *Johnson Controls Automotive* dat het toestel **Hands-free Bluetooth cellular phone interface system with voice recognition** in overeenstemming is met de essentiële eisen en de andere relevante bepalingen van richtlijn 1999/5/EG.
French	Par la présente, *Johnson Controls Automotive* déclare que ce **Hands-free Bluetooth cellular phone interface system with voice recognition** est conforme aux exigences essentielles et aux autres dispositions de la directive 1999/5/CE qui lui sont applicables.
Swedish	Härmed intygar *Johnson Controls Automotive* att denna **Hands-free Bluetooth cellular phone interface system with voice recognition** står I överensstämmelse med de väsentliga egenskapskrav och övriga relevanta bestämmelser som framgår av direktiv 1999/5/EG.
Danish	Undertegnede *Johnson Controls Automotive* erklærer herved, at følgende udstyr **Hands-free Bluetooth cellular phone interface system with voice recognition** overholder de væsentlige krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF
German	Hiermit erklärt *Johnson Controls Automotive*, dass sich dieses **Hands-free Bluetooth cellular phone interface system with voice recognition** in Übereinstimmung mit den grundlegenden Anforderungen und den anderen relevanten Vorschriften der Richtlinie 1999/5/EG befindet".
Greek	*ΜΕ ΤΗΝ ΠΑΡΟΥΣΑ Johnson Controls Automotive ΔΗΛΩΝΕΙ ΟΤΙ* **Hands-free Bluetooth cellular phone interface system with voice recognition** *ΣΥΜΜΟΡΦΩΝΕΤΑΙ ΠΡΟΣ ΤΙΣ ΟΥΣΙΩΔΕΙΣ ΑΠΑΙΤΗΣΕΙΣ ΚΑΙ ΤΙΣ ΛΟΙΠΕΣ ΣΧΕΤΙΚΕΣ ΔΙΑΤΑΞΕΙΣ ΤΗΣ ΟΔΗΓΙΑΣ 1999/5/ΕΚ*
Italian	Con la presente *Johnson Controls Automotive* dichiara che questo **Hands-free Bluetooth cellular phone interface system with voice recognition** è conforme ai requisiti essenziali ed alle altre disposizioni pertinenti stabilite dalla direttiva 1999/5/CE.
Spanish	Por medio de la presente *Johnson Controls Automotive* declara que el **Hands-free Bluetooth cellular phone interface system with voice recognition** cumple con los requisitos esenciales y cualesquiera otras disposiciones aplicables o exigibles de la Directiva 1999/5/CE
Portuguese	*Johnson Controls Automotive* declara que este **Hands-free Bluetooth cellular phone interface system with voice recognition** está conforme com os requisitos essenciais e outras disposições da Directiva 1999/5/CE.

EC-Declaration of Conformity

Manufacturer / responsible person: Johnson Controls Interior Experience

Address:

915 E. 32nd Street

Holland Michigan USA 49423

Declares that the product:

type: BlueTooth Hands Free for Automotive

model: 1872669, 1872721

Intended use/: Hands Free cellphone interface to vehicle audio system

complies with the essential requirements of Article 3 of the R&TTE 1999/5/EC Directive, if used as intended and that the following standards has been applied:

1 Safety (Article 3.1.a of the R&TTE Directive)

applied standard(s)	EN 60 950-1	issue	2001
	+ A 11	issue	2004
	EN 50371	issue	2008

2 Electromagnetic compatibility (Article 3.1.b of the R&TTE Directive)

applied standard(s)	ETSI EN 301 489-1 V1.6.1	issue	2005-09
	ETSI EN 301 489-17 V1.2.1	issue	2002-08

3 Efficient use of the radio frequency spectrum (Article 3.2 of the R&TTE Directive)

applied standard(s)	ETSI EN 300 328 V1.7.1	issue	2006-10

Holland, MI USA 8/30/2009
(Place and date of the declaration of conformity)

John D. Spencer
(Name and signature)

Česky [Czech]:	Toto zařízení je v souladu se základními požadavky a ostatními odpovídajícími ustanoveními Směrnice 1999/5/EC.
Dansk [Danish]:	Dette udstyr er i overensstemmelse med de væsentlige krav og andre relevante bestemmelser i Direktiv 1999/5/EF.
Deutsch [German]:	Dieses Gerät entspricht den grundlegenden Anforderungen und den weiteren entsprechenden Vorgaben der Richtlinie 1999/5/EU.
Eesti [Estonian]:	See seade vastab direktiivi 1999/5/EÜ olulistele nõuetele ja teistele asjakohastele sätetele.
English:	This equipment is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.
Español [Spanish]:	Este equipo cumple con los requisitos esenciales asi como con otras disposiciones de la Directiva 1999/5/CE.
Ελληνική [Greek]:	Αυτός ο εξοπλισμός είναι σε συμμόρφωση με τις ουσιώδεις απαιτήσεις και άλλες σχετικές διατάξεις της Οδηγίας 1999/5/EC.
Français [French]:	Cet appareil est conforme aux exigences essentielles et aux autres dispositions pertinentes de la Directive 1999/5/EC.
Íslenska [Icelandic]:	Þetta tæki er samkvæmt grunnkröfum og öðrum viðeigandi ákvæðum Tilskipunar 1999/5/EC.
Italiano [Italian]:	Questo apparato é conforme ai requisiti essenziali ed agli altri principi sanciti dalla Direttiva 1999/5/CE.
Latviski [Latvian]:	Šī iekārta atbilst Direktīvas 1999/5/EK būtiskajām prasībām un citiem ar to saistītajiem noteikumiem.
Lietuvių [Lithuanian]:	Šis įrenginys tenkina 1999/5/EB Direktyvos esminius reikalavimus ir kitas šios direktyvos nuostatas.
Nederlands [Dutch]:	Dit apparaat voldoet aan de essentiele eisen en andere van toepassing zijnde bepalingen van de Richtlijn 1999/5/EC.
Malti [Maltese]:	Dan l-apparat huwa konformi mal-htiġiet essenzjali u l-provedimenti l-oħra rilevanti tad-Direttiva 1999/5/EC.
Magyar [Hungarian]:	Ez a készülék teljesíti az alapvető követelményeket és más 1999/5/EK irányelvben meghatározott vonatkozó rendelkezéseket.
Norsk [Norwegian]:	Dette utstyret er i samsvar med de grunnleggende krav og andre relevante bestemmelser i EU-direktiv 1999/5/EF.
Polski [Polish]:	Urządzenie jest zgodne z ogólnymi wymaganiami oraz szczególnymi warunkami określonymi Dyrektywą UE: 1999/5/EC.
Português [Portuguese]:	Este equipamento está em conformidade com os requisitos essenciais e outras provisões relevantes da Directiva 1999/5/EC.
Slovensko [Slovenian]:	Ta naprava je skladna z bistvenimi zahtevami in ostalimi relevantnimi pogoji Direktive 1999/5/EC.
Slovensky [Slovak]:	Toto zariadenie je v zhode so základnými požiadavkami a inými príslušnými nariadeniami direktív: 1999/5/EC.
Suomi [Finnish]:	Tämä laite täyttää direktiivin 1999/5/EY olennaiset vaatimukset ja on siinä asetettujen muiden laitetta koskevien määräysten mukainen.
Svenska [Swedish]:	Denna utrustning är i överensstämmelse med de väsentliga kraven och andra relevanta bestämmelser i Direktiv 1999/5/EC.

OMRON Automotive Electronics Co. Ltd.

6368 NENJO-ZAKA, OKUSA, KOMAKI-CITY,
AICHI 485-0802 JAPAN
PHONE:+81-568-78-6159
FAX :+81-568-78-7659

DECLARATION of CONFORMITY

We, **OMRON Automotive Electronics Co. Ltd.** hereby declare, at our sole responsibility, that the following product conforms to the Essential Requirements of the Radio and Telecommunications Terminal Equipment Directive 1999/5/EC in accordance with the tests conducted to the appropriate requirements of the relevant standards, as listed herewith.

Product : **Keyless Entry System for vehicle**
Model/ Type Number : G8C-930M, G8C-931M, G8C-932M **for receiver and immobilizer**
: **G8D-571M-A , G8D-635M-A for transmitter**

CE 1731 CE 0891

Directive and Standards used as appropriate :

Model		Standard used for comply
G8C-930M	R&TTE Directive (Article 3.1(a) Safety)	EN 60065: 2002 + Amd.1: 2006 + Amd.11: 2008 + Amd.2: 2010 + Amd.12: 2011
	R&TTE Directive (Article 3.1(b) EMC)	EN301 489-1 V1.8.1 EN301 489-3 V1.4.1
	R&TTE Directive (Article 3.2 Spectrum)	EN 300 220-1 V2.1.1 EN 300 220-2 V2.1.2 EN 300 330-1 V1.7.1 EN 300 330-2 V1.5.1
G8C-931M	R&TTE Directive (Article 3.1(a) Safety)	EN 60065: 2002 + Amd.1: 2006 + Amd.11: 2008 + Amd.2: 2010 + Amd.12: 2011
	R&TTE Directive (Article 3.1(b) EMC)	EN301 489-1 V1.8.1 EN301 489-3 V1.4.1
	R&TTE Directive (Article 3.2 Spectrum)	EN 300 220-1 V2.1.1 EN 300 220-2 V2.1.2
G8C-932M	R&TTE Directive (Article 3.1(a) Safety)	EN 60065: 2002 + Amd.1: 2006 + Amd.11: 2008 + Amd.2: 2010 + Amd.12: 2011
	R&TTE Directive (Article 3.1(b) EMC)	EN301 489-1 V1.8.1 EN301 489-3 V1.4.1
	R&TTE Directive (Article 3.2 Spectrum)	EN 300 220-1 V2.1.1 EN 300 220-2 V2.1.2 EN 300 330-1 V1.7.1 EN 300 330-2 V1.5.1
G8D-571M-A	R&TTE Directive (Article 3.1(a) Safety)	EN 60065: 2002 + Amd.1: 2006 + Amd.11: 2008 + Amd.2: 2010 + Amd.12: 2011
	R&TTE Directive (Article 3.1(b) EMC)	EN301489-1 V1.8.1 : 2008-04 EN301489-3 V1.4.1 : 2002-08
	R&TTE Directive (Article 3.2 Spectrum)	EN 300 220-1 V2.1.1 EN 300 220-2 V2.1.2
G8D-635M-A	R&TTE Directive (Article 3.1(a) Safety)	EN 60065: 2002 + Amd.1: 2006 + Amd.11: 2008 + Amd.2: 2010 + Amd.12: 2011
	R&TTE Directive (Article 3.1(b) EMC)	EN 301 489-1 V1.8.1 (2008-04) EN 301 489-3 V1.4.1 (2002-08)
	R&TTE Directive (Article 3.2 Spectrum)	EN 300 220-1 V2.1.1 (2006-04) EN 300 220-2 V2.1.2 (2007-06)

Receiver Category of this radio equipment is Category 3, which is referred to EN 300 220-1.

Signature : Shinya Takenouchi

Name : Shinya Takenouchi
Title and position : Manager
Development & Design Division
Date : April 16, 2012

[Czech]	OMRON Corporation tímto prohlašuje, že tento [G8D-407M-A*,G8D-410M-B*, G8D-520M-A*,G8C-500M*,G8D-581M-B*,G8D-571M-A*,G8D-518M-A*,G8C-507M*,G8C-223M-3C,G8C-541M*,G8D-621M-A*,G8C-519M*,G8C-518M*,G8C-527M* ,G8C-546M*, G8C-930M*, G8C-931M*, G8C-932M*, G8D-635M-A] je ve shodě se základními požadavky a dalšími příslušnými ustanoveními směrnice 1999/5/ES.
[Danish]	Undertegnede OMRON Corporation erklærer herved, at følgende udstyr [G8D-407M-A*,G8D-410M-B*, G8D-520M-A*,G8C-500M*,G8D-581M-B*,G8D-571M-A*,G8D-518M-A*,G8C-507M*,G8C-223M-3C,G8C-541M*,G8D-621M-A*,G8C-519M*,G8C-518M*,G8C-527M*,G8C-546M*, G8C-930M*, G8C-931M*, G8C-932M*, G8D-635M-A] overholder de væsentlige krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.
[German]	Hiermit erklärt OMRON Corporation, dass sich das Gerät [G8D-407M-A*,G8D-410M-B*, G8D-520M-A*,G8C-500M*,G8D-581M-B*,G8D-571M-A*,G8D-518M-A*,G8C-507M*,G8C-223M-3C,G8C-541M*,G8D-621M-A*,G8C-519M*,G8C-518M*,G8C-527M*,G8C-546M*, G8C-930M*, G8C-931M*, G8C-932M*, G8D-635M-A] in Übereinstimmung mit den grundlegenden Anforderungen und den übrigen einschlägigen Bestimmungen der Richtlinie 1999/5/EG befindet.
[Estonian]	Käesolevaga kinnitab OMRON Corporation seadme [G8D-407M-A*,G8D-410M-B*, G8D-520M-A*,G8C-500M*,G8D-581M-B*,G8D-571M-A*,G8D-518M-A*,G8C-507M*,G8C-223M-3C,G8C-541M*,G8D-621M-A*,G8C-519M*,G8C-518M* G8C-527M*,G8C-546M*, G8C-930M*, G8C-931M*, G8C-932M*, G8D-635M-A] vastavust direktiivi 1999/5/EÜ põhinõuetele ja nimetatud direktiivist tulenevatele teistele asjakohastele sätetele.
[English]	Hereby, OMRON Corporation, declares that this [G8D-407M-A*,G8D-410M-B*, G8D-520M-A*,G8C-500M*,G8D-581M-B*,G8D-571M-A*,G8D-518M-A*,G8C-507M*,G8C-223M-3C,G8C-541M*,G8D-621M-A*,G8C-519M*,G8C-518M* G8C-527M*,G8C-546M*, G8C-930M*, G8C-931M*, G8C-932M*, G8D-635M-A] is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.
[Spanish]	Por medio de la presente OMRON Corporation declara que el [G8D-407M-A*,G8D-410M-B*, G8D-520M-A*,G8C-500M*,G8D-581M-B*,G8D-571M-A*,G8D-518M-A*,G8C-507M*,G8C-223M-3C,G8C-541M*,G8D-621M-A*,G8C-519M*,G8C-518M* G8C-527M*,G8C-546M*, G8C-930M*, G8C-931M*, G8C-932M*, G8D-635M-A] cumple con los requisitos esenciales y cualesquiera otras disposiciones aplicables o exigibles de la Directiva 1999/5/CE.
[Greek]	ΜΕ ΤΗΝ ΠΑΡΟΥΣΑ OMRON Corporation ΔΗΛΩΝΕΙ ΟΤΙ [G8D-407M-A*,G8D-410M-B*, G8D-520M-A*,G8C-500M*,G8D-581M-B*,G8D-571M-A*,G8D-518M-A*,G8C-507M*,G8C-223M-3C,G8C-541M*,G8D-621M-A*,G8C-519M*,G8C-518M* G8C-527M*,G8C-546M*, G8C-930M*, G8C-931M*, G8C-932M*, G8D-635M-A] ΣΥΜΜΟΡΦΩΝΕΤΑΙ ΠΡΟΣ ΤΙΣ ΟΥΣΙΩΔΕΙΣ ΑΠΑΙΤΗΣΕΙΣ ΚΑΙ ΤΙΣ ΛΟΙΠΕΣ ΣΧΕΤΙΚΕΣ ΔΙΑΤΑΞΕΙΣ ΤΗΣ ΟΔΗΓΙΑΣ 1999/5/ΕΚ.
[French]	Par la présente OMRON Corporation déclare que l'appareil [G8D-407M-A*,G8D-410M-B*, G8D-520M-A*,G8C-500M*,G8D-581M-B*,G8D-571M-A*,G8D-518M-A*,G8C-507M*,G8C-223M-3C,G8C-541M*,G8D-621M-A*,G8C-519M*,G8C-518M* G8C-527M*,G8C-546M*, G8C-930M*, G8C-931M*, G8C-932M*, G8D-635M-A] est conforme aux exigences essentielles et aux autres dispositions pertinentes de la directive 1999/5/CE.
[Italian]	Con la presente OMRON Corporation dichiara che questo [G8D-407M-A*,G8D-410M-B*, G8D-520M-A*,G8C-500M*,G8D-581M-B*,G8D-571M-A*,G8D-518M-A*,G8C-507M*,G8C-223M-3C,G8C-541M*,G8D-621M-A*,G8C-519M*,G8C-518M* G8C-527M*,G8C-546M*, G8C-930M*, G8C-931M*, G8C-932M*, G8D-635M-A] è conforme ai requisiti essenziali ed alle altre disposizioni pertinenti stabilite dalla direttiva 1999/5/CE.
[Latvian]	Ar šo OMRON Corporation deklarē, ka [G8D-407M-A*,G8D-410M-B*, G8D-520M-A*,G8C-500M*,G8D-581M-B*,G8D-571M-A*,G8D-518M-A*,G8C-507M*,G8C-223M-3C,G8C-541M* G8D-621M-A*,G8C-519M*,G8C-518M* G8C-527M*,G8C-546M*, G8C-930M*, G8C-931M*, G8C-932M*, G8D-635M-A] atbilst Direktīvas 1999/5/EK būtiskajām prasībām un citiem ar to saistītajiem noteikumiem.
[Lithuanian]	Šiuo OMRON Corporation deklaruoja, kad šis [G8D-407M-A*,G8D-410M-B*, G8D-520M-A*,G8C-500M*,G8D-581M-B*,G8D-571M-A*,G8D-518M-A*,G8C-507M*,G8C-223M-3C,G8C-541M*,G8D-621M-A*,G8C-519M*,G8C-518M* G8C-527M*,G8C-546M*, G8C-930M*, G8C-931M*, G8C-932M*, G8D-635M-A] atitinka esminius reikalavimus ir kitas 1999/5/EB Direktyvos nuostatas.
[Dutch]	Hierbij verklaart OMRON Corporation dat het toestel [G8D-407M-A*,G8D-410M-B*, G8D-520M-A*,G8C-500M*,G8D-581M-B*,G8D-571M-A*,G8D-518M-A*,G8C-507M*,G8C-223M-3C,G8C-541M*,G8D-621M-A*,G8C-519M*,G8C-518M* G8C-527M*,G8C-546M*, G8C-930M*, G8C-931M*, G8C-932M*, G8D-635M-A] in overeenstemming is met de essentiële eisen en de andere relevante bepalingen van richtlijn 1999/5/EG.
[Maltese]	Hawnhekk, OMRON Corporation, jiddikjara li dan [G8D-407M-A*,G8D-410M-B*, G8D-520M-A*,G8C-500M*,G8D-581M-B*,G8D-571M-A*,G8D-518M-A*,G8C-507M*,G8C-223M-3C,G8C-541M*,G8D-621M-A*,G8C-519M*,G8C-518M* G8C-527M*,G8C-546M*, G8C-930M*, G8C-931M*, G8C-932M*, G8D-635M-A], jikkonforma mal-ħtiġijiet essenzjali u ma provvedimenti oħrajn relevanti li hemm fid-Dirrettiva 1999/5/EC.

[Hungarian]	Alulírott, OMRON Corporation nyilatkozom, hogy a [G8D-407M-A*,G8D-410M-B*, G8D-520M-A*,G8C-500M*,G8D-581M-B*,G8D-571M-A*,G8D-518M-A*,G8C-507M*,G8C-223M-3C,G8C-541M*,G8D-621M-A*,G8C-519M*,G8C-518M* G8C-527M*,G8C-546M*, G8C-930M*, G8C-931M*, G8C-932M*, G8D-635M-A] megfelel a vonatkozó alapvető követelményeknek és az 1999/5/EC irányelv egyéb előírásainak.
[Polish]	[OMRON Corporation] niniejszym oświadcza, że [G8D-407M-A*,G8D-410M-B*, G8D-520M-A*,G8C-500M*,G8D-581M-B*,G8D-571M-A*,G8D-518M-A*,G8C-507M*,G8C-223M-3C,G8C-541M*,G8D-621M-A*,G8C-519M*,G8C-518M* G8C-527M*,G8C-546M*, G8C-930M*, G8C-931M*, G8C-932M*, G8D-635M-A] spełnia zasadnicze wymogi oraz inne istotne postanowienia dyrektywy 1999/5/EC.
[Portuguese]	OMRON Corporation declara que este [G8D-407M-A*,G8D-410M-B*, G8D-520M-A*,G8C-500M*,G8D-581M-B*,G8D-571M-A*,G8D-518M-A*,G8C-507M*,G8C-223M-3C,G8C-541M* G8D-621M-A*,G8C-519M*,G8C-518M* G8C-527M*,G8C-546M*, G8C-930M*, G8C-931M*, G8C-932M*, G8D-635M-A] está conforme com os requisitos essenciais e outras disposições da Directiva 1999/5/CE.
[Slovenian]	OMRON Corporation izjavlja, da je ta [G8D-407M-A*,G8D-410M-B*, G8D-520M-A*,G8C-500M*,G8D-581M-B*,G8D-571M-A*,G8D-518M-A*,G8C-507M*,G8C-223M-3C,G8C-541M*,G8D-621M-A*,G8C-519M*,G8C-518M* G8C-527M*,G8C-546M*, G8C-930M*, G8C-931M*, G8C-932M*, G8D-635M-A] v skladu z bistvenimi zahtevami in ostalimi relevantnimi določili direktive 1999/5/ES.
[Slovak]	OMRON Corporation týmto vyhlasuje, že [G8D-407M-A*,G8D-410M-B*, G8D-520M-A*,G8C-500M*,G8D-581M-B*,G8D-571M-A*,G8D-518M-A*,G8C-507M*,G8C-223M-3C,G8C-541M*, G8D-621M-A*,G8C-519M*,G8C-518M,*G8C-527M*,G8C-546M*, G8C-930M*, G8C-931M*, G8C-932M*, G8D-635M-A] spĺňa základné požiadavky a všetky príslušné ustanovenia Smernice 1999/5/ES.
[Finnish]	OMRON Corporation vakuuttaa täten että [G8D-407M-A*,G8D-410M-B*, G8D-520M-A*,G8C-500M*,G8D-581M-B*,G8D-571M-A*,G8D-518M-A*,G8C-507M*,G8C-223M-3C,G8C-541M*,G8D-621M-A*,G8C-519M*,G8C-518M*, G8C-527M*,G8C-546M*, G8C-930M*, G8C-931M*, G8C-932M*, G8D-635M-A] tyyppinen laite on direktiivin 1999/5/EY oleellisten vaatimusten ja sitä koskevien direktiivin muiden ehtojen mukainen.
[Swedish]	Härmed intygar OMRON Corporation att denna [G8D-407M-A*,G8D-410M-B*, G8D-520M-A*,G8C-500M*,G8D-581M-B*,G8D-571M-A*,G8D-518M-A*,G8C-507M*,G8C-223M-3C,G8C-541M*,,G8D-621M-A*,G8C-519M*,G8C-518M*,G8C-527M*,G8C-546M*, G8C-930M*, G8C-931M*, G8C-932M*, G8D-635M-A] står I överensstämmelse med de väsentliga egenskapskrav och övriga relevanta bestämmelser som framgår av direktiv 1999/5/EG.
[Icelandic]	Hér með lýsir OMRON Corporation yfir því að [G8D-407M-A*,G8D-410M-B*, G8D-520M-A*,G8C-500M*,G8D-581M-B*,G8D-571M-A*,G8D-518M-A*,G8C-507M*,G8C-223M-3C,G8C-541M*,G8D-621M-A*,G8C-519M*,G8C-518M*,G8C-527M*,G8C-546M*, G8C-930M*, G8C-931M*, G8C-932M*, G8D-635M-A] er í samræmi við grunnkröfur og aðrar kröfur, sem gerðar eru í tilskipun 1999/5/EC.
[Norwegian]	OMRON Corporation erklærer herved at utstyret [G8D-407M-A*,G8D-410M-B*, G8D-520M-A*,G8C-500M*,G8D-581M-B*,G8D-571M-A*,G8D-518M-A*,G8C-507M*,G8C-223M-3C,G8C-541M*,G8D-621M-A*,G8C-519M*,G8C-518M* G8C-527M*,G8C-546M*, G8C-930M*, G8C-931M*, G8C-932M*, G8D-635M-A] er i samsvar med de grunnleggende krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.
[Turkish]	İşbu belge ile OMRON Corporation, bu [G8D-407M-A*,G8D-410M-B*, G8D-520M-A*,G8C-500M*,G8D-581M-B*,G8D-571M-A*,G8D-518M-A*,G8C-507M*,G8C-223M-3C,G8C-541M*,G8D-621M-A*,G8C-519M*,G8C-518M*,G8C-527M*,G8C-546M*, G8C-930M*, G8C-931M*, G8C-932M*, G8D-635M-A]'in 1995/5/EC Yönetmeliği esas gereksinimlerine ve diğer şartlarına uygun olduğunu beyan eder.
[Romania]	„Noi OMRON Corporation declarăm că aparatul [G8D-407M-A*,G8D-410M-B*, G8D-520M-A*,G8C-500M*,G8D-581M-B*,G8D-571M-A*,G8D-518M-A*,G8C-507M*,G8C-223M-3C,G8C-541M*,G8D-621M-A*,G8C-519M*,G8C-518M*, G8C-527M*,G8C-546M*, G8C-930M*, G8C-931M*, G8C-932M*, G8D-635M-A] este în conformitate cu cerințele esențiale şi cu alte prevederi relevante ale Hotărârii Guvernului nr.88/2003 şi Directivei 1999/5/EC.
[Bulgarian]	С настоящия документOMRON Corporation декларира, че[G8D-407M-A*,G8D-410M-B*, G8D-520M-A*,G8C-500M*,G8D-581M-B*,G8D-571M-A*,G8D-518M-A*,G8C-507M*,G8C-223M-3C,G8C-541M*,G8D-621M-A*,G8C-519M*,G8C-518M*、 G8C-527M*,G8C-546M*, G8C-930M*, G8C-931M*, G8C-932M*, G8D-635M-A] е в съгласие с основните изисквания и съответните постановления на Директива 1999/5/EC.

OMRON

OMRON Automotive Electronics Co. Ltd.

6368 NENJO-ZAKA, OKUSA, KOMAKI-CITY,
AICHI 485-0802 JAPAN
PHONE:+81-568-78-6159
FAX :+81-568-78-7659

DECLARATION of CONFORMITY

We, **OMRON Automotive Electronics Co. Ltd.** hereby declare, at our sole responsibility, that the following product conforms to the Essential Requirements of the Radio and Telecommunications Terminal Equipment Directive 1999/5/EC in accordance with the tests conducted to the appropriate requirements of the relevant standards, as listed herewith.

Product : **FOB / WCM / Transmitter**
Model/ Type Number : **FOB** : G8D-644M-KEY-E
: **WCM** : **G8D-646M , G8D-649M**
: **Transmitter** : **G8D-635M-A**

CE 1731

Directive and Standards used as appropriate :

Model	Standard used for comply	
G8D-644M-KEY-E	R&TTE Directive (Article 3.1(a) Safety)	EN60065:2002+Amd.1:2006+Amd.11:2008+Amd.2:2010+ Amd.12:2011
	R&TTE Directive (Article 3.1(b) EMC)	EN301 489-1 V1.8.1:2008 EN301 489-3 V1.4.1:2002
	R&TTE Directive (Article 3.2 Spectrum)	EN300 330-1 V1.7.1:2010 EN300 330-2 V1.5.1:2010 EN300 220-1 V2.1.1:2006 EN300 220-2 V2.1.2:2007
G8D-646M	R&TTE Directive (Article 3.1(a) Safety)	EN 60065: 2002 + Amd.1: 2006 + Amd.11: 2008 + Amd.2: 2010 + Amd.12: 2011
	R&TTE Directive (Article 3.1(b) EMC)	EN 301 489-1 V1.8.1 (2008-04) EN 301 489-3 V1.4.1 (2002-08)
	R&TTE Directive (Article 3.2 Spectrum)	EN 300 220-1 V2.1.1 (2006-04) EN 300 220-2 V2.1.2 (2007-06) EN 300 330-1 V1.7.1 : 2010-02 EN 300 330-2 V1.5.1 : 2010-02
G8D-649M	R&TTE Directive (Article 3.1(a) Safety)	EN 60065: 2002 + Amd.1: 2006 + Amd.11: 2008 + Amd.2: 2010 + Amd.12: 2011
	R&TTE Directive (Article 3.1(b) EMC)	EN301489-1 V1.8.1 : 2008-04 EN301489-3 V1.4.1 : 2002-08
	R&TTE Directive (Article 3.2 Spectrum)	EN 300 220-1 V2.1.1 EN 300 220-2 V2.1.1 EN 300 330-1 V1.7.1 : 2010-02 EN 300 330-2 V1.5.1 : 2010-02
G8D-635M-A	R&TTE Directive (Article 3.1(a) Safety)	EN 60065: 2002 + Amd.1: 2006 + Amd.11: 2008 + Amd.2: 2010 + Amd.12: 2011
	R&TTE Directive (Article 3.1(b) EMC)	EN 301 489-1 V1.8.1 (2008-04) EN 301 489-3 V1.4.1 (2002-08)
	R&TTE Directive (Article 3.2 Spectrum)	EN 300 220-1 V2.1.1 (2006-04) EN 300 220-2 V2.1.2 (2007-06)

Receiver Category of this radio equipment is Category 3, which is referred to EN 300 220-1.

Signature : Shinya Takenouchi

Name : Shinya Takenouchi
Title and position : Manager
Development & Design Division
Date : April 16, 2012

[Czech]	OMRON Corporation tímto prohlašuje, že tento [G8D-640M-ECU*,G8D-640M-KEY-E*,G8D-576M-A*,G8D-640M-RAM-E*,G8D-649M*,G8D-644M-KEY-E*,G8D-646M*,G8D-635M-A*,G8D-841M-ECU-E*,G8D-841M-WCM-E*,G8D-841M-WCM-PD*] je ve shodě se základními požadavky a dalšími příslušnými ustanoveními směrnice 1999/5/ES.
[Danish]	Undertegnede OMRON Corporation erklærer herved, at følgende udstyr [G8D-640M-ECU*,G8D-640M-KEY-E*,G8D-576M-A*,G8D-640M-RAM-E*,G8D-649M*,G8D-644M-KEY-E*,G8D-646M*,G8D-635M-A*,G8D-841M-ECU-E*,G8D-841M-WCM-E*,G8D-841M-WCM-PD*] overholder de væsentlige krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.
[German]	Hiermit erklärt OMRON Corporation, dass sich das Gerät [G8D-640M-ECU*,G8D-640M-KEY-E*,G8D-576M-A*,G8D-640M-RAM-E*,G8D-649M*,G8D-644M-KEY-E*,G8D-646M*,G8D-635M-A*,G8D-841M-ECU-E*,G8D-841M-WCM-E*,G8D-841M-WCM-PD*] in Übereinstimmung mit den grundlegenden Anforderungen und den übrigen einschlägigen Bestimmungen der Richtlinie 1999/5/EG befindet.
[Estonian]	Käesolevaga kinnitab OMRON Corporation seadme [G8D-640M-ECU*,G8D-640M-KEY-E*,G8D-576M-A*,G8D-640M-RAM-E*,G8D-649M*,G8D-644M-KEY-E*,G8D-646M*,G8D-635M-A*,G8D-841M-ECU-E*,G8D-841M-WCM-E*,G8D-841M-WCM-PD*] vastavust direktiivi 1999/5/EÜ põhinõuetele ja nimetatud direktiivist tulenevatele teistele asjakohastele sätetele.
[English]	Hereby, OMRON Corporation, declares that this [G8D-640M-ECU*,G8D-640M-KEY-E*,G8D-576M-A*,G8D-640M-RAM-E*,G8D-649M*,G8D-644M-KEY-E*,G8D-646M*,G8D-635M-A*,G8D-841M-ECU-E*,G8D-841M-WCM-E*,G8D-841M-WCM-PD*] is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.
[Spanish]	Por medio de la presente OMRON Corporation declara que el [G8D-640M-ECU*,G8D-640M-KEY-E*,G8D-576M-A*,G8D-640M-RAM-E*,G8D-649M*,G8D-644M-KEY-E*,G8D-646M*,G8D-635M-A*,G8D-841M-ECU-E*,G8D-841M-WCM-E*,G8D-841M-WCM-PD*] cumple con los requisitos esenciales y cualesquiera otras disposiciones aplicables o exigibles de la Directiva 1999/5/CE.
[Greek]	ΜΕ ΤΗΝ ΠΑΡΟΥΣΑ OMRON Corporation ΔΗΛΩΝΕΙ ΟΤΙ [G8D-640M-ECU*,G8D-640M-KEY-E*,G8D-576M-A*,G8D-640M-RAM-E*,G8D-649M*,G8D-644M-KEY-E*,G8D-646M*,G8D-635M-A*,G8D-841M-ECU-E*,G8D-841M-WCM-E*,G8D-841M-WCM-PD*] ΣΥΜΜΟΡΦΩΝΕΤΑΙ ΠΡΟΣ ΤΙΣ ΟΥΣΙΩΔΕΙΣ ΑΠΑΙΤΗΣΕΙΣ ΚΑΙ ΤΙΣ ΛΟΙΠΕΣ ΣΧΕΤΙΚΕΣ ΔΙΑΤΑΞΕΙΣ ΤΗΣ ΟΔΗΓΙΑΣ 1999/5/ΕΚ.
[French]	Par la présente OMRON Corporation déclare que l'appareil [G8D-640M-ECU*,G8D-640M-KEY-E*,G8D-576M-A*,G8D-640M-RAM-E*,G8D-649M*,G8D-644M-KEY-E*,G8D-646M*,G8D-635M-A*,G8D-841M-ECU-E*,G8D-841M-WCM-E*,G8D-841M-WCM-PD*] est conforme aux exigences essentielles et aux autres dispositions pertinentes de la directive 1999/5/CE.
[Italian]	Con la presente OMRON Corporation dichiara che questo [G8D-640M-ECU*,G8D-640M-KEY-E*,G8D-576M-A*,G8D-640M-RAM-E*,G8D-649M*,G8D-644M-KEY-E*,G8D-646M*,G8D-635M-A*,G8D-841M-ECU-E*,G8D-841M-WCM-E*,G8D-841M-WCM-PD*] è conforme ai requisiti essenziali ed alle altre disposizioni pertinenti stabilite dalla direttiva 1999/5/CE.
[Latvian]	Ar šo OMRON Corporation deklarē, ka [G8D-640M-ECU*,G8D-640M-KEY-E*,G8D-576M-A*,G8D-640M-RAM-E*,G8D-649M*,G8D-644M-KEY-E*,G8D-646M*,G8D-635M-A*,G8D-841M-ECU-E*,G8D-841M-WCM-E*,G8D-841M-WCM-PD*] atbilst Direktīvas 1999/5/EK būtiskajām prasībām un citiem ar to saistītajiem noteikumiem.
[Lithuanian]	Šiuo OMRON Corporation deklaruoja, kad šis [G8D-640M-ECU*,G8D-640M-KEY-E*,G8D-576M-A*,G8D-640M-RAM-E*,G8D-649M*,G8D-644M-KEY-E*,G8D-646M*,G8D-635M-A*,G8D-841M-ECU-E*,G8D-841M-WCM-E*,G8D-841M-WCM-PD*] atitinka esminius reikalavimus ir kitas 1999/5/EB Direktyvos nuostatas.
[Dutch]	Hierbij verklaart OMRON Corporation dat het toestel [G8D-640M-ECU*,G8D-640M-KEY-E*,G8D-576M-A*,G8D-640M-RAM-E*,G8D-649M*,G8D-644M-KEY-E*,G8D-646M*,G8D-635M-A*,G8D-841M-ECU-E*,G8D-841M-WCM-E*,G8D-841M-WCM-PD*] in overeenstemming is met de essentiële eisen en de andere relevante bepalingen van richtlijn 1999/5/EG.
[Maltese]	Hawnhekk, OMRON Corporation, jiddikjara li dan [G8D-640M-ECU*,G8D-640M-KEY-E*,G8D-576M-A*,G8D-640M-RAM-E*,G8D-649M*,G8D-644M-KEY-E*,G8D-646M*,G8D-635M-A*,G8D-841M-ECU-E*,G8D-841M-WCM-E*,G8D-841M-WCM-PD*] jikkonforma mal-ħtiġijiet essenzjali u ma provvedimenti oħrajn relevanti li hemm fid-Dirrettiva 1999/5/EC.
[Hungarian]	Alulírott, OMRON Corporation nyilatkozom, hogy a [G8D-640M-ECU*,G8D-640M-KEY-E*,G8D-576M-A*,G8D-640M-RAM-E*,G8D-649M*,G8D-644M-KEY-E*,G8D-646M*,G8D-635M-A*,G8D-841M-ECU-E*,G8D-841M-WCM-E*,G8D-841M-WCM-PD*] megfelel a vonatkozó alapvető követelményeknek és az 1999/5/EC irányelv egyéb előírásainak.
[Polish]	[OMRON Corporation] niniejszym oświadcza, że [G8D-640M-ECU*,G8D-640M-KEY-E*,G8D-576M-A*,G8D-640M-RAM-E*,G8D-649M*,G8D-644M-KEY-E*,G8D-646M*,G8D-635M-A*,G8D-841M-ECU-E*,G8D-841M-WCM-E*,G8D-841M-WCM-PD*] spełnia zasadnicze wymogi oraz inne istotne postanowienia dyrektywy 1999/5/EC.

[Portuguese]	OMRON Corporation declara que este [G8D-640M-ECU*,G8D-640M-KEY-E*,G8D-576M-A*,G8D-640M-RAM-E*,G8D-649M*,G8D-644M-KEY-E*,G8D-646M*,G8D-635M-A*,G8D-841M-ECU-E*,G8D-841M-WCM-E*,G8D-841M-WCM-PD*] está conforme com os requisitos essenciais e outras disposições da Directiva 1999/5/CE.
[Slovenian]	OMRON Corporation izjavlja, da je ta [G8D-640M-ECU*,G8D-640M-KEY-E*,G8D-576M-A*,G8D-640M-RAM-E*,G8D-649M*,G8D-644M-KEY-E*,G8D-646M*,G8D-635M-A*,G8D-841M-ECU-E*,G8D-841M-WCM-E*,G8D-841M-WCM-PD*] v skladu z bistvenimi zahtevami in ostalimi relevantnimi določili direktive 1999/5/ES.
[Slovak]	OMRON Corporation týmto vyhlasuje, že [G8D-640M-ECU*,G8D-640M-KEY-E*,G8D-576M-A*,G8D-640M-RAM-E*,G8D-649M*,G8D-644M-KEY-E*,G8D-646M*,G8D-635M-A*,G8D-841M-ECU-E*,G8D-841M-WCM-E*,G8D-841M-WCM-PD*] spĺňa základné požiadavky a všetky príslušné ustanovenia Smernice 1999/5/ES.
[Finnish]	OMRON Corporation vakuuttaa täten että [G8D-640M-ECU*,G8D-640M-KEY-E*,G8D-576M-A*,G8D-640M-RAM-E*,G8D-649M*,G8D-644M-KEY-E*,G8D-646M*,G8D-635M-A*,G8D-841M-ECU-E*,G8D-841M-WCM-E*,G8D-841M-WCM-PD*] tyyppinen laite on direktiivin 1999/5/EY oleellisten vaatimusten ja sitä koskevien direktiivin muiden ehtojen mukainen.
[Swedish]	Härmed intygar OMRON Corporation att denna [G8D-640M-ECU*,G8D-640M-KEY-E*,G8D-576M-A*,G8D-640M-RAM-E*,G8D-649M*,G8D-644M-KEY-E*,G8D-646M*,G8D-635M-A*,G8D-841M-ECU-E*,G8D-841M-WCM-E*,G8D-841M-WCM-PD*] står I överensstämmelse med de väsentliga egenskapskrav och övriga relevanta bestämmelser som framgår av direktiv 1999/5/EG.
[Icelandic]	Hér með lýsir OMRON Corporation yfir því að [G8D-640M-ECU*,G8D-640M-KEY-E*,G8D-576M-A*,G8D-640M-RAM-E*,G8D-649M*,G8D-644M-KEY-E*,G8D-646M*,G8D-635M-A*,G8D-841M-ECU-E*,G8D-841M-WCM-E*,G8D-841M-WCM-PD*] er í samræmi við grunnkröfur og aðrar kröfur, sem gerðar eru í tilskipun 1999/5/EC.
[Norwegian]	OMRON Corporation erklærer herved at utstyret [G8D-640M-ECU*,G8D-640M-KEY-E*,G8D-576M-A*,G8D-640M-RAM-E*,G8D-649M*,G8D-644M-KEY-E*,G8D-646M*,G8D-635M-A*,G8D-841M-ECU-E*,G8D-841M-WCM-E*,G8D-841M-WCM-PD*] er i samsvar med de grunnleggende krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.
[Turkish]	Işbu belge ile OMRON Corporation, bu [G8D-640M-ECU*,G8D-640M-KEY-E*,G8D-576M-A*,G8D-640M-RAM-E*,G8D-649M*,G8D-644M-KEY-E*,G8D-646M*,G8D-635M-A*,G8D-841M-ECU-E*,G8D-841M-WCM-E*,G8D-841M-WCM-PD*]'in 1995/5/EC Yönetmeliği esas gereksinimlerine ve diğer şartlarına uygun olduğunu beyan eder.
[Romania]	„Noi OMRON Corporation declarăm că aparatul [G8D-640M-ECU*,G8D-640M-KEY-E*,G8D-576M-A*,G8D-640M-RAM-E*,G8D-649M*,G8D-644M-KEY-E*,G8D-646M*,G8D-635M-A*,G8D-841M-ECU-E*,G8D-841M-WCM-E*,G8D-841M-WCM-PD*] este în conformitate cu cerințele esențiale şi cu alte prevederi relevante ale Hotărârii Guvernului nr.88/2003 şi Directivei 1999/5/EC.
[Bulgarian]	С настоящия документOMRON Corporation декларира, че [G8D-640M-ECU*,G8D-640M-KEY-E*,G8D-576M-A*,G8D-640M-RAM-E*,G8D-649M*,G8D-644M-KEY-E*,G8D-646M*,G8D-635M-A*,G8D-841M-ECU-E*,G8D-841M-WCM-E*,G8D-841M-WCM-PD*] е в съгласие с основните изисквания и съответните постановления на Директива 1999/5/EC.

OMRON Automotive Electronics Co. Ltd.

6368 NENJO-ZAKA, OKUSA, KOMAKI-CITY,
AICHI 485-0802 JAPAN
PHONE:+81-568-78-6159
FAX :+81-568-78-7659

DECLARATION of CONFORMITY

We, **OMRON Automotive Electronics Co. Ltd.** hereby declare, at our sole responsibility, that the following product conforms to the Essential Requirements of the Radio and Telecommunications Terminal Equipment Directive 1999/5/EC in accordance with the tests conducted to the appropriate requirements of the relevant standards, as listed herewith.

Product : **KOS / FOB / WCM / Transmitter**

Model/ Type Number : **KOS** : G8D-841M-ECU-E
: **FOB** : G8D-644M-KEY-E
: **WCM** : G8D-841M-WCM-PD , G8D-841M-WCM-E
: **Transmitter** : **G8D-576M-A , G8D-635M-A**

Directive and Standards used as appropriate :

Model	Standard used for comply	
G8D-841M-ECU-E	R&TTE Directive (Article 3.1(a) Safety)	EN60065:2002+Amd.1:2006+Amd.11:2008+Amd.2:2010+ Amd.12:2011
	R&TTE Directive (Article 3.1(b) EMC)	EN301 489-1 V1.8.1:2008 EN301 489-3 V1.4.1:2002
	R&TTE Directive (Article 3.2 Spectrum)	EN300 330-1 V1.7.1:2010 EN300 330-2 V1.5.1:2010 EN300 220-1 V2.1.1:2006 EN300 220-2 V2.1.2:2007
G8D-644M-KEY-E	R&TTE Directive (Article 3.1(a) Safety)	EN60065:2002+Amd.1:2006+Amd.11:2008+Amd.2:2010+ Amd.12:2011
	R&TTE Directive (Article 3.1(b) EMC)	EN301 489-1 V1.8.1:2008 EN301 489-3 V1.4.1:2002
	R&TTE Directive (Article 3.2 Spectrum)	EN300 330-1 V1.7.1:2010 EN300 330-2 V1.5.1:2010 EN300 220-1 V2.1.1:2006 EN300 220-2 V2.1.2:2007
G8D-841M-WCM-PD	R&TTE Directive (Article 3.1(a) Safety)	EN 60065: 2002 + Amd.1: 2006 + Amd.2: 2010
	R&TTE Directive (Article 3.1(b) EMC)	EN 301 489-1 V1.8.1 EN 301 489-3 V1.4.1
	R&TTE Directive (Article 3.2 Spectrum)	EN 300 220-1 V2.3.1 EN 300 220-2 V2.3.1 EN 300 330-1 V1.7.1 EN 300 330-2 V1.5.1
G8D-841M-WCM-E	R&TTE Directive (Article 3.1(a) Safety)	EN60065:2002+Amd.1:2006+Amd.11:2008+Amd.2:2010+ Amd.12:2011
	R&TTE Directive (Article 3.1(b) EMC)	EN301 489-1 V1.8.1:2008 EN301 489-3 V1.4.1:2002
	R&TTE Directive (Article 3.2 Spectrum)	EN300 330-1 V1.7.1:2010 EN300 330-2 V1.5.1:2010 EN300 220-1 V2.1.1:2006 EN300 220-2 V2.1.2:2007
G8D-576M-A **G8D-635M-A**	R&TTE Directive (Article 3.1(a) Safety)	EN 60065: 2002 + Amd.1: 2006 + Amd.11: 2008 + Amd.2: 2010 + Amd.12: 2011
	R&TTE Directive (Article 3.1(b) EMC)	**EN 301 489-1 V1.8.1** **EN 301 489-3 V1.4.1**
	R&TTE Directive (Article 3.2 Spectrum)	**EN 300 220-1 V2.1.1** **EN 300 220-2 V2.1.2**

Receiver Category of this radio equipment is Category 3, which is referred to EN 300 220-1.

Signature : Shinya Takenouchi

Name : Shinya Takenouchi
Title and position : Manager
Development & Design Division
Date : April 16, 2012

CE 1731

[Czech]	OMRON Corporation tímto prohlašuje, že tento [G8D-640M-ECU*,G8D-640M-KEY-E*,G8D-576M-A*,G8D-640M-RAM-E*,G8D-649M*,G8D-644M-KEY-E*,G8D-646M*,G8D-635M-A*,G8D-841M-ECU-E*,G8D-841M-WCM-E*,G8D-841M-WCM-PD*] je ve shodě se základními požadavky a dalšími příslušnými ustanoveními směrnice 1999/5/ES.
[Danish]	Undertegnede OMRON Corporation erklærer herved, at følgende udstyr [G8D-640M-ECU*,G8D-640M-KEY-E*,G8D-576M-A*,G8D-640M-RAM-E*,G8D-649M*,G8D-644M-KEY-E*,G8D-646M*,G8D-635M-A*,G8D-841M-ECU-E*,G8D-841M-WCM-E*,G8D-841M-WCM-PD*] overholder de væsentlige krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.
[German]	Hiermit erklärt OMRON Corporation, dass sich das Gerät [G8D-640M-ECU*,G8D-640M-KEY-E*,G8D-576M-A*,G8D-640M-RAM-E*,G8D-649M*,G8D-644M-KEY-E*,G8D-646M*,G8D-635M-A*,G8D-841M-ECU-E*,G8D-841M-WCM-E*,G8D-841M-WCM-PD*] in Übereinstimmung mit den grundlegenden Anforderungen und den übrigen einschlägigen Bestimmungen der Richtlinie 1999/5/EG befindet.
[Estonian]	Käesolevaga kinnitab OMRON Corporation seadme [G8D-640M-ECU*,G8D-640M-KEY-E*,G8D-576M-A*,G8D-640M-RAM-E*,G8D-649M*,G8D-644M-KEY-E*,G8D-646M*,G8D-635M-A*,G8D-841M-ECU-E*,G8D-841M-WCM-E*,G8D-841M-WCM-PD*] vastavust direktiivi 1999/5/EÜ põhinõuetele ja nimetatud direktiivist tulenevatele teistele asjakohastele sätetele.
[English]	Hereby, OMRON Corporation, declares that this [G8D-640M-ECU*,G8D-640M-KEY-E*,G8D-576M-A*,G8D-640M-RAM-E*,G8D-649M*,G8D-644M-KEY-E*,G8D-646M*,G8D-635M-A*,G8D-841M-ECU-E*,G8D-841M-WCM-E*,G8D-841M-WCM-PD*] is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.
[Spanish]	Por medio de la presente OMRON Corporation declara que el [G8D-640M-ECU*,G8D-640M-KEY-E*,G8D-576M-A*,G8D-640M-RAM-E*,G8D-649M*,G8D-644M-KEY-E*,G8D-646M*,G8D-635M-A*,G8D-841M-ECU-E*,G8D-841M-WCM-E*,G8D-841M-WCM-PD*] cumple con los requisitos esenciales y cualesquiera otras disposiciones aplicables o exigibles de la Directiva 1999/5/CE.
[Greek]	ΜΕ ΤΗΝ ΠΑΡΟΥΣΑ OMRON Corporation ΔΗΛΩΝΕΙ ΟΤΙ [G8D-640M-ECU*,G8D-640M-KEY-E*,G8D-576M-A*,G8D-640M-RAM-E*,G8D-649M*,G8D-644M-KEY-E*,G8D-646M*,G8D-635M-A*,G8D-841M-ECU-E*,G8D-841M-WCM-E*,G8D-841M-WCM-PD*] ΣΥΜΜΟΡΦΩΝΕΤΑΙ ΠΡΟΣ ΤΙΣ ΟΥΣΙΩΔΕΙΣ ΑΠΑΙΤΗΣΕΙΣ ΚΑΙ ΤΙΣ ΛΟΙΠΕΣ ΣΧΕΤΙΚΕΣ ΔΙΑΤΑΞΕΙΣ ΤΗΣ ΟΔΗΓΙΑΣ 1999/5/ΕΚ.
[French]	Par la présente OMRON Corporation déclare que l'appareil [G8D-640M-ECU*,G8D-640M-KEY-E*,G8D-576M-A*,G8D-640M-RAM-E*,G8D-649M*,G8D-644M-KEY-E*,G8D-646M*,G8D-635M-A*,G8D-841M-ECU-E*,G8D-841M-WCM-E*,G8D-841M-WCM-PD*] est conforme aux exigences essentielles et aux autres dispositions pertinentes de la directive 1999/5/CE.
[Italian]	Con la presente OMRON Corporation dichiara che questo [G8D-640M-ECU*,G8D-640M-KEY-E*,G8D-576M-A*,G8D-640M-RAM-E*,G8D-649M*,G8D-644M-KEY-E*,G8D-646M*,G8D-635M-A*,G8D-841M-ECU-E*,G8D-841M-WCM-E*,G8D-841M-WCM-PD*] è conforme ai requisiti essenziali ed alle altre disposizioni pertinenti stabilite dalla direttiva 1999/5/CE.
[Latvian]	Ar šo OMRON Corporation deklarē, ka [G8D-640M-ECU*,G8D-640M-KEY-E*,G8D-576M-A*,G8D-640M-RAM-E*,G8D-649M*,G8D-644M-KEY-E*,G8D-646M*,G8D-635M-A*,G8D-841M-ECU-E*,G8D-841M-WCM-E*,G8D-841M-WCM-PD*] atbilst Direktīvas 1999/5/EK būtiskajām prasībām un citiem ar to saistītajiem noteikumiem.
[Lithuanian]	Šiuo OMRON Corporation deklaruoja, kad šis [G8D-640M-ECU*,G8D-640M-KEY-E*,G8D-576M-A*,G8D-640M-RAM-E*,G8D-649M*,G8D-644M-KEY-E*,G8D-646M*,G8D-635M-A*,G8D-841M-ECU-E*,G8D-841M-WCM-E*,G8D-841M-WCM-PD*] atitinka esminius reikalavimus ir kitas 1999/5/EB Direktyvos nuostatas.
[Dutch]	Hierbij verklaart OMRON Corporation dat het toestel [G8D-640M-ECU*,G8D-640M-KEY-E*,G8D-576M-A*,G8D-640M-RAM-E*,G8D-649M*,G8D-644M-KEY-E*,G8D-646M*,G8D-635M-A*,G8D-841M-ECU-E*,G8D-841M-WCM-E*,G8D-841M-WCM-PD*] in overeenstemming is met de essentiële eisen en de andere relevante bepalingen van richtlijn 1999/5/EG.
[Maltese]	Hawnhekk, OMRON Corporation, jiddikjara li dan [G8D-640M-ECU*,G8D-640M-KEY-E*,G8D-576M-A*,G8D-640M-RAM-E*,G8D-649M*,G8D-644M-KEY-E*,G8D-646M*,G8D-635M-A*,G8D-841M-ECU-E*,G8D-841M-WCM-E*,G8D-841M-WCM-PD*] jikkonforma mal-ħtiġijiet essenzjali u ma provvedimenti oħrajn relevanti li hemm fid-Dirrettiva 1999/5/EC.
[Hungarian]	Alulírott, OMRON Corporation nyilatkozom, hogy a [G8D-640M-ECU*,G8D-640M-KEY-E*,G8D-576M-A*,G8D-640M-RAM-E*,G8D-649M*,G8D-644M-KEY-E*,G8D-646M*,G8D-635M-A*,G8D-841M-ECU-E*,G8D-841M-WCM-E*,G8D-841M-WCM-PD*] megfelel a vonatkozó alapvető követelményeknek és az 1999/5/EC irányelv egyéb előírásainak.
[Polish]	[OMRON Corporation] niniejszym oświadcza, że [G8D-640M-ECU*,G8D-640M-KEY-E*,G8D-576M-A*,G8D-640M-RAM-E*,G8D-649M*,G8D-644M-KEY-E*,G8D-646M*,G8D-635M-A*,G8D-841M-ECU-E*,G8D-841M-WCM-E*,G8D-841M-WCM-PD*] spełnia zasadnicze wymogi oraz inne istotne postanowienia dyrektywy 1999/5/EC.

[Portuguese]	OMRON Corporation declara que este [G8D-640M-ECU*,G8D-640M-KEY-E*,G8D-576M-A*,G8D-640M-RAM-E*,G8D-649M*,G8D-644M-KEY-E*,G8D-646M*,G8D-635M-A*,G8D-841M-ECU-E*,G8D-841M-WCM-E*,G8D-841M-WCM-PD*] está conforme com os requisitos essenciais e outras disposições da Directiva 1999/5/CE.
[Slovenian]	OMRON Corporation izjavlja, da je ta [G8D-640M-ECU*,G8D-640M-KEY-E*,G8D-576M-A*,G8D-640M-RAM-E*,G8D-649M*,G8D-644M-KEY-E*,G8D-646M*,G8D-635M-A*,G8D-841M-ECU-E*,G8D-841M-WCM-E*,G8D-841M-WCM-PD*] v skladu z bistvenimi zahtevami in ostalimi relevantnimi določili direktive 1999/5/ES.
[Slovak]	OMRON Corporation týmto vyhlasuje, že [G8D-640M-ECU*,G8D-640M-KEY-E*,G8D-576M-A*,G8D-640M-RAM-E*,G8D-649M*,G8D-644M-KEY-E*,G8D-646M*,G8D-635M-A*,G8D-841M-ECU-E*,G8D-841M-WCM-E*,G8D-841M-WCM-PD*] spĺňa základné požiadavky a všetky príslušné ustanovenia Smernice 1999/5/ES.
[Finnish]	OMRON Corporation vakuuttaa täten että [G8D-640M-ECU*,G8D-640M-KEY-E*,G8D-576M-A*,G8D-640M-RAM-E*,G8D-649M*,G8D-644M-KEY-E*,G8D-646M*,G8D-635M-A*,G8D-841M-ECU-E*,G8D-841M-WCM-E*,G8D-841M-WCM-PD*] tyyppinen laite on direktiivin 1999/5/EY oleellisten vaatimusten ja sitä koskevien direktiivin muiden ehtojen mukainen.
[Swedish]	Härmed intygar OMRON Corporation att denna [G8D-640M-ECU*,G8D-640M-KEY-E*,G8D-576M-A*,G8D-640M-RAM-E*,G8D-649M*,G8D-644M-KEY-E*,G8D-646M*,G8D-635M-A*,G8D-841M-ECU-E*,G8D-841M-WCM-E*,G8D-841M-WCM-PD*] står I överensstämmelse med de väsentliga egenskapskrav och övriga relevanta bestämmelser som framgår av direktiv 1999/5/EG.
[Icelandic]	Hér með lýsir OMRON Corporation yfir því að [G8D-640M-ECU*,G8D-640M-KEY-E*,G8D-576M-A*,G8D-640M-RAM-E*,G8D-649M*,G8D-644M-KEY-E*,G8D-646M*,G8D-635M-A*,G8D-841M-ECU-E*,G8D-841M-WCM-E*,G8D-841M-WCM-PD*] er í samræmi við grunnkröfur og aðrar kröfur, sem gerðar eru í tilskipun 1999/5/EC.
[Norwegian]	OMRON Corporation erklærer herved at utstyret [G8D-640M-ECU*,G8D-640M-KEY-E*,G8D-576M-A*,G8D-640M-RAM-E*,G8D-649M*,G8D-644M-KEY-E*,G8D-646M*,G8D-635M-A*,G8D-841M-ECU-E*,G8D-841M-WCM-E*,G8D-841M-WCM-PD*] er i samsvar med de grunnleggende krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.
[Turkish]	İşbu belge ile OMRON Corporation, bu [G8D-640M-ECU*,G8D-640M-KEY-E*,G8D-576M-A*,G8D-640M-RAM-E*,G8D-649M*,G8D-644M-KEY-E*,G8D-646M*,G8D-635M-A*,G8D-841M-ECU-E*,G8D-841M-WCM-E*,G8D-841M-WCM-PD*]'in 1995/5/EC Yönetmeliği esas gereksinimlerine ve diğer şartlarına uygun olduğunu beyan eder.
[Romania]	„Noi OMRON Corporation declarăm că aparatul [G8D-640M-ECU*,G8D-640M-KEY-E*,G8D-576M-A*,G8D-640M-RAM-E*,G8D-649M*,G8D-644M-KEY-E*,G8D-646M*,G8D-635M-A*,G8D-841M-ECU-E*,G8D-841M-WCM-E*,G8D-841M-WCM-PD*] este în conformitate cu cerințele esențiale şi cu alte prevederi relevante ale Hotărârii Guvernului nr.88/2003 şi Directivei 1999/5/EC.
[Bulgarian]	С настоящия документOMRON Corporation декларира, че [G8D-640M-ECU*,G8D-640M-KEY-E*,G8D-576M-A*,G8D-640M-RAM-E*,G8D-649M*,G8D-644M-KEY-E*,G8D-646M*,G8D-635M-A*,G8D-841M-ECU-E*,G8D-841M-WCM-E*,G8D-841M-WCM-PD*] е в съгласие с основните изисквания и съответните постановления на Директива 1999/5/EC.

Connection and use of this communications equipment is permitted by the Nigerian Communications Commission

Français (French)

DECLARATION DE CONFORMITE DU FABRICANT
Pour
Pantagraph Car Jack, modèles PJM700, PJM800, PJM1000 & PJM1200

Fabriqué par
Taihei Industrial Co., Ltd.
No.49-1, Kagekatsu-cho, Fushimi-ku, Kyoto 612-8307 Japon

Fichier technique compilé et maintenu dans l'UE, au nom du fabricant en
TRaC Global Ltd
100 Frobisher Business Park, Leigh Sinton Road, Malvern, Worcestershire, WR14 1BX Royaume-Uni

Normes utilisées pour le guide de l'appareil
Annexe I de 2006/42/EC en se reportant à la section :
EN 1494:2000/A1:2008

Moyens de conformité
Le produit est en conformité avec la loi CE comme approximativement par la directive sur la machinerie 2006/42/CE,
Comme décrit dans le fichier de la documentation technique n°2136 révision 2, mars 2012

Signature de la personne responsable :
M. Masato Nasu
Président
Taihei Industrial Co., Ltd.

Signature de la personne dans l'UE gardant le fichier technique :

M. Neil Roche
Chef de produit EMC
TRaC Global Ltd.

N° DE SERIE DE LA MACHINE
Date :
13 mars 2012
N° de certificat
17-0074-1 DofC Edition 3

MANUFACTURERS DECLARATION OF CONFORMITY

GOODMAN For CE

Pantagraph Car Jack
Models PJM700, PJM800, PJM1000 & PJM1200

Manufactured by

Taihei Industrial Co.,Ltd.
No.49-1, Kagekatsu-Cho,
Fushimi-Ku,
Kyoto 612-8307
Japan

Technical File compiled and held in the EU, on behalf of the manufacturer by

TRac Global Ltd
100 Frobisher Business Park,
Leigh Sinton Road, Malvern,
Worcestershire, WR14 1BX
United Kingdom

Standards used as guidance

Machinery Directive

Annex I of 2006/42/EC with reference to :
EN 1494:2000/A1:2008

Means of Conformity

The Product is in conformity with EC law as approximated by the Machinery Directive 2006/42/EC, As detailed in Technical Documentation File No **2136 Revision 2, March 2012**

Signature of Responsible Person:

Mr. Masato Nasu
President
Taihei Industrial Co., Ltd.

Signature of the person in the EU holding the Technical File:

Mr Neil Roche
EMC Product Manager
TRaC Global Ltd.

MACHINE SERIAL No.

Date: **13th March 2012**

Certificate No. **17-0074-1 DofC Issue 3**

Communications Regulatory Authority | هيئة تنظيم الاتصالات
State of Qatar دولة قطر

CERTIFICATE OF TYPE APPROVAL FOR TELECOM EQUIPMENT

Approval Ref: .....CRA/SA/2015/R-4491.....**Date of Issue:** .....21/01/2015.....

1. **Company/ Establishment:** ...BAM FOR COMMERCIAL & CONSULTING SERVICES...
2. **Address:** ...P. O. Box ...461314..... **Tel:** ...+962797003572... **Fax:** .....
3. **Equipment description:**...TRANSMITTER FOR A TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM...
4. **Manufacturer:** ...SCHRADER..... **Type:** ...TRANSMITTER... **Model:** .....HSS4.....
5. **Frequency band:** **SPOT:** .....433.92 MHz.....
6. **Transmission capacity/channels:** ...1CHANNEL... **Medium:** .....
7. **RF output power:** ...0.01m...**Watt** ...-20...**dBm/-dBW** ....**Nonoverlapping Ch:**.
8. **Channel spacing:** .....**Frequency stability:** ....± .....ppm
9. **Duplex separation:** ..... **CCIR/National plan:** .....
10. **Modulation/ class of emission** (ITU code).....FSK/400KK1D.....
11. **Maximum permitted RF power:** ...≤0.01m... **Watt** .....**FM deviation:** . ±..... **Max**
12. **Receiver sensitivity:** .....**For 11 Mb/s/20 dB SINAD**
13. **Antenna Type:** ...INTEGRAL ..... **Beamwidth:** .....**Gain:** .....**dBi**
14. **Optional attachments:** .....
15. **Intended Purpose:** ...TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM FOR VEHICLES...
16. **Test specification:** .....
17. **Restrictions:** .....
18. **Valid up to:** ....N/A.....

BY THE

SEAL

AUTHORIZED SIGNATORY
COMMUNICATIONS REGULATORY AUTHORITY

هذه الشهادة لا تخول حاملها الحق في استيراد أي كمية أو عينات من أجهزة الاتصالات السلكية واللاسلكية
THIS CERTIFICATE DOESN'T PERMIT IMPORT OF ANY QUANTITY OR SAMPLE OF TELECOM EQUIPMENT

Conditions:

1. Type approval or acceptance certificate is valid only for the type, model and the intended purpose mentioned.
2. The equipment should be used only for the intended purpose as approved. E.g. mobile telephony, telemetry, data transmission, video, radio-relay link, fixed point-to-point, point-to-multipoint link, other usage not permitted.
3. Only type approved equipment can be imported. Dealers/Users will obtain prior permission to import from CRA.
4. Any deviations from the approved specifications will render this approval invalid.
5. It is an offence to use unapproved, unlicensed equipment and outside the terms of the license.

Form: FIRT23
Rev: 0; D: 11/02/07

PO Box 22824, Doha, Qatar
+974 4499 5555 | +974 4499 5656
info@cra.gov.qa

هاتف: +974 4499 5555 | فاكس: +974 4499 5656
info@cra.gov.qa

Telecom Equipment Registration Certificate

شهادة تسجيل منتج

(إعتماد النوعية)

Authorization Number :	**ER36744/15**	رقم الشهادة :
Name of Registered Dealer :	**SCHRADER ELECTRONICS LTD.**	إسم المصرح له :

Product Details تفاصيل الجهاز

Equipment Name :	Short range devices / Low power Devices	اسم الجهاز :
Model :	HSS4	الطراز :
Manufacturer :	SCHRADER ELECTRONICS LTD.	الشركة المصنعة :

Applied Standard and/or Network Interfaces and/or Radio Services Spectrum Usage for which this authorization applies.

Comments :

Authorization

وفقا لمرسوم قانون الاتصالات ولائحة التنفيذية ، والسلطة الممنوحة لهيئة تنظيم الاتصالات لتنظيم قطاع الاتصالات، يخول هذا الترخيص لاستخدام المنتجات المذكورة أعلاه في الدولة.

The Telecommunications Regulatory Authority, pursuant to its authority under the Federal Law by Decree No. 3 of 2003 – Telecom Law & the Executive Order of the Federal Law by Decree No. 3 of 2003 Regarding the Organization of the Telecommunications Sector, herby authorizes the above product for the usage of specified subject to the conditions set out overleaf.

Date of Issue : **13-Jan-2015** تاريخ الإصدار : Date of Expiry : **12-Jan-2018** تاريخ انتهاء الصلاحية :

TRA
T: +97126269999 -F: +97126118209
Sheikh Zayed Street P.O.Box: 26662

KINGDOM OF BAHRAIN
CENTRAL INFORMATICS ORGANISATION
DIRECTORATE OF WIRELESS LICENSING,
FREQUENCIES & MONITORING

مملكـــة البحريـــن
الجهـــاز المركـــزي للمعلومـــات
إدارة التراخيـــص اللاسلكيـــة
والتـــرددات والرقابـــة

Radiating Equipment Type Approval

The Equipment Identified hereon is approved for use under the following rules:

1- This equipment must not cause harmful interference to other services.

2- This equipment is subject to harmful interference, and the owner of this equipment must not claim for protection.

Authority Reference	DLM/ 0000001249 Reference no.: 0000000271	J: 0000000396 P: 0000000005 S: 0000000005
Date of Grantee	26/01/15	
Name of Grantee	BATEC Villa 1279, Road 3327, Block 332, Mahooz, Kingdom of Bahrain	
Manufactured by	Schrader Electronics Ltd 11 Technology Park, Belfast Road, Antrim, N. Ireland, BT41 1QS, United Kingdom	
Model/Type/No.	HSS4	
Equipment Description	Tyre Pressure Monitoring Sensor	
Frequencies/Frequency Bands	433.92 MHz	
Output Power	0.01 mW	
Emission	400KK1D / FSK	
Remarks		
Validity	25/01/2018	

Eng. Hassan Mohamed Hassan
Director

هاتف: 17 377277 (+973) فاكس: 17 715030 (+973)، ص.ب 26627، المنامة – مملكة البحرين
Tel: (+973) 17-377277 Fax: (+973) 17-715030, P.O. Box 26627, Manama – The Kingdom of Bahrain
البريد الإلكتروني: dwlfm@cio.gov.bh

سلطنة عُمان
Sultanate of Oman

هيئة تنظيم الاتصالات
Telecommunications Regulatory Authority

TYPE APPROVAL CERTIFICATE
FOR TELECOMMUNICATIONS EQUIPMENT

Approval number: TRA/TA-R/1039/13

Date of Issue: 13/03/2013

Applicant Name: Al Thuraya Trading

Applicant Number: D090258

Type: Short Range Device

Purpose /Use: Monitor car tire pressure and temperature via radio signal , transmitter

Brand /Family/ Series: Schrader

Model: HS Speed Snap In Europe 433 MHz

Manufacturer: Schrader Electronics

Frequency/Band	*RF Output power(EIRP)*	*Modulation/ Channel Access Tech.*	*Class of Emission*
433.92 MHz	0.01 mW	FSK	400KK1D

Note/Conditions:

- Usage of this radio equipment shall be subject to Decision No. 133/2008, and any further regulations to be issued by TRA.

- Labeling of Imported equipment is subject to the Labeling Guidelines.

TELECOMMUNICATIONS REGULATORY AUTHORITY

www.tra.gov.om
PO Box 579, Ruwi 112 | Sultanate of Oman | Tel: +968 24 574 300 | Fax: +968 24 563 643 | Email: traoman@tra.gov.om

Automobiles CITROËN declares, by application of the provisions of the European legislation (Directive 2000/53) relating to End of Life Vehicles, that it achieves the objectives set by this legislation and that recycled materials are used in the manufacture of the products that it sells.

Reproduction or translation of all or part of this document is prohibited without written authorisation from Automobiles CITROËN.

4DCONCEPT
DIADEIS
Interak

Printed in the EU
Anglais

06-16

Automobiles CITROËN
Siège social : 6, rue Fructidor 75017 Paris - France
Tél. : +33 (0) 1 58 79 79 79 - www.citroen.com
Société anonyme au capital de 159 000 000 € - R.C.S. : 642 050 199 R.C.S. Paris - SIRET : 642 050 199 00990 - APE : 7010Z

CITROËN

CRÉATIVE TECHNOLOGIE

Anglais

16ACR.0040